REMARKS

Applicants have amended the title to more specifically describe the invention. The specification has been amended to capitalize trademarks and remove reference to embedded hyperlinks. Submitted herewith is a response to the Notice to Comply, which amends the specification to include a copy of the sequence listing.

Applicants have cancelled Claims 1-3, 7-10 and 15 without prejudice to, or disclaimer of, the subject matter contained therein. Applicants maintain that the cancellation of a claim makes no admission as to its patentability and reserve the right to pursue the subject matter of the cancelled claim in this or any other patent application.

Applicants have amended Claims 4-6, 11-12, and 14 to remove reference to the Figures. Claims 4-5 have been amended to add the limitation that the claimed nucleic acids are more highly expressed in normal skin tissue compared to melanoma tumor. Applicants have amended Claims 4, 5, 6 and 14 to delete elements (a)-(d). Claim 14 is amended to include "or a complement thereof" to amended elements (a)-(c), to specify the conditions under which hybridization occurs, and to add the following text "wherein said isolated nucleic acid molecule is suitable for use as a PCR primer, or probe; and wherein said isolated nucleic acid is at least about 20 nucleotides in length." Claim 16 is amended to read "at least about 50 nucleotides in length." Claim 17 is amended to depend from Claim 4. New Claims 21-31 have been added.

Applicants maintain that the amendments add no new matter and are fully supported by the specification as originally filed. Support for the amendments to Claims 4-5 can be found, for example, in Example 18 beginning at paragraph [0529], as well as paragraph [0336] of the specification. Support for the amendments to Claim 14 can be found, for example, at paragraphs [0012], [0227], [0317], and [0327] of the specification. Support for the amendment to Claim 16 and new Claims 21-25 can be found, for example, at paragraph [0012]. Support for new Claims 26-31 can be found, for example, in the claims as originally filed, and paragraphs [0227] and [0317].

Claims 4-6, 11-14, and 16-31 are presented for examination. Applicants respond below to the specific rejections raised by the PTO in the Office Action mailed December 1, 2004. For the reasons set forth below, Applicants respectfully traverse.

Correction of Inventorship under 37 CFR §1.48(b)

Applicants request that several inventors be deleted, as these inventors' inventions are no longer being claimed in the present application as a result of prosecution. The fee as set forth in § 1.17(i) is submitted herewith.

Specification:

The PTO has objected to the title as not being descriptive. Applicants have amended the title herein.

The PTO has stated that the application contains sequence disclosures that are encompassed by the definitions for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences set forth in 37 C.F.R. § 1.821(a)(1) and (a)(2). The PTO states that the application fails to comply with the requirements of 37 C.F.R. § 1.821 through 1.825 because the application does not contain, as a separate part of the disclosure on a paper copy, a "Sequence Listing" as required by 37 C.F.R. § 1.821(c).

Applicants submit herewith a response to the Notice to Comply which amends the specification to include a paper copy of the "Sequence Listing," which is also submitted herewith.

IDS:

The PTO has requested additional information on the references cited in the BLAST results reported in the Information Disclosure Statement filed September 17, 2002. Applicants submit herewith more detailed information regarding the cited sequences (attached as Exhibit 1).

Priority Determination:

The PTO has stated that because the claimed nucleotide has no utility, the priority under 35 U.S.C. § 120 is set at the instant filing date, May 8, 2002. Applicants have previously listed the priority information for the instant application in a Preliminary Amendment mailed September 4, 2002. The preliminary amendment states that the instant application is a continuation of, and claims priority under 35 U.S.C. § 120 to, US Application 10/006867 filed 12/6/2001, which is a continuation of, and claims priority under 35 U.S.C. § 120 to, PCT

Application PCT/US00/23328 filed 8/24/2000, which claims priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119 to US Provisional Application 60/170262 filed 12/9/1999.

Applicants submit that for the reasons stated below, the claimed nucleic acids have a credible, substantial, and specific utility. The sequences of SEQ ID NOs: 129 and 130 were first disclosed in US Provisional Application 60/170262 filed 12/9/1999 in Figures 1 and 2. The data in Example 18 (Tumor Versus Normal Differential Tissue Expression Distribution), relied on in part for the utility of the claimed nucleic acids, were first disclosed in PCT Application PCT/US00/23328 filed 8/24/2000, on page 93, line 3, through page 96, line 35.

Rejections under 35 U.S.C. § 112, second paragraph – Indefiniteness

The PTO has rejected Claims 1-6, 8-10 and 14-20 under 35 U.S.C. § 112, second paragraph, as being indefinite. The PTO objects to the phrase "the extracellular domain" as PRO1928 is not disclosed as being expressed on a cell surface. The PTO further objects to the recitation of "the extracellular domain", "lacking its associated signal sequence" because a signal sequence is not generally considered part of an extracellular domain. Applicants have amended Claims 4-6 and 14 to delete any reference to an extracellular domain.

The PTO also objects to the use of "hybridize" and "stringent conditions" since what hybridizes depends on the conditions under which the hybridization is carried out, and "stringent conditions" is a relative term. Applicants have amended Claims 14 and 16 to specify the conditions under which the hybridization occurs. Thus, Applicants request that the PTO reconsider and withdraw the indefiniteness rejection under 35 U.S.C. §112, second paragraph.

Rejection under 35 U.S.C. §101 – Utility

The PTO has rejected Claims 1-20 as lacking a specific, substantial, and credible utility. The PTO asserts that there is no biological activity, expression pattern, phenotype, disease or condition, ligand, binding partner, or any other specific feature that is disclosed as being associated with PRO1928. One of the asserted utilities for the claimed nucleic acids is use as a diagnostic tool, as well as therapeutically as a target for treatment, based on the data that PRO1928 cDNA is more highly expressed in normal skin tissue compared to melanoma tumor. The PTO has rejected this utility arguing that there is no supporting evidence to indicate that the polypeptide encoded by the claimed nucleic acids of the instant invention is more highly

expressed in some normal and tumor tissue compared to their tumor and normal counterparts. The PTO also asserts that the evidence that the polynucleotide is more highly expressed in normal skin is insufficient because it does not disclose what the normal level of expression is, does not indicate how high the expression level is compared to melanoma tumor, it lacks statistical correlation, and because the type or kind of tumor, even if it is malignant, is not described. The PTO asserts that without knowing the identity of the tumor, one of skill in the art cannot use the polynucleotides for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes. Also, the PTO argues that because the normal tissue and tumor samples were from different humans, there is no possibility of direct comparison between the two. The PTO also states that the specification does not disclose a correlation between any specific disorder and the altered level of the claimed nucleic acids encoding the polypeptides. The PTO also states that because cancerous tissue is aneuploid, the data is unreliable. Finally the PTO argues that there is no correlation between protein expression and nucleic acid levels.

Applicants respectfully disagree.

Utility – Legal Standard

According to the Utility Examination Guidelines ("Utility Guidelines"), 66 Fed. Reg. 1092 (2001) an invention complies with the utility requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 101, if it has at least one asserted "specific, substantial, and credible utility" or a "well-established utility."

Under the Utility Guidelines, a utility is "specific" when it is particular to the subject matter claimed. For example, it is generally not enough to state that a nucleic acid is useful as a diagnostic tool without also identifying the condition that is to be diagnosed.

The requirement of "substantial utility" defines a "real world" use, and derives from the Supreme Court's holding in *Brenner v. Manson*, 383 U.S. 519, 534 (1966) stating that "The basic *quid pro quo* contemplated by the Constitution and the Congress for granting a patent monopoly is the benefit derived by the public from an invention with substantial utility." In explaining the "substantial utility" standard, M.P.E.P. § 2107.01 cautions, however, that Office personnel must be careful not to interpret the phrase "immediate benefit to the public" or similar formulations used in certain court decisions to mean that products or services based on the claimed invention must be "currently available" to the public in order to satisfy the utility requirement. "Rather, *any reasonable use that an applicant has identified for the invention that can be viewed as providing*

a public benefit should be accepted as sufficient, at least with regard to defining a 'substantial' utility." (M.P.E.P. § 2107.01, emphasis added).

The mere consideration that further experimentation might be performed to more fully develop the claimed subject matter does not support a finding of lack of utility. M.P.E.P. § 2107.01 III cites *In re Brana*, 51 F.3d 1560, 1566, 34 U.S.P.Q.2d 1436 (Fed. Cir. 1995) in stating that "Usefulness in patent law ... necessarily includes the expectation of further research and development. The stage at which an invention in this field becomes useful is well before it is ready to be administered to humans." Further, "[T]o violate § 101 the claimed device must be totally incapable of achieving a useful result." *Juicy Whip Inc. v. Orange Bang Inc.*, 51 USPQ2d 1700 (Fed. Cir. 1999), *citing Brooktree Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 977 F.2d 1555, 1571 (Fed.Cir.1992).

Indeed, the Guidelines for Examination of Applications for Compliance With the Utility Requirement, set forth in M.P.E.P. § 2107 II(B)(1) gives the following instruction to patent examiners: "If the applicant has asserted that the claimed invention is useful for any particular practical purpose ... and the assertion would be considered credible by a person of ordinary skill in the art, do not impose a rejection based on lack of utility."

Utility need NOT be Proved to a Statistical Certainty – a Reasonable Correlation between the Evidence and the Asserted Utility is Sufficient

An Applicant's assertion of utility creates a presumption of utility that will be sufficient to satisfy the utility requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 101, "unless there is a reason for one skilled in the art to question the objective truth of the statement of utility or its scope." *In re Langer*, 503 F.2d 1380, 1391, 183 USPQ 288, 297 (CCPA 1974). *See, also In re Jolles*, 628 F.2d 1322, 206 USPQ 885 (CCPA 1980); *In re Irons*, 340 F.2d 974, 144 USPQ 351 (1965); *In re Sichert*, 566 F.2d 1154, 1159, 196 USPQ 209, 212-13 (CCPA 1977). Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 101 is a question of fact. *Raytheon v. Roper*, 724 F.2d 951, 956, 220 USPQ 592, 596 (Fed. Cir. 1983) cert. denied, 469 US 835 (1984). The evidentiary standard to be used throughout *ex parte* examination in setting forth a rejection is a preponderance of the evidence, or "more likely than not" standard. *In re Oetiker*, 977 F.2d 1443, 1445, 24 USPQ2d 1443, 1444 (Fed. Cir. 1992). This is stated explicitly in the M.P.E.P.:

> [T]he applicant does not have to provide evidence sufficient to establish that an asserted utility is true "beyond a reasonable doubt." **Nor must the applicant provide evidence such that it establishes an asserted utility as a matter of statistical certainty**. Instead, evidence will be sufficient if, considered as a whole, it leads a person of ordinary skill in the art to conclude that the asserted utility is more likely than not true. M.P.E.P. at § 2107.02, part VII (2004) (underline emphasis in original, bold emphasis added, internal citations omitted).

The PTO has the initial burden to offer evidence "that one of ordinary skill in the art would reasonably doubt the asserted utility." *In re Brana*, 51 F.3d 1560, 1566, 34 U.S.P.Q.2d 1436 (Fed. Cir. 1995). Only then does the burden shift to the Applicant to provide rebuttal evidence. *Id.* As stated in the M.P.E.P., such rebuttal evidence does not need to absolutely prove that the asserted utility is real. Rather, the evidence only needs to be reasonably indicative of the asserted utility.

In *Fujikawa v. Wattanasin*, 93 F.3d 1559, 39 U.S.P.Q.2d 1895 (Fed. Cir. 1996), the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit upheld a PTO decision that *in vitro* testing of a novel pharmaceutical compound was sufficient to establish practical utility, stating the following rule:

> [T]esting is often required to establish practical utility. But the test results **need not absolutely prove** that the compound is pharmacologically active. All that is required is that the tests be "*reasonably* indicative of the desired [pharmacological] response." In other words, there must be **a sufficient correlation** between the tests and an asserted pharmacological activity so as to convince those skilled in the art, **to a reasonable probability**, that the novel compound will exhibit the asserted pharmacological behavior." *Fujikawa v. Wattanasin*, 93 F.3d 1559, 1564, 39 U.S.P.Q.2d 1895 (Fed. Cir. 1996) (internal citations omitted, bold emphasis added, italics in original).

While the *Fujikawa* case was in the context of utility for pharmaceutical compounds, the principals stated by the Court are applicable in the instant case where the asserted utility is for a diagnostic use – utility does not have to be established to an absolute certainty, rather, the evidence must convince a person of skill in the art "to a reasonable probability." In addition, the evidence need not be direct, so long as there is a "sufficient correlation" between the tests performed and the asserted utility.

Taken together, the legal standard for demonstrating utility is a relatively low hurdle. An Applicant need only provide evidence such that it is **more likely than not that a person of skill in the art would be convinced, to a reasonable probability, that the asserted utility is true**. The evidence need not be direct evidence, so long as there is a reasonable correlation between the

evidence and the asserted utility. The Applicant **does not need to provide evidence such that it establishes an asserted utility as a matter of statistical certainty.**

Even assuming that the PTO has met its initial burden to offer evidence that one of ordinary skill in the art would reasonably doubt the truth of the asserted utility, Applicants assert that they have met their burden of providing rebuttal evidence such that it is more likely than not those skilled in the art, to a reasonable probability, would believe that the claimed invention is useful as a diagnostic tool for cancer.

Substantial Utility

*The Data in Example 18 are Data Regarding Differential mRNA Levels, **not** Gene Amplification*

Applicants begin by clarifying that the data concerning the differential expression of the PRO1928 gene presented in Example 18 relate to gene expression, **not** gene amplification. The description of Example 18 makes clear that the results were obtained by quantitative PCR amplification of cDNA libraries. It is well known in the art that cDNA libraries are made from mRNA, and reflect the level of mRNA for a particular gene in the source tissue. Thus, Example 18 is reporting a measure of the *expression* of the PRO1928 gene, i.e. mRNA levels, not its *amplification*, i.e. the number of copies of PRO1928 in the genome.

As the PTO has indicated, gene amplification, i.e. an increased number of copies of a gene in the genome, can result from tissue being aneuploid. The PTO states that Sen *et al.* teaches that cancerous tissue is known to be aneuploid, and that higher amplification of a gene does not necessarily mean higher expression in the cancerous tissue. The PTO suggests that the results reported in Example 18 are unreliable because they "are not corrected for aneuploidy." Office Action at 8. The PTO also relies on Pennica *et al.* to teach that "it does not necessarily follow that an increase in gene copy number results in increased gene expression." Office Action at 8 (emphasis added).

Whether or not gene amplification leads to increased gene expression is irrelevant to this particular application. Likewise, whether the differential mRNA expression of the PRO1928 gene reported in Example 18 is due to an increase or decrease in copy number, or alternatively due to an increase or decrease in transcription rates, is simply not relevant. Applicants have provided reliable evidence that the PRO1928 mRNA is differentially expressed in certain tumors. Whether this differential expression is due to changes in gene copy number, transcription rates, a

combination of the two, or some other known or unknown cellular mechanism is simply not relevant to Applicants' asserted utility. It is not clear how Applicants should "correct" the reported results for aneuploidy.

Summary of Applicants' Arguments and the PTO's Response

In an attempt to clarify Applicants' argument, Applicants offer a summary of their argument and the disputed issues involved. Applicants assert that the claimed nucleic acids have utility as diagnostic tools for cancer, particularly skin cancer. Applicants' asserted utility rests on the following argument:

1. Applicants assert they have provided reliable evidence that mRNA for the PRO1928 polypeptide is expressed at least two-fold higher in normal skin than compared to melanoma tumor, and therefore the claimed nucleic acids are useful as diagnostic tools. Applicants are not asserting that the claimed nucleic acids will necessarily provide a definitive diagnosis of cancer, but rather that they are useful, alone or in combination with other diagnostic tools to assist in the diagnosis of certain cancers.

2. Applicants submit that it is not necessary to know what role the PRO1928 gene plays in cancer to use its differential expression as a diagnostic tool.

3. It is not required to prove that the PRO1928 polypeptide is also differentially expressed in certain tumors to establish the utility of the claimed nucleic acids.

Applicants understand the PTO to be making several arguments in response to Applicants' asserted utility:

1. The PTO has challenged the reliability of the evidence reported in Example 18, and states that it provides no information regarding the biological significance of the differential expression, or whether it is the cause or result of the tumors;

2. The PTO cites Sen *et al.* and Pennica *et al.* to support its position that it does not necessarily follow that an increase in gene copy number results in increased gene expression and increased polypeptide expression;

3. The PTO concludes that based on the cited literature, the data of Example 18 do not necessarily indicate anything significant regarding the claimed polypeptides. Therefore, further research needs to be done to use PRO1928 as a cancer diagnostic tool. *See* Office Action at 7-9.

As detailed below, Applicants submit that the PTO has failed to meet its initial burden to offer evidence "that one of ordinary skill in the art would reasonably doubt the asserted utility." *In re Brana*, 51 F.3d 1560, 1566, 34 U.S.P.Q.2d 1436 (Fed. Cir. 1995). First, Applicants submit herewith a copy of a declaration of J. Christopher Grimaldi, (attached as Exhibit 2) which establishes the reliability of the data of Example 18. Knowing the biological significance of the data, or the role of PRO1928 in cancer, is not necessary to use the claimed nucleic acids as cancer diagnostic tools. Second, as discussed above and can be seen from Applicants' summary of their argument, Applicants submit that any lack of correlation between gene amplification and gene expression is not at issue in this application and therefore the Sen *et al.* and Pennica *et al.* references are not relevant. Third, Applicants submit that given the well-established correlation between a change in the level of mRNA with a corresponding change in the levels of the encoded protein, the PRO1928 protein is likely differentially expressed in certain tumors. However, utility for the pending claims does not rely on whether the encoded polypeptide is overexpressed, and as such whether or not increased levels of PRO1928 mRNA correlate with increased levels of PRO1928 protein is not presently an issue.

Finally, even if the PTO has met its initial burden, Applicants have submitted enough rebuttal evidence such that it is **more likely than not** that a person of skill in the art would be convinced, **to a reasonable probability,** that the asserted utility is true. As stated above, Applicants ' evidence need not be direct evidence, so long as there is a reasonable correlation between the evidence and the asserted utility. **The standard is not absolute or statistical certainty.**

Applicants have established that the Gene Encoding the PRO1928 Polypeptide is Differentially Expressed in Certain Cancers compared to Normal Tissue and is Useful as a Diagnostic Tool

Applicants first address the PTO's argument that the evidence of higher expression of the gene encoding the PRO1928 polypeptide in normal skin tissue compared to melanoma tumor is insufficient because it does not disclose what the normal level of expression is, does not indicate how high the expression level is compared to melanoma tumor, it lacks statistical correlation, and because the type or kind of tumor, even if it is malignant, is not described. Applicants also address the PTO's argument that because the normal tissue and tumor samples were from different humans, there is no possibility of direct comparison between the two, and that because

cancerous tissue is aneuploid, the data is unreliable. Applicants submit that the gene expression data provided in Example 18 of the present application are sufficient to establish a specific and substantial utility for the claimed nucleic acids related to the gene encoding the PRO1928 polypeptide.

Applicants have submitted herewith a copy of a declaration of J. Christopher Grimaldi, an expert in the field of cancer biology, originally submitted in a related co-pending and co-owned patent application Serial No. 10/063,557 (Exhibit 2). In paragraph 5 of his declaration, Mr. Grimaldi states that the gene expression studies reported in Example 18 of the instant application were made from pooled samples of normal and of tumor tissues.

In paragraphs 6 and 7, Mr. Grimaldi explains that the semi-quantitative analysis employed to generate the data of Example 18 is sufficient to determine if a gene is over- or underexpressed in tumor cells compared to corresponding normal tissue. He states that any visually detectable difference seen between two samples is indicative of at least a two-fold difference in cDNA between the tumor tissue and the counterpart normal tissue. Thus, the results of Example 18 reflect at least a two-fold difference between normal and tumor samples.

In addition, Applicants provide herewith as Exhibit 3 a copy of page 122 of the 2002-2003 New England Biolabs catalog. Exhibit 3 shows DNA size markers of differing lengths run on an agarose gel. The column on the left provides the mass of each marker in nanograms and the column on the right provides the length of the marker. It is apparent that the band intensity of markers having mass differences of two-fold are readily distinguishable by eye (*see e.g.*, the difference in band intensities of the 0.1kb fragment present at 61ng and the 0.5kb marker present at 124ng). Accordingly, Applicants maintain that the procedures used to detect differences in expression levels were sufficiently sensitive to detect two-fold differences.

He also states that the results of the gene expression studies indicate that the genes of interest "can be used to differentiate tumor from normal," thus establishing their reliability. He explains that, contrary to the PTO's assertions, "The precise levels of gene expression are irrelevant; what matters is that there is a relative difference in expression between normal tissue and tumor tissue." (Paragraph 7). Thus, since it is the relative level of expression between normal tissue and suspected cancerous tissue that is important, the precise level of expression in normal tissue is irrelevant. Likewise, there is no need for quantitative data to compare the level of expression in normal and tumor tissue. As Mr. Grimaldi states, "If a difference is detected,

this indicates that the gene and its corresponding polypeptide and antibodies against the polypeptide are useful for diagnostic purposes, to screen samples to differentiate between normal and tumor."

Applicants submit that a lack of known role for PRO1928 in cancer does not prevent its use as a diagnostic tool for cancer. Whether the differential expression of PRO1928 is a cause or result of the melanoma tumors is irrelevant to whether its differential expression can be used to assist in diagnosis of cancer – one does not need to know why PRO1928 is differentially expressed, or what the consequence of the differential expression is, in order to exploit the differential expression to distinguish tumor from normal tissue.

The PTO has recognized that the utility of a nucleic acid does not depend on the function of the encoded gene product. The Utility Examination Guidelines published on January 5, 2001 state "In addition, the utility of a claimed DNA does not necessarily depend on the function of the encoded gene product. A claimed DNA may have a specific and substantial utilty because, e.g. it hybridizes near a disease-associated gene or it has a gene regulating activity." (Federal Register, Volume 66, page 1095, Comment 14). While Applicants appreciate that actions taken in other applications are not binding on the PTO with respect to the present application, Applicants note that the PTO issues patents relating to nucleic acids which are useful for diagnosing particular conditions regardless of whether the nucleic acids are the causative agent for the condition. For example, polymorphisms which are indicative of a predisposition to a particular condition are patentable (*see, e.g.,* U.S. Patent No. 6,465,185, U.S. Patent No. 6,228,582, and U.S. Patent No. 6,162,604 submitted herewith as Exhibits 4-6), even though they may or may not cause the disease itself. Similarly, the present nucleic acids which are useful for determining whether an individual has cancer are useful regardless of whether or not they are the cause of the cancer.

The PTO also argues that because cancerous tissue can be aneuploid, and the data in the instant application was not corrected for aneuploidy, "a higher amplification of a gene does not necessarily mean higher expression or lower in a tissue, but can merely be an indication that the cancer tissue is aneuploid." Office Action at 7. The PTO relies on a single reference, Sen, 2000, Curr. Opin. Oncol. 12:82-88 (hereinafter Sen).

Applicants agree that Sen teaches that most cancerous tissues are aneuploid, and that it is possible that the results reported in Example 18 may be due to aneuploidy in the tumor cells

tested. However, as discussed above, Applicants fail to see how whether the differential expression reported in Example 18 is due to aneuploidy or not is relevant to the utility of the disclosed nucleic acids, or their corresponding polypeptides and antibodies. Regardless of whether the differential expression of the gene encoding PRO1928 is a result of increased or decreased transcription of the gene, aneuploidy, or some other regulatory mechanism, the fact remains that it is more highly expressed in normal skin compared to melanoma tumor, and it is therefore useful as a diagnostic tool for cancer since it can be used as a molecular marker for cancer.

In conclusion, Applicants submit that the evidence reported in Example 18, combined with the Grimaldi Declaration and reference submitted as Exhibits 2 and 3, establish that there is at least a two-fold difference in PRO1928 cDNA between normal skin and melanoma tumor. Therefore, it follows that expression levels of the PRO1928 gene can be used to distinguish melanoma tumor tissue from normal skin. The PTO has not offered any significant arguments or evidence to the contrary. Applicants have therefore established a utility for the claimed nucleic acids as diagnostic tools for cancer, particularly melanoma tumors.

Applicants have established that the Accepted Understanding in the Art is that there is a Positive Correlation between mRNA Levels and the Level of Expression of the Encoded Protein

Applicants have asserted that there is a direct correlation between changes in the level of mRNA and changes in the level of expression of the corresponding protein.

In response, relying on a single example of one gene reported in Pennica, the PTO states that the literature reports that it does not *necessarily* follow that an increase in gene copy number results in increased gene expression and increased polypeptide expression. The PTO focuses on the statement from Pennica that the *WISP-2* gene DNA was amplified in colon tumors, but its mRNA expression was significantly reduced in the majority of tumors compared with the expression in normal colonic mucosa from the same patient. Office Action at 8-9. As an aside, it should be noted that this result may not even be real, as the authors explain: "Because the center of the 20q13 amplicon [of which *WISP-2* is a part] has not yet been identified, it is possible that the apparent amplification observed for *WISP-2* may be caused by another gene in this amplicon." Pennica at 14722 (emphasis added).

The reference relied on by the PTO is irrelevant for two reasons. First, as Applicants have stated above, whether an increase in gene copy number leads to an increase in gene expression or protein expression is not presently an issue in this application. The data of Example 18 reflects mRNA data as assessed by examining cDNA created from mRNA. It is not gene amplification data. Thus, even if the lack of correlation between DNA copy number and mRNA level in Pennica is real, Pennica says nothing about a lack of correlation between the level of mRNA and the level of protein expression – Pennica did not even look at protein expression.

Second, because the claims have been amended such that the claimed nucleic acids are not defined by the sequence of the polypeptide they encode, the question of whether there is a correlation between changes in mRNA level and changes in the level of the corresponding protein **are not presently at issue**. However, Applicants submit that they have established for the record that it is well-established in the art that a change in the level of mRNA for a particular protein, generally leads to a corresponding change in the level of the encoded protein. Given Applicants' evidence of differential expression of the mRNA for the PRO1928 polypeptide in melanoma tumors, it is more likely than not that the PRO1928 polypeptide is also differentially expressed.

Applicants submit herewith a copy of a second Declaration by J. Christopher Grimaldi, an expert in the field of cancer biology (attached as Exhibit 7). This declaration was submitted in connection with the related co-pending and co-owned application Serial No. 10/063,557. As stated in paragraph 5 of the declaration, "Those who work in this field are well aware that in the vast majority of cases, when a gene is over-expressed…the gene product or polypeptide will also be over-expressed…. This same principal applies to gene under-expression." Further, "the detection of increased mRNA expression is expected to result in increased polypeptide expression, and the detection of decreased mRNA expression is expected to result in decreased polypeptide expression. The detection of increased or decreased polypeptide expression can be used for cancer diagnosis and treatment." The references cited in the declaration and submitted herewith support this statement.

Applicants also submit herewith a copy of the declaration of Paul Polakis, Ph.D. (attached as Exhibit 8), an expert in the field of cancer biology, originally submitted in a related and co-owned patent application Serial No. 10/032,996. As stated in paragraph 6 of his declaration:

> Based on my own experience accumulated in more than 20 years of research, including the data discussed in paragraphs 4 and 5 above [showing a positive correlation between mRNA levels and encoded protein levels in the vast majority of cases] and my knowledge of the relevant scientific literature, it is my considered scientific opinion that for human genes, an increased level of mRNA in a tumor cell relative to a normal cell typically correlates to a similar increase in abundance of the encoded protein in the tumor cell relative to the normal cell. In fact, *it remains a central dogma in molecular biology that increased mRNA levels are predictive of corresponding increased levels of the encoded protein.* (Emphasis added).

Dr. Polakis acknowledges that there are published cases where such a correlation does not exist, but states that it is his opinion, based on over 20 years of scientific research, that "such reports are exceptions to the commonly understood general rule that increased mRNA levels are predictive of corresponding increased levels of the encoded protein." (Polakis Declaration, paragraph 6).

The statements of Grimaldi and Polakis are supported by the teachings in Molecular Biology of the Cell, a leading textbook in the field (Bruce Alberts, *et al.*, Molecular Biology of the Cell (3rd ed. 1994) (submitted herewith as Exhibit 9) and (4th ed. 2002) (submitted herewith as Exhibit 10)). Figure 9-2 of Exhibit 9 shows the steps at which eukaryotic gene expression can be controlled. The first step depicted is transcriptional control. Exhibit 9 provides that "[f]or most genes transcriptional controls are paramount. This makes sense because, of all the possible control points illustrated in Figure 9-2, only transcriptional control ensures that no superfluous intermediates are synthesized." Exhibit 9 at 403 (emphasis added). In addition, the text states that "Although controls on the initiation of gene transcription are the predominant form of regulation for most genes, other controls can act later in the pathway from RNA to protein to modulate the amount of gene product that is made." Exhibit 9 at 453 (emphasis added). Thus, as established in Exhibit 9, the predominant mechanism for regulating the amount of protein produced is by regulating transcription initiation.

In Exhibit 10, Figure 6-3 on page 302 illustrates the basic principle that there is a correlation between increased gene expression and increased protein expression. The accompanying text states that "a cell can change (or regulate) the expression of each of its genes according to the needs of the moment – *most obviously by controlling the production of its mRNA*." Exhibit 10 at 302 (emphasis added). Similarly, Figure 6-90 on page 364 of Exhibit 10 illustrates the path from gene to protein. The accompanying text states that while potentially

each step can be regulated by the cell, "the initiation of transcription is the most common point for a cell to regulate the expression of each of its genes." Exhibit 10 at 364 (emphasis added). This point is repeated on page 379, where the authors state that of all the possible points for regulating protein expression, "[f]or most genes transcriptional controls are paramount." Exhibit 10 at 379 (emphasis added).

Further support for Applicants' position can be found in the textbook, Genes VI, (Benjamin Lewin, Genes VI (1997)) (submitted herewith as Exhibit 11) which states "having acknowledged that control of gene expression can occur at multiple stages, and that production of RNA cannot inevitably be equated with production of protein, it is clear that the overwhelming majority of regulatory events occur at the initiation of transcription." *Genes VI* at 847-848 (emphasis added).

Additional support is also found in Zhigang *et al.*, World Journal of Surgical Oncology 2:13, 2004, submitted herewith as Exhibit 12. Zhigang studied the expression of prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) protein and mRNA to validate it as a potential molecular target for diagnosis and treatment of human prostate cancer. The data showed "a high degree of correlation between PSCA protein and mRNA expression" Exhibit 12 at 6. Of the samples tested, 81 out of 87 showed a high degree of correlation between mRNA expression and protein expression. The authors conclude that "it is demonstrated that PSCA protein and mRNA overexpressed in human prostate cancer, and that the increased protein level of PSCA was resulted from the upregulated transcription of its mRNA." Exhibit 12 at 11. Even though the correlation between mRNA expression and protein expression occurred in 93% of the samples tested, not 100%, the authors state that "PSCA may be a promising molecular marker for the clinical prognosis of human Pca and a valuable target for diagnosis and therapy of this tumor." *Id.*

Further, Meric *et al.*, Molecular Cancer Therapeutics, vol. 1, 971-979 (2002), submitted herewith as Exhibit 13, states the following:

> The **fundamental principle** of molecular therapeutics in cancer is to exploit the differences in gene expression between cancer cells and normal cells...[M]ost efforts have concentrated on identifying differences in gene expression at the level of mRNA, which can be attributable to either DNA amplification or to differences in transcription. Meric *et al.* at 971 (emphasis added).

Those of skill in the art would not be focusing on differences in gene expression between cancer cells and normal cells if there were no correlation between gene expression and protein expression.

As discussed above, whether or not increased levels of PRO1928 mRNA correlate with increased levels of PRO1928 protein is not presently an issue. However, Applicants submit that together, the declarations of Grimaldi and Polakis, the accompanying references, and the excerpts and references provided above all establish that the accepted understanding in the art is that there is a reasonable correlation between changes in gene expression and the level of the encoded protein. In light of the lack of support for any argument by the PTO to the contrary, Applicants submit that they have established that it is more likely than not that one of skill in the art would believe that because the PRO1928 mRNA is expressed at a higher level in normal skin compared to melanoma tumor, the PRO1928 polypeptide will also be expressed at a higher level in normal skin compared to melanoma tumor.

The Claimed Nucleic Acids would have Diagnostic Utility even if there is no Direct Correlation between Gene Expression and Protein Expression

Even assuming *arguendo* that, there is no direct correlation between changes in gene expression and changes in protein expression for PRO1928, which Applicants submit is not true, nucleic acids related to a gene that is differentially expressed in cancer would **still** have a credible, specific and substantial utility.

In paragraph 6 of the Grimaldi Declaration, Exhibit 7, Mr. Grimaldi explains that:

> However, even in the rare case where the protein expression does not correlate with the mRNA expression, this still provides significant information useful for cancer diagnosis and treatment. For example, if over- or under-expression of a gene product does not correlate with over- or under-expression of mRNA in certain tumor types but does so in others, then identification of both gene expression and protein expression enables more accurate tumor classification and hence better determination of suitable therapy.

This conclusion is echoed in the Declaration of Avi Ashkenazi, Ph.D. (attached as Exhibit 14), an expert in the field of cancer biology. This declaration was previously submitted in connection with co-pending application Serial No. 09/903,925. Applicants submit that simultaneous testing of gene expression and gene product expression enables more accurate

tumor classification, even if there is no positive correlation between the two. This leads to better determination of a suitable therapy.

This is further supported by the teachings in the article by Hanna and Mornin (attached as Exhibit 15). The article teaches that the HER-2/neu gene has been shown to be amplified and/or overexpressed in 10%-30% of invasive breast cancers and in 40-60% of intraductal breast carcinoma. Further, the article teaches that diagnosis of breast cancer includes testing both the amplification of the HER-2/neu gene (by FISH) as well as the overexpression of the HER-2/neu gene product (by IHC). Even when the protein is not overexpressed, the assay relying on both tests leads to a more accurate classification of the cancer and a more effective treatment of it.

The Applicants have established that it is the general, accepted understanding in the art that there is a positive correlation between changes in gene expression and changes in protein expression. However, even when this is not the case, a gene that is differentially expressed in cancer would still have utility. Thus, Applicants have demonstrated another basis for supporting the asserted utility for the claimed nucleic acids.

The Arguments made by the PTO are Not Sufficient to satisfy the PTO's Initial Burden of Offering Evidence "that one of ordinary skill in the art would reasonably doubt the asserted utility"

As stated above, an Applicant's assertion of utility creates a presumption of utility that will be sufficient to satisfy the utility requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 101, "unless there is a reason for one skilled in the art to question the objective truth of the statement of utility or its scope." *In re Langer*, 503 F.2d 1380, 1391, 183 USPQ 288, 297 (CCPA 1974). The evidentiary standard to be used throughout *ex parte* examination in setting forth a rejection is a preponderance of the evidence, or "more likely than not" standard. *In re Oetiker*, 977 F.2d 1443, 1445, 24 USPQ2d 1443, 1444 (Fed. Cir. 1992). This is stated explicitly in the M.P.E.P.:

> [T]he applicant does not have to provide evidence sufficient to establish that an asserted utility is true "beyond a reasonable doubt." **Nor must the applicant provide evidence such that it establishes an asserted utility as a matter of statistical certainty**. Instead, evidence will be sufficient if, considered as a whole, it leads a person of ordinary skill in the art to conclude that the asserted utility is more likely than not. M.P.E.P. at § 2107.02, part VII (2004) (underline emphasis in original, bold emphasis added, internal citations omitted).

The PTO has the initial burden to offer evidence "that one of ordinary skill in the art would reasonably doubt the asserted utility." *In re Brana*, 51 F.3d 1560, 1566, 34 U.S.P.Q.2d 1436 (Fed. Cir. 1995). Only then does the burden shift to the Applicant to provide rebuttal evidence. *Id.* As stated in the M.P.E.P., such rebuttal evidence does not need to absolutely prove that the asserted utility is real. Rather, the evidence only needs to be reasonably indicative of the asserted utility.

The PTO has not offered any arguments or cited any references to establish "that one of ordinary skill in the art would reasonably doubt" that a gene differentially expressed in certain tumors can be used as a diagnostic tool. As stated above, the article by Sen provides no support for the PTO's position since whether cancer is aneuploid or not is irrelevant to the utility of the claimed nucleic acids. Likewise, whether or not gene amplification leads to increased gene expression is not relevant, and thus the article by Pennica *et al.*, 1998, PNAS USA 95:14717-14722, does not support the PTO's position.

Given the lack of support for the PTO's position, Applicants submit that the PTO has not met its initial burden of overcoming the presumption that the asserted utility is sufficient to satisfy the utility requirement. And even if the PTO has met that burden, the Applicants' supporting rebuttal evidence is sufficient to establish that one of skill in the art would be more likely than not to believe that the claimed nucleic acids can be used as diagnostic tools for cancer, particularly skin cancer.

Specific Utility

The Asserted Substantial Utilities are Specific to the Claimed Nucleic Acids

Applicants next address the PTO's assertions that there is no biological activity, expression pattern, phenotype, disease of condition, ligand, binding partner, or any other specific feature that is disclosed as being associated with PRO1928. Applicants respectfully disagree.

Specific Utility is defined as utility which is "specific to the subject matter claimed," in contrast to "a general utility that would be applicable to the broad class of the invention." M.P.E.P. § 2107.01 I. Applicants submit that the evidence of differential expression of the PRO1928 gene in certain types of cancer cells, along with the declarations discussed above, provide a specific utility for the claimed nucleic acids.

As discussed above, there are significant data which show that the mRNA encoding the PRO1928 polypeptide is expressed at least two-fold higher in normal skin tissue compared to melanoma tumor. These data are strong evidence that the gene encoding the PRO1928 polypeptide is associated with melanoma tumors. Thus, contrary to the assertions of the PTO, Applicants submit that they have provided evidence associating the gene encoding PRO1928 with a specific disease. This is a specific utility – it is not a general utility that would apply to the broad class of nucleic acids.

Conclusion

The PTO has asserted two arguments for why there is a lack of a substantial utility: (1) that the data reporting differential expression of the PRO1928 gene in certain cancers is not reliable and does not establish a correlation between the differential expression and the tumors; and, (2) that because there is no necessary correlation between gene amplification and protein expression, the claimed polypeptides cannot be used as cancer diagnostic or therapeutic tools. Applicants have addressed each of these arguments in turn.

First, the Applicants provided a first Declaration of Chris Grimaldi stating that the data in Example 18 are real and significant. This declaration also indicates that given the at least two-fold difference in expression levels, the disclosed nucleic acids and corresponding polypeptides have utility as cancer diagnostic tools. Applicants have demonstrated that it is not necessary to know the cause or consequence of the differential expression of PRO1928 nucleic acids and polypeptides in melanoma tumors in order to use them as diagnostic tools for cancer.

Next, Applicants assert that whether the encoded polypeptide is also differentially expressed in certain tumors is currently not at issue in this application. However, Applicants submit that the second Grimaldi Declaration and Polakis Declaration, the accompanying references, as well as the excerpts and references cited above, demonstrate that it is well-established in the art that a change in mRNA levels generally correlates to a corresponding change in the encoded protein levels. The PTO has not offered any substantial reasoning or evidence to the contrary.

Finally, the PTO asserts that there is no asserted specific utility. Applicants have pointed out that the substantial utilities described above are specific to the claimed nucleic acids because the PRO1928 gene and polypeptide are differentially expressed in melanoma tumors compared to

normal skin tissue. This is not a general utility that would apply to the broad class of nucleic acids.

Given the totality of the evidence provided, Applicants submit that they have established a substantial, specific, and credible utility for the claimed nucleic acids as diagnostic tools. According to the PTO Utility Examination Guidelines (2001), irrefutable proof of a claimed utility is not required. Rather, a specific, substantial, and credible utility requires only a "reasonable" confirmation of a real world context of use. Applicants remind the PTO that:

> A small degree of utility is sufficient . . . The claimed invention must only be capable of performing some beneficial function . . . An invention does not lack utility merely because the particular embodiment disclosed in the patent lacks perfection or performs crudely . . . A commercially successful product is not required . . . Nor is it essential that the invention accomplish all its intended functions . . . or operate under all conditions . . . partial success being sufficient to demonstrate patentable utility . . . In short, **the defense of non-utility cannot be sustained without proof of total incapacity**. If an invention is only partially successful in achieving a useful result, a rejection of the claimed invention as a whole based on a lack of utility is not appropriate. M.P.E.P. at 2107.01 (underline emphasis in original, bold emphasis added, citations omitted).

Applicants submit that they have established that it is more likely than not that one of skill in the art would reasonably accept the utility for the claimed nucleic acids as diagnostic tools as set forth in the specification. In view of the above, Applicants respectfully request that the PTO reconsider and withdraw the utility rejection under 35 U.S.C. §101.

Rejection under 35 U.S.C. §112, first paragraph – Enablement

The PTO rejected Claims 1-20 under 35 U.S.C. § 112, first paragraph, as containing subject matter which was not described in the specification in such a way as to enable one skilled in the art to use the invention. The PTO argues that because the claimed invention is not supported by a substantial, specific and credible utility, the claims are not enabled.

The PTO also states that even if a specific and substantial utility were established, they are enabled only for polynucleotides of SEQ ID NO: 129 and fragments that are usable as hybridization probes, they are not enabled for claims to polynucleotides with 80-99% sequence identity to SEQ ID NO: 129, those which encode polypeptides with 80-99% sequence identity to SEQ ID NO: 130, or those which hybridize to any of the above because there is no structural or functional information provided in the specification. The PTO states that there is insufficient

guidance regarding how to make PRO1928 polynucleotide variants. The PTO also states that the hybridization claims are not enabled because they do not recite that the polynucleotide encodes a protein having a specifically disclosed activity. The PTO next asserts that even if utility of the claimed nucleic acids as hybridization probes is established, degenerate sequences are not enabled.

As an initial matter, Applicants submit that in the discussion of the 35 U.S.C. § 101 rejection above, Applicants have established a substantial, specific, and credible utility for the claimed nucleic acids. Applicants therefore request that the PTO reconsider and withdraw the enablement rejection to the extent that it is based on a lack of utility for the claimed nucleic acids.

As amended, the pending claims are to nucleic acids that have at least 95% or 99% nucleic acid sequence identity to the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:129 or its the full-length coding sequence, or the full-length coding sequence of the cDNA deposited under ATCC accession number 203542, and wherein the nucleic acid is "more highly expressed in normal skin tissue compared to melanoma tumor" or "hybridizes to the complement of a nucleic acid of SEQ ID NO: 129" under the specified stringent conditions. Other claimed nucleic acids are those which hybridize to the recited sequences under stringent conditions.

Applicants submit that the claimed nucleic acids are enabled, as one of skill in the art would know how to make and use them. It is well-established in the art how to make the claimed nucleic acids which have at least 95% or 99% sequence identity to the disclosed sequences related to SEQ ID NO: 129. Likewise, Applicants have disclosed how to determine if the claimed nucleic acids are differentially expressed in melanoma tumors compared to normal skin tissue (*see, e.g.,* Example 18 beginning at paragraph [0529] of the specification). Finally, it is well-known in the art how to determine if a nucleic acid hybridizes to the disclosed sequences under the specified stringent conditions. Thus, one of skill in the art would know how to make the claimed nucleic acids.

As discussed above, Applicants submit that they have established that one of skill in the art would believe that it is more likely than not that the PRO1928 gene is differentially expressed in melanoma tumors. Given the disclosure in the specification and the level of skill in the art, a skilled artisan would know how to use the claimed nucleic acids as diagnostic tools. For example, nucleic acids which have at least 95% or 99% sequence identity to the disclosed

sequences and are "more highly expressed in normal skin tissue compared to melanoma tumor" can be used as diagnostic tools since the claimed nucleic acids are themselves differentially expressed in certain tumors. A claimed nucleic acid which has at least 95% or 99% sequence identity to the disclosed sequences and "hybridizes to the complement of a nucleic acid of SEQ ID NO: 129," or which hybridizes to the disclosed sequences under the specified stringent conditions can be used as a hybridization probe to detect the expression of the PRO1928 gene, making it useful as a diagnostic tool. Given the skill in the art and the disclosure of how to make and use the claimed nucleic acids, Applicants request that the PTO reconsider and withdraw its rejection under 35 U.S.C. § 112, first paragraph.

Rejection under 35 U.S.C. §112, first paragraph – Written Description

The PTO has rejected Claims 1-5 and 15-20 under 35 U.S.C. §112, first paragraph, as containing subject matter which was not described in the specification in such a way as to reasonably convey to one skilled in the art that the inventors, at the time the application was filed, had possession of the invention. According to the PTO, because the claims do not require that the claimed polynucleotides encode a particular protein, or that any encoded protein possess any particular biological activity, the claims fail the written description requirement.

The Legal Standard for Written Description

The well-established test for sufficiency of support under the written description requirement of 35 U.S.C. §112 , first paragraph is whether the disclosure "reasonably conveys to artisan that the inventor had possession at that time of the later claimed subject matter." *In re Kaslow*, 707 F.2d 1366, 1375, 2121 USPQ 1089, 1096 (Fed. Cir. 1983); see also *Vas-Cath, Inc. v. Mahurkar*, 935 F.2d at1563, 19 USPQ2d at 1116 (Fed. Cir. 1991). The adequacy of written description support is a factual issue and is to be determined on a case-by-case basis. See e.g., *Vas-Cath, Inc. v. Mahurkar*, 935 F.2d at 1563, 19 USPQ2d at 1116 (Fed. Cir. 1991). The factual determination in a written description analysis depends on the nature of the invention and the amount of knowledge imparted to those skilled in the art by the disclosure. *Union Oil v. Atlantic Richfield Co.*, 208 F.3d 989, 996 (Fed. Cir. 2000).

The Current Invention is Adequately Described

As noted above, whether the Applicants were in possession of the invention as of the effective filing date of an application is a factual determination, reached by the consideration of a number of factors, including the level of knowledge and skill in the art, and the teaching provided by the specification. The inventor is not required to describe every single detail of his/her invention. An Applicant's disclosure obligation varies according to the art to which the invention pertains. The present invention pertains to the field of recombinant DNA/protein technology. It is well-established that the level of skill in this field is very high since a representative person of skill is generally a Ph.D. scientist with several years of experience. Accordingly, the teaching imparted in the specification must be evaluated through the eyes of a highly skilled artisan as of the date the invention was made.

The subject matter of the pending claims concerns nucleic acids having 95% or 99% sequence identity to the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 129, the full-length coding sequence of the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 129, or the full-length coding sequence of the cDNA deposited under ATCC accession number 2033542, with the functional recitation as amended: "more highly expressed in normal skin tissue compared to melanoma tumor" or "wherein said isolated nucleic acid hybridizes to the complement of a nucleic acid of SEQ ID NO: 129" under the specified conditions. Other claimed nucleic acids are those which hybridize to the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 129, the full-length coding sequence of the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 129, the full-length coding sequence of the cDNA deposited under ATCC accession number 2035422, or the complements thereof, under the specified stringent conditions. We turn first to the claims which recite specific high stringency hybridization conditions.

In *Enzo Biochem v. Gen-Probe Inc.*, 323 F.3d 956 (Fed. Cir. 2002), the Court held that functional descriptions of genetic material may satisfy the written description requirement. In so holding, the Court gave judicial notice to the USPTO's Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, which provides that the written description requirement may be satisfied when the disclosure provides sufficiently detailed identifying characteristics, such as "complete or partial structure, other physical and/or chemical properties, *functional characteristics when coupled with a known or disclosed correlation between function and structure*, or some combination of such characteristics." *Id.* at 964, quoting 66 Fed. Reg. at 1106 (emphasis in original). In *Enzo*, the

Court found describing nucleic acids based on their ability to hybridize to another nucleic acid sequence which was adequately described may be an adequate description of the nucleic acid. This is because the hybridization function of a nucleic acid is dependent on the sequences of the nucleic acid – a disclosed function which is coupled with a known correlation between function and structure. The Court favorably discussed the PTO's example wherein "genus claims to nucleic acids based on their hybridization properties…may be adequately described if they hybridize under highly stringent conditions to known sequences because such conditions dictate that all species within the genus will be structurally similar." *Id.* at 967 (citing *Application of [Written Description] Guidelines*, Example 9) (emphasis added).

Applicants submit that the stringent hybridization conditions specified in the pending claims, alone or in combination with the recited percent sequence identity, result in all species within the genus being structurally similar. As the *Enzo* Court noted, Examples 9 and 10 of the Application of Written Description Guidelines (hereinafter "Guidelines") make clear that specifying hybridization under highly stringent conditions yields "structurally similar DNAs." Guidelines, Example 9 at page 36. The analysis of a genus claim in Example 10 of the Guidelines states:

> [T]urning to the genus analysis, the art indicates that *there is no substantial variation within the [claimed] genus because of the stringency of hybridization conditions which yields structurally similar molecules*. The single disclosed species is representative of the genus because reduction to practice of this species, considered along with the defined hybridization conditions and the level of skill and knowledge in the art, are sufficient to allow the skilled artisan to recognize that applicant was in possession of the necessary common attributes or features of the elements possessed by the members of the genus. Guidelines, Example 10 at page 39 (emphasis added).

Given the level of skill in the art, specifying highly stringent conditions leads to "no substantial variation within the [claimed] genus," and therefore a skilled artisan would recognize that the Applicants were in possession of the necessary common attributes or features of the genus. This is contrary to the PTO's argument the claimed sequences do not possess "any particular conserved structure, or other disclosed distinguishing feature." (August 3, 2004 Office Action at 7). The common element or attribute of the claimed genus is that species of the genus are structurally related to SEQ ID NO: 129, such that they hybridize to SEQ ID NO: 129 or the related sequences under the specified high stringency conditions recited in the claims.

The present situation is not analogous to *Fiddes v. Baird*, 30 U.S.P.Q. 2d 1481, cited by the PTO. Unlike *Fiddes*, where arguably the structure of other mammalian sequences could not be conceived based on a single species of the genus, here the skill in the art is such that the sequence of nucleic acids which hybridize to SEQ ID NO: 129 under the conditions specified can be conceived. Here, the claimed genus is defined by its structure – members of the genus hybridize under the specified conditions to the specified sequences, each of which are adequately described in the specification.

Applicants submit that the pending claims relating to nucleic acids having 95% or 99% sequence identity to the nucleic acids related to SEQ ID NO: 129 with the functional recitation "more highly expressed in normal skin tissue compared to melanoma tumor" are also adequately described. In Example 14 of the written description training materials, the written description requirement was found to be satisfied for claims relating to polypeptides having 95% homology to a particular sequence and possessing a particular catalytic activity, even though the applicant had not made any variants. Similarly, the pending claims also have very high sequence homology to the disclosed sequences and must share the same expression pattern in certain tumors. In Example 14, the procedures for making variants were known in the art and the disclosure taught how to test for the claimed catalytic activity. Similarly, in the instant application, it is well known in the art how to make nucleic acids which have at least 95% sequence identity to the disclosed sequences, and the specification discloses how to test to determine if the sequence is differentially expressed in skin tumors. Like Example 14, the genus of nucleic acids that have at least 95% or 99% sequence identity to the disclosed sequences will not have substantial variation since all of the variants must have the same expression in certain tumors.

Furthermore, while Applicants appreciate that actions taken by the PTO in other applications are not binding with respect to the examination of the present application, Applicants note that the PTO has issued many patents containing claims to variant nucleic acids or variant proteins where the applicants did not actually make such nucleic acids or proteins. Representative patents include U.S. Patent No. 6,737,522, U.S. Patent No. 6,395,306, U.S. Patent No. 6,025,156, U.S. Patent No. 6,645,499, U.S. Patent No. 6,498,235, and U.S. Patent No. 6,730,502, which are attached hereto as Exhibits 16-21.

In conclusion, Applicants submit that they have satisfied the written description requirement for the pending claims based on the actual reduction to practice of SEQ ID NO: 129, by specifying the high stringency conditions under which hybridization occurs, and by describing the gene expression assay, all of which result in a lack of substantial variability in the species falling within the scope of the instant claims. Applicants submit that this disclosure would allow one of skill in the art to "recognize that the applicant was in possession of the necessary common attributes or features of the elements possessed by the members of the genus." Hence, Applicants respectfully request that the PTO reconsider and withdraw the written description rejection under 35 U.S.C. §112.

Rejection under 35 U.S.C. §102(b) – Anticipation

The PTO rejects Claims 1-20 as anticipated under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b) by Lal *et al.* (WO200000610 A2, January 2000) (hereinafter Lal), which was published on January 6, 2000. The PTO states that Lal discloses nucleotides encoding the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 130 of the instant invention, hybridization probes, vectors, and host cells.

As discussed above, Applicants claim priority to PCT Application PCT/US00/23328 filed 8/24/2000, and to US Provisional Application 60/170262 filed 12/9/1999. The sequences of SEQ ID NOs: 129 and 130 were first disclosed in US Provisional Application 60/170262 filed 12/9/1999 in Figures 1 and 2. The data in Example 18 (Tumor Versus Normal Differential Tissue Expression Distribution), relied on in part for the utility of the claimed nucleic acids, were first disclosed in PCT Application PCT/US00/23328 filed 8/24/2000, on page 93, line 3, through page 96, line 35. For the reasons detailed above, Applicants have established that the claimed nucleic acids have utility and are enabled. The instant application is therefore entitled to a priority date of at least August 24, 2000.

The publication date of Lal is January 6, 2000, less than a year before either the December 9, 1999 or August 24, 2000 priority dates claimed for the instant application. Therefore, Lal is not available as prior art under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b). Applicants therefore respectfully request that the rejection under 35 USC §102(b) be withdrawn.

Appl. No. : **10/063,736**
Filed : **May 8, 2002**

DELETION OF INVENTORS

Please correct the inventorship under 37 CFR §1.48(b) by removing the following inventors from the present application, as these inventors' inventions are no longer being claimed in the present application as a result of prosecution.:

Dan L. Eaton, Ellen Filvaroff, Mary E. Gerritsen, and Colin K. Watanabe.

EXHIBIT 1

```
###
Tue Feb  5 15:19:40 2002 [BLASTN 2.2.1 [Jul-12-2001], NCBI]

/home/ruby/va/Molbio/carpenda/tempids/ss.DNA81754 (1177 bp)
       /home/ruby/va/Molbio/carpenda/tempids/ss.DNA81754

Sequences producing High-scoring Segment Pairs:      Frame Score Match Pct E-val
  1 P_AAF92122 Human PRO1928 cDNA.                     +  1177  1177 100   0.0
  2 P_AAS46115 Human DNA encoding PRO polypeptide seque  +  1177  1177 100   0.0
  3 AX092398   Sequence 129 from Patent WO0116318.  DNA  +  1177  1177 100   0.0
  4 HSDJ686C3  Human DNA sequence from clone RP4-686C3   -  1172  1172 100   0.0

GenBank (Release 143, aug 2004)

1177 100   0.0
P_AAF92122  Human PRO1928 cDNA. 177 bp, cDNA, PAT 15-MAY-2001
ACCESSION   P_AAF92122
KEYWORDS    GENESEQ; Human; PRO protein; mapping;  patent; patentdb (v200420,
          23-SEP-2004).
SOURCE      Homo sapiens.
  ORGANISM  Homo sapiens.
REFERENCE   1  (bases 1 to 1177)
  AUTHORS   Eaton,D.L.,  Filvaroff,E.,  Gerritsen,M.E.,  Goddard,A.,
          Godowski,P.J. Grimaldi,C.J.,  Gurney,A.L.,  Watanabe,C.K.,
          Wood,W.I.
  TITLE     Eighty four nucleic acids encoding PRO polypeptides, useful in
          molecular  biology, including use as hybridization probes, and in
          chromosome and  gene mapping.
  JOURNAL   Patent: WO200116318-A2; Filing Date: 24-AUG-2000; 2000WO-US023328;
          Publication Date: 08-MAR-2001; Priority: 01-SEP-1999;
          99WO-US020111. 15-SEP-1999;   99WO-US021090. 07-DEC-1999;
          99US-0169495P. 09-DEC-1999;   99US-0170262P. 11-JAN-2000;
          2000US-0175481P. 18-FEB-2000; 2000WO-US004341. 18-FEB-2000;
          2000WO-US004342. 22-FEB-2000; 2000WO-US004414. 01-MAR-2000;
          2000WO-US005601. 03-MAR-2000; 2000US-0187202P. 21-MAR-2000;
          2000US-0191007P. 30-MAR-2000; 2000WO-US008439. 25-APR-2000;
          2000US-0199397P. 22-MAY-2000; 2000WO-US014042. 05-JUN-2000;
          2000US-0209832P; Assignee: (GETH ) GENENTECH INC; Cross Reference:
          WPI; 2001-183260/18. P-PSDB; AAB87590; Patent Format: Claim 2; Fig
          129; 278pp; English.
COMMENT     The present sequence is the coding sequence for a human PRO
          polypeptide  (secreted and transmembrane). The PRO protein, and PRO
          agonists, PRO  antagonists or anti-PRO antibodies are useful for
          preparation of a  medicament useful in the treatment of a condition
          which is responsive to  the PRO protein, agonists, antagonists or
          anti-PRO antibodies. The PRO  protein may also be employed as
          molecular weight markers for protein  electrophoresis. The PRO
          coding sequence has applications in molecular  biology, including
          use as hybridisation probes, and in chromosome and  gene mapping
FEATURES             Location/Qualifiers
BASE COUNT      272 a    307 c    226 g    372 t
ORIGIN

1177 100   0.0
P_AAS46115  Human DNA encoding PRO polypeptide sequence #191. 177 bp,
          cDNA, PAT 18-DEC-2001
ACCESSION   P_AAS46115
```

KEYWORDS GENESEQ; PRO polypeptide; mammal; tumour; cancer; human; cattle; horse; sheep; ss; dog; cat; pig; goat; rabbit; tumour necrosis factor alpha; TNF-alpha; blood; chondrocyte cell; cell proliferation; cell differentiation; colon; adrenal; lung; breast; prostate; rectum; cervix; liver; genetic disorder; PCR primer; patent; patentdb (v200420, 23-SEP-2004).

SOURCE Homo sapiens.

ORGANISM Homo sapiens.

REFERENCE 1 (bases 1 to 1177)

AUTHORS Baker,K.P., Chen,J., Desnoyers,L., Goddard,A., Godowski,P.J., Gurney,A.L. Pan,J., Smith,V., Watanabe,C.K., Wood,W.I., Zhang,Z.

TITLE Novel nucleic acids encoding PRO polypeptides, used to diagnose the presence of tumors, such as prostate and breast tumors, in mammals and to screen for modulators of the compounds.

JOURNAL Patent: WO200168848-A2; Filing Date: 28-FEB-2001; 2001WO-US006520; Publication Date: 20-SEP-2001; Priority: 01-MAR-2000; 2000WO-US005601. 02-MAR-2000; 2000WO-US005841. 03-MAR-2000; 2000US-0187202P. 06-MAR-2000; 2000US-0186968P. 14-MAR-2000; 2000US-0189320P. 14-MAR-2000; 2000US-0189328P. 15-MAR-2000; 2000WO-US006884. 21-MAR-2000; 2000US-0190828P. 21-MAR-2000; 2000US-0191007P. 21-MAR-2000; 2000US-0191048P. 21-MAR-2000; 2000US-0191314P. 28-MAR-2000; 2000US-0192655P. 29-MAR-2000; 2000US-0193032P. 29-MAR-2000; 2000US-0193053P. 30-MAR-2000; 2000WO-US008439. 04-APR-2000; 2000US-0194449P. 04-APR-2000; 2000US-0194647P. 11-APR-2000; 2000US-0195975P. 11-APR-2000; 2000US-0196000P. 11-APR-2000; 2000US-0196187P. 11-APR-2000; 2000US-0196690P. 11-APR-2000; 2000US-0196820P. 18-APR-2000; 2000US-0198121P. 18-APR-2000; 2000US-0198585P. 25-APR-2000; 2000US-0199397P. 25-APR-2000; 2000US-0199550P. 25-APR-2000; 2000US-0199654P. 03-MAY-2000; 2000US-0201516P. 17-MAY-2000; 2000WO-US013705. 22-MAY-2000; 2000WO-US014042. 30-MAY-2000; 2000WO-US014941. 02-JUN-2000; 2000WO-US015264. 05-JUN-2000; 2000US-0209832P. 28-JUL-2000; 2000WO-US020710. 22-AUG-2000; 2000US-00644848. 24-AUG-2000; 2000WO-US023328. 08-NOV-2000; 2000WO-US030952. 01-DEC-2000; 2000WO-US032678. 20-DEC-2000; 2000WO-US034956; Assignee: (GETH) GENENTECH INC; Cross Reference: WPI; 2001-602746/68. P-PSDB; AAU29214; Patent Format: Claim 2; Fig 381; 774pp; English.

COMMENT Sequences AAS45925-AAS46231 represent DNA molecules encoding and PCR primers for PRO polypeptides of the invention. The sequences of the invention can be used to detect the presence of a tumour in a mammal by comparing the level of expression of a PRO polypeptide in a test sample of cells from the animal and a control sample of normal cells, whereby a higher level of expression in the test sample indicates the presence of a tumour in the mammal. Mammals include dogs, cats, cattle, horses, sheep, pigs, goats and rabbits but are preferably human. The polypeptides can be used to stimulate tumour necrosis factor (TNF) alpha release from human blood, when contacted with it. A specific polypeptide can be used to stimulate the proliferation or differentiation of chondrocyte cells. The PRO proteins can be used to determine the presence of tumours and also susceptibility to tumour development, particularly adrenal, lung, colon, breast, prostate, rectal, cervical, or liver tumours, in mammalian subjects. The oligonucleotide probes specific for the PRO nucleic acids can be used for genetic analysis of individuals with genetic disorders

FEATURES Location/Qualifiers

```
BASE COUNT      272 a    307 c    226 g    372 t
ORIGIN

1177 100   0.0
AX092398    Sequence 129 from Patent WO0116318. 1177 bp,
          DNA, linear, PAT 21-MAR-2001
ACCESSION   AX092398
VERSION     AX092398.1  GI:13444513
KEYWORDS    .
SOURCE      Homo sapiens (human)
  ORGANISM  Homo sapiens
          Eukaryota; Metazoa; Chordata; Craniata; Vertebrata; Euteleostomi;
          Mammalia; Eutheria; Primates; Catarrhini; Hominidae; Homo.
REFERENCE   1
  AUTHORS   Eaton,D.L., Filvaroff,E., Gerritsen,M.E., Goddard,A.,
          Godowski,P.J., Grimaldi,C.J., Gurney,A.L., Watanabe,C.K. and
          Wood,W.I.
  TITLE     Secreted and transmembrane polypeptides and nucleic acids encoding
          the same
  JOURNAL   Patent: WO 0116318-A 129 08-MAR-2001;
          Genentech, Inc. (US)
FEATURES             Location/Qualifiers
     source          1..1177
                     /organism="Homo sapiens"
                     /mol_type="unassigned DNA"
                     /db_xref="taxon:9606"
BASE COUNT
ORIGIN

1172 100   0.0
HSDJ686C3   Human DNA sequence from clone RP4-686C3 on chromosome 20. Contains
          the IDH3B gene for isocitrate dehydrogenase 3 (NAD) beta A and B,
          the gene for nucleolar protein NOP56, a novel gene, ESTs, STSs,
          GSSs and three CpG islands, complete sequence. 159272 bp,
          DNA, linear, PRI 14-FEB-2001
ACCESSION   AL049712
VERSION     AL049712.12  GI:5629919
KEYWORDS    HTG; CpG island; IDH3B; isocitrate dehydrogenase 3; NOP56;
          nucleolar protein.
SOURCE      Homo sapiens (human)
  ORGANISM  Homo sapiens
          Eukaryota; Metazoa; Chordata; Craniata; Vertebrata; Euteleostomi;
          Mammalia; Eutheria; Primates; Catarrhini; Hominidae; Homo.
REFERENCE   1  (bases 1 to 159272)
  AUTHORS   Smith,M.
  TITLE     Direct Submission
  JOURNAL   Submitted (09-FEB-2001) Sanger Centre, Hinxton, Cambridgeshire,
          CB10 1SA, UK. E-mail enquiries: humquery@sanger.ac.uk Clone
          requests: clonerequest@sanger.ac.uk
COMMENT     On Jul 28, 1999 this sequence version replaced gi:5578962.
          During sequence assembly data is compared from overlapping clones.
          Where differences are found these are annotated as variations
          together with a note of the overlapping clone name. Note that the
          variation annotation may not be found in the sequence submission
          corresponding to the overlapping clone, as we submit sequences with
          only a small overlap as described above.
          The following abbreviations are used to associate primary accession
```

numbers given in the feature table with their source databases: Em:, EMBL; Sw:, SWISSPROT; Tr:, TREMBL; Wp:, WORMPEP; Information on the WORMPEP database can be found at http://www.sanger.ac.uk/Projects/C_elegans/wormpep This sequence was generated from part of bacterial clone contigs of human chromosome 20, constructed by the Sanger Centre Chromosome 20 Mapping Group. Further information can be found at http://www.sanger.ac.uk/HGP/Chr20
This sequence is the entire insert of clone RP4-686C3 This sequence was finished as follows unless otherwise noted: all regions were either double-stranded or sequenced with an alternate chemistry or covered by high quality data (i.e., phred quality }= 30); an attempt was made to resolve all sequencing problems, such as compressions and repeats; all regions were covered by at least one plasmid subclone or more than one M13 subclone; and the assembly was confirmed by restriction digest. RP4-686C3 is from the library RPCI-4 constructed by the group of Pieter de Jong. For further details see
http://www.chori.org/bacpac/home.htm
VECTOR: pCYPAC2.

```
FEATURES             Location/Qualifiers
     source          1..159272
                     /organism="Homo sapiens"
                     /mol_type="genomic DNA"
                     /db_xref="taxon:9606"
                     /chromosome="20"
                     /clone="RP4-686C3"
                     /clone_lib="RPCI-4"
     repeat_region   1..239
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 59..297 of consensus"
     repeat_region   641..866
                     /note="MLT1J repeat: matches 163..403 of consensus"
     repeat_region   886..1010
                     /note="AluJb repeat: matches 2..133 of consensus"
     repeat_region   1152..1314
                     /note="MER5B repeat: matches 1..166 of consensus"
     repeat_region   1358..1406
                     /note="MLT1J repeat: matches 111..161 of consensus"
     repeat_region   1576..1671
                     /note="MLT1J repeat: matches 318..417 of consensus"
     repeat_region   1817..2022
                     /note="MER30 repeat: matches 4..229 of consensus"
     repeat_region   2106..2359
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..291 of consensus"
     repeat_region   2561..2586
                     /note="13 copies 2 mer tg 96% conserved"
     repeat_region   2912..3121
                     /note="L2 repeat: matches 122..357 of consensus"
     repeat_region   3666..3892
                     /note="LTR16A repeat: matches 220..450 of consensus"
     repeat_region   4086..4169
                     /note="Charlie4a repeat: matches 429..508 of consensus"
     repeat_region   4170..4466
                     /note="AluY repeat: matches 1..299 of consensus"
     repeat_region   4467..4502
                     /note="Charlie4a repeat: matches 393..429 of consensus"
     repeat_region   4517..4731
```

```
                     /note="AluJo repeat: matches 82..304 of consensus"
repeat_region        4738..5055
                     /note="Charlie4a repeat: matches 17..341 of consensus"
repeat_region        5680..5900
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..221 of consensus"
repeat_region        6340..6510
                     /note="MER5A repeat: matches 7..188 of consensus"
repeat_region        6588..6883
                     /note="AluY repeat: matches 1..300 of consensus"
repeat_region        6896..7095
                     /note="AluJb repeat: matches 87..289 of consensus"
gene                 7761..13554
                     /gene="IDH3B"
mRNA                 join(7761..7796,7944..8024,8191..8289,8383..8503,
                     10980..11040,11120..11492,11584..11686,11773..11919,
                     12156..12250,12364..12424,13112..13554)
                     /gene="IDH3B"
                     /product="dJ686C3.1.3 (isocitrate dehydrogenase 3 (NAD)
                     beta (isoform C))"
                     /note="match: cDNAs: Em:AK001905
                     match: ESTs: Em:AU136511"
                     /evidence=not_experimental
mRNA                 join(7761..7796,7944..8024,8191..8289,8383..8503,
                     10980..11040,11120..11252,11359..11492,11584..11686,
                     11773..11919,12156..12250,12364..12424,13112..13554)
                     /gene="IDH3B"
                     /product="dJ686C3.1.2 (isocitrate dehydrogenase 3 (NAD)
                     beta (isoform B))"
                     /note="match: cDNAs: Em:U49283 Em:AL050094
                     match: ESTs: Em:AI227462 Em:AL036756 Em:AA522698
                     Em:AI399657 Em:AA521885 Em:AA306645 Em:AI609203 Em:R53327
                     Em:AA800287 Em:AI171432 Em:AI171793 Em:AA306790
                     Em:AA144481 Em:AA189176 Em:AA153798 Em:AI105469
                     Em:AA980536 Em:AA268842 Em:AI566177 Em:R15323 Em:AA062738
                     Em:AA575851 Em:AI346778 Em:W98474 Em:AI886479 Em:AI471673
                     Em:AA104111 Em:AA458104"
                     /evidence=not_experimental
mRNA                 join(7761..7796,7944..8024,8191..8289,8383..8503,
                     10980..11040,11120..11252,11359..11492,11584..11686,
                     11773..11919,12156..12250,12364..12424,13427..13554)
                     /gene="IDH3B"
                     /product="dJ686C3.1.1 (isocitrate dehydrogenase 3 (NAD)
                     beta (isoform A))"
                     /note="match: cDNAs: Em:AF090321 Em:X82632 Em:AF023265"
                     /evidence=not_experimental
CDS                  join(7761..7796,7944..8024,8191..8289,8383..8503,
                     10980..11040,11120..11252,11359..11492,11584..11686,
                     11773..11919,12156..12250,12364..12424,13427..13507)
                     /gene="IDH3B"
                     /note="match: proteins: Sw:Q28479"
                     /codon_start=1
                     /evidence=not_experimental
                     /product="dJ686C3.1.1 (isocitrate dehydrogenase 3 (NAD)
                     beta (isoform A))"
                     /protein_id="CAC01443.1"
                     /db_xref="GI:9716094"
                     /db_xref="GOA:O43837"
```

```
                     /db_xref="Swiss-Prot:O43837"
     CDS             join(7761..7796,7944..8024,8191..8289,8383..8503,
                     10980..11040,11120..11252,11359..11492,11584..11686,
                     11773..11919,12156..12250,12364..12424,13112..13198)
                     /gene="IDH3B"
                     /note="match: proteins: Sw:O77784 Sw:O43837 Tr:Q9UIC5"
                     /codon_start=1
                     /evidence=not_experimental
                     /product="dJ686C3.1.2 (isocitrate dehydrogenase 3 (NAD)
                     beta (isoform B))"
                     /protein_id="CAC01442.2"
                     /db_xref="GI:12832023"
                     /db_xref="GOA:O43837"
                     /db_xref="Swiss-Prot:O43837"
     misc_feature    7944..8444
                     /gene="IDH3B"
                     /note="match: STS: Em:G06955"
     repeat_region   8832..8971
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 140..273 of consensus"
     repeat_region   8972..9274
                     /note="AluSg repeat: matches 3..301 of consensus"
     repeat_region   9275..9412
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..140 of consensus"
     repeat_region   9735..10105
                     /note="MLT1C repeat: matches 44..466 of consensus"
     repeat_region   10495..10734
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 44..282 of consensus"
     repeat_region   10738..10773
                     /note="6 copies 6 mer cacaca 94% conserved"
     CDS             join(11284..11492,11584..11686,11773..11919,12156..12250,
                     12364..12424,13112..13198)
                     /gene="IDH3B"
                     /codon_start=1
                     /evidence=not_experimental
                     /product="dJ686C3.1.3 (isocitrate dehydrogenase 3 (NAD)
                     beta (isoform C))"
                     /protein_id="CAC29095.1"
                     /db_xref="GI:12832024"
                     /db_xref="GOA:Q9BYN6"
                     /db_xref="TrEMBL:Q9BYN6"
     misc_feature    13114..13548
                     /gene="IDH3B"
                     /note="match: STS: Em:G26166"
     misc_feature    complement(13165..13536)
                     /note="match: STS: Em:G21789"
     polyA_signal    13536..13541
                     /gene="IDH3B"
     polyA_site      13554
                     /gene="IDH3B"
     gene            complement(13556..19319)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.2"
     mRNA            complement(join(13556..14020,14731..14868,15054..15175,
                     15400..15548,15915..16015,16203..16354,16437..16624,
                     17002..17200,17374..17535,18556..18670,19018..19107,
                     19286..19319))
                     /gene="dJ686C3.2"
                     /product="dJ686C3.2 (nucleolar protein NOP56)"
```

/note="match: ESTs: Em:AU126096 Em:BE791078 Em:AU079820
Em:BE794593 Em:BE740871 Em:AU142591 Em:BF183290
Em:BF033063 Em:AU121441 Em:AU136199 Em:AU131318
Em:AU121613 Em:BE735509 Em:BE732839 Em:AW084110
Em:AU142811 Em:BE900743 Em:AU125642 Em:BE744946
Em:BE531069 Em:AU143114 Em:BE796327 Em:BE733813
Em:BE897397 Em:BE793913 Em:BE615502 Em:BE735114
Em:AI913461 Em:AU142076 Em:AI962946 Em:BE735202
Em:BE792264 Em:BE266706 Em:BE307626 Em:AI151750
Em:BE271752 Em:AU142517 Em:BE798402 Em:BE778084
Em:BE794953 Em:AI151871 Em:AU134487 Em:AW318815
Em:BE895248 Em:AW536886 Em:AW673262 Em:BE273354
Em:BE274250 Em:BE259899 Em:AI473812 Em:BE266452
Em:BF125936 Em:BF182804 Em:BE790996 Em:AU160019
Em:AI037315 Em:AI579981 Em:AI587119 Em:BE885272
Em:AL024344 Em:BE272441 Em:AI190380 Em:BE905225
Em:AW262922 Em:AU066930 Em:AU067259 Em:BE253695
Em:BE799323 Em:AW323231 Em:BF032741 Em:BE748346
Em:AU079213 Em:AW073212 Em:BE388324 Em:BE791398
Em:BE729886 Em:AU159811 Em:AU144761 Em:BE797107
Em:BE391537 Em:BE207121 Em:BE799640 Em:BE730679
Em:AW959464 Em:BE274564 Em:BF313724 Em:W45587 Em:BF237718
Em:BE515065 Em:BE392171 Em:AW487611 Em:AI265199
Em:BE899226 Em:BE797209 Em:BE565433 Em:AL024123
Em:AW653429 Em:AI663264 Em:R77181 Em:AI172901 Em:BF032822
Em:W47884 Em:BE264275 Em:BE267421 Em:AV119935 Em:BE795744
Em:AU067497 Em:H30432 Em:T08589 Em:AW360981 Em:AW403924
Em:BE031871 Em:W95783 Em:AW954504 Em:BF027748 Em:BE119818
Em:AI668857 Em:AU066734 Em:BE798901 Em:AW246292
Em:AU127258 Em:AI174595 Em:AI887649 Em:AW447140
Em:AW107132 Em:AA068674 Em:AW732821 Em:BE113379
Em:BE796675 Em:AW954499 Em:AI156915 Em:BE277762
Em:AL135529 Em:AW619497 Em:AW327908 Em:AU035409
Em:AW230885 Em:BE748816 Em:AA102323 Em:AI937486
Em:AW209411 Em:AA096858 Em:AW239178 Em:BE114011
Em:AW681903 Em:AI590992 Em:AA088762 Em:BF179797
Em:AV602039 Em:AW674493 Em:BE484912 Em:AI084141
Em:AW804122 Em:BE649845 Em:AW245756 Em:BF012254
Em:AI811115 Em:AW447137 Em:T91345 Em:AW630896 Em:AW196879
Em:AW545841 Em:AI015644 Em:W01045 Em:BE515327 Em:H08060
Em:T47317 Em:AI497758 Em:AV122605 Em:AW797222 Em:AV113255
Em:AI653588 Em:AW784441 Em:BE514994 Em:AI425142
Em:BE485739 Em:T47318 Em:AI371035 Em:BE138723 Em:T47965
Em:T91434 Em:BE393358 Em:AW804119 Em:T40556 Em:AW619795
Em:BE301059 Em:AA107443 Em:AA056338 Em:AI287720
Em:AI630027 Em:AW611330 Em:BE785191 Em:AU155449
Em:AW269649 Em:AW245399 Em:BE300557 Em:BE815022
Em:AU147394 Em:AI380991 Em:AU149255 Em:AA088858
Em:AW732042 Em:AA976748 Em:F14777 Em:AW177732 Em:AW177725
Em:AW794220 Em:T39401 Em:BF108718 Em:AW073847 Em:BF082757
Em:AU147252 Em:AW674204 Em:BF374671 Em:AI151949
Em:AW810581 Em:AW352404 Em:AW150198 Em:BF082774 Em:T27520
Em:AA075692 Em:AI937422 Em:AU119799 Em:AI744798
Em:BF159796 Em:AW615541 Em:BF026092 Em:AI049167
Em:BE349625 Em:AW753467 Em:AW630412 Em:AA000020
Em:AI206020 Em:W77835 Em:BE185809 Em:AW821067 Em:AU149905
Em:AI908528 Em:D19658 Em:W95439 Em:AW821066 Em:H08061

```
                     Em:W69143 Em:W86238 Em:AI014767 Em:AW339818 Em:W45550
                     Em:W13167 Em:AW289392 Em:AA075702 Em:W23530 Em:AW005817
                     Em:AW610231 Em:AW264826 Em:AI142063 Em:AW794696
                     Em:AA082606 Em:AI815182 Em:BF231129 Em:BE774194
                     Em:BF058686 Em:BE071840 Em:AW820840 Em:AI360306 Em:T23775
                     Em:BF346668 Em:Z39015 Em:AW627619 Em:AW794217 Em:BF193192
                     Em:BE206139 Em:BE828513 Em:AA961689 Em:BE539173 Em:W69249
                     Em:BF088475 Em:AI221955 Em:AW385695 Em:BE004574
                     Em:AW327867 Em:BE327808 Em:BE271037 Em:BE772117
                     Em:AW820985 Em:AI915071 Em:BE271113 Em:W86266 Em:AI924537
                     Em:AW797155 Em:AI908520 Em:H98955 Em:BE185612 Em:AA989699
                     Em:AW820836 Em:T15659"
                     /evidence=not_experimental
     polyA_site       complement(13556)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.2"
     misc_feature     13557..13758
                     /note="match: STS: Em:G07287"
     polyA_signal     complement(13571..13576)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.2"
     CDS              complement(join(13655..14020,14731..14868,15054..15175,
                     15400..15548,15915..16015,16203..16354,16437..16624,
                     17002..17200,17374..17535,18556..18670,19018..19107,
                     19286..19288))
                     /gene="dJ686C3.2"
                     /note="the start of this protein differs from the
                     published translation (Sw:O00567)
                     match: proteins: Tr:Q9N2M9 Sw:O00567"
                     /codon_start=1
                     /evidence=not_experimental
                     /product="dJ686C3.2 (nucleolar protein NOP56)"
                     /protein_id="CAC01444.2"
                     /db_xref="GI:12832025"
                     /db_xref="GOA:O00567"
                     /db_xref="Swiss-Prot:O00567"
     misc_feature     13662..13808
                     /note="match: STS: Em:G54023"
     repeat_region    13679..13903
                     /note="3 copies 75 mer 76% conserved"
     misc_feature     15150..15537
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ125619"
     misc_feature     complement(16791..16880)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.2"
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ813835"
     repeat_region    17997..18294
                     /note="AluSg repeat: matches 1..301 of consensus"
     repeat_region    18747..18881
                     /note="MER5B repeat: matches 5..143 of consensus"
     misc_feature     18807..19916
                     /note="CpG island"
                     /evidence=not_experimental
     repeat_region    19173..19238
                     /note="11 copies 6 mer gcaggc 80% conserved"
     repeat_region    19908..19961
                     /note="27 copies 2 mer tt 75% conserved"
     repeat_region    20781..21046
                     /note="AluSq repeat: matches 23..313 of consensus"
     repeat_region    21959..22088
```

```
                     /note="MIR repeat: matches 13..147 of consensus"
     repeat_region   22098..22144
                     /note="L2 repeat: matches 2664..2710 of consensus"
     repeat_region   22157..22193
                     /note="L2 repeat: matches 2701..2737 of consensus"
     repeat_region   22320..22606
                     /note="AluJo repeat: matches 1..296 of consensus"
     repeat_region   22607..22741
                     /note="AluSq/x repeat: matches 1..135 of consensus"
     repeat_region   22742..22792
                     /note="L1MA4A repeat: matches 5778..5831 of consensus"
     repeat_region   22794..22958
                     /note="AluY repeat: matches 118..302 of consensus"
     repeat_region   22959..23016
                     /note="29 copies 2 mer tt 72% conserved"
     repeat_region   22976..23017
                     /note="7 copies 6 mer ttatta 100% conserved"
     repeat_region   23018..23301
                     /note="AluY repeat: matches 1..284 of consensus"
     repeat_region   23302..23350
                     /note="AluSg/x repeat: matches 84..133 of consensus"
     repeat_region   23378..23552
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..191 of consensus"
     repeat_region   23553..23652
                     /note="L1M repeat: matches 5268..5366 of consensus"
     repeat_region   23654..23788
                     /note="MER46A repeat: matches 105..236 of consensus"
     repeat_region   24504..24812
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..311 of consensus"
     repeat_region   25222..25350
                     /note="MIR repeat: matches 127..261 of consensus"
     repeat_region   25626..25911
                     /note="AluJb repeat: matches 1..293 of consensus"
     repeat_region   26015..26120
                     /note="53 copies 2 mer tt 65% conserved"
     repeat_region   26146..26443
                     /note="AluSp repeat: matches 1..300 of consensus"
     repeat_region   26504..26946
                     /note="Tigger2a repeat: matches 1..434 of consensus"
     repeat_region   27535..27846
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..312 of consensus"
     repeat_region   27898..28450
                     /note="MLT1F repeat: matches 12..541 of consensus"
     repeat_region   29738..29848
                     /note="FLAM_C repeat: matches 2..122 of consensus"
     repeat_region   29854..30139
                     /note="AluJo repeat: matches 1..293 of consensus"
     repeat_region   31654..31959
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..293 of consensus"
     repeat_region   32178..32210
                     /note="U2 repeat: matches 1..33 of consensus"
     repeat_region   32311..32754
                     /note="Tigger3b repeat: matches 801..1227 of consensus"
     repeat_region   32755..33043
                     /note="AluSg repeat: matches 1..288 of consensus"
     repeat_region   33044..33580
                     /note="Tigger3b repeat: matches 285..801 of consensus"
```

```
repeat_region   33581..33889
                /note="AluY repeat: matches 1..293 of consensus"
repeat_region   33890..34087
                /note="Tigger3b repeat: matches 3..285 of consensus"
repeat_region   34107..34219
                /note="MIR repeat: matches 135..249 of consensus"
repeat_region   34548..34842
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..296 of consensus"
repeat_region   35039..35333
                /note="AluSc repeat: matches 1..306 of consensus"
repeat_region   35424..35489
                /note="11 copies 6 mer gtgtgt 80% conserved"
repeat_region   35446..35489
                /note="22 copies 2 mer gt 95% conserved"
gene            complement(35945..110027)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
CDS             complement(join(<35945..36023,47553..47678,54638..54877,
                55745..55812,58627..}58755))
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="gene fragments .3 through .6 are all part of gene
                dJ686C3.3; the exact exon structure of the complete gene.
                is yet to be determined
                match: proteins: Wp:T13G4.E Sw:Q11069"
                /codon_start=1
                /evidence=not_experimental
                /product="dJ686C3.6 (novel protein)"
                /protein_id="CAC29096.1"
                /db_xref="GI:12832026"
                /db_xref="GOA:Q8TDI7"
                /db_xref="Swiss-Prot:Q8TDI7"
repeat_region   36345..36516
                /note="MIR repeat: matches 86..251 of consensus"
repeat_region   37206..37296
                /note="MIR repeat: matches 66..150 of consensus"
repeat_region   37971..39060
                /note="L1M4 repeat: matches -8..1109 of consensus"
repeat_region   39061..39364
                /note="AluSg repeat: matches 1..306 of consensus"
repeat_region   39365..39711
                /note="L1M4 repeat: matches 1109..1464 of consensus"
repeat_region   39712..39927
                /note="AluSg/x repeat: matches 82..298 of consensus"
repeat_region   39928..41104
                /note="L1M4 repeat: matches 1464..2300 of consensus"
repeat_region   41105..41409
                /note="AluJo repeat: matches 1..304 of consensus"
repeat_region   41410..41728
                /note="L1M4 repeat: matches 2300..2626 of consensus"
repeat_region   41938..42160
                /note="MER58A repeat: matches 1..223 of consensus"
repeat_region   42200..42374
                /note="MER91A repeat: matches 19..195 of consensus"
repeat_region   42835..43128
                /note="AluY repeat: matches 1..294 of consensus"
repeat_region   43130..43501
                /note="THE1C repeat: matches 1..369 of consensus"
repeat_region   43766..44063
```

```
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..298 of consensus"
repeat_region        44141..44365
                     /note="L1ME repeat: matches 248..633 of consensus"
repeat_region        44726..45157
                     /note="LTR3 repeat: matches 3..429 of consensus"
repeat_region        45497..45778
                     /note="MLT1F repeat: matches 180..547 of consensus"
repeat_region        45861..46059
                     /note="L1MCa repeat: matches 983..1204 of consensus"
repeat_region        46113..46422
                     /note="L1ME repeat: matches 5558..5801 of consensus"
repeat_region        46851..46921
                     /note="L2 repeat: matches 2634..2705 of consensus"
repeat_region        47229..47350
                     /note="LTR16C repeat: matches 76..205 of consensus"
repeat_region        47397..47465
                     /note="LTR16C repeat: matches 316..385 of consensus"
repeat_region        48400..48693
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..296 of consensus"
repeat_region        48764..48919
                     /note="MER3 repeat: matches 9..177 of consensus"
repeat_region        48947..49146
                     /note="MIR repeat: matches 89..253 of consensus"
repeat_region        49241..49558
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 6..310 of consensus"
repeat_region        49561..50023
                     /note="Cheshire repeat: matches 38..511 of consensus"
repeat_region        50024..50151
                     /note="MLT1D repeat: matches 367..505 of consensus"
repeat_region        50152..50260
                     /note="MLT1-INTERNAL repeat: matches 988..1088 of
                     consensus"
repeat_region        50264..50467
                     /note="AluSq repeat: matches 96..301 of consensus"
repeat_region        50532..50563
                     /note="MLT1D repeat: matches 201..229 of consensus"
repeat_region        50564..50868
                     /note="AluSg repeat: matches 1..304 of consensus"
misc_feature         complement(50855..51289)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ424393"
repeat_region        50869..50946
                     /note="MLT1D repeat: matches 111..201 of consensus"
repeat_region        50957..51147
                     /note="MLT1-INTERNAL repeat: matches 947..1128 of
                     consensus"
repeat_region        51304..51512
                     /note="MLT1-INTERNAL repeat: matches 671..880 of
                     consensus"
repeat_region        51664..51831
                     /note="MLT1-INTERNAL repeat: matches 429..587 of
                     consensus"
repeat_region        51842..52018
                     /note="AluJb repeat: matches 135..311 of consensus"
repeat_region        53543..53597
                     /note="MER3 repeat: matches 156..209 of consensus"
repeat_region        53598..53938
```

```
                     /note="L1MA4 repeat: matches 5818..6181 of consensus"
     repeat_region     53939..54238
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..300 of consensus"
     repeat_region     54239..54359
                     /note="L1MA4 repeat: matches 6181..6296 of consensus"
     repeat_region     54360..54505
                     /note="MER3 repeat: matches 5..156 of consensus"
     repeat_region     55338..55451
                     /note="19 copies 6 mer tttctc 62% conserved"
     repeat_region     55815..55846
                     /note="16 copies 2 mer ag 87% conserved"
     repeat_region     56619..56904
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 5..292 of consensus"
     repeat_region     57153..57341
                     /note="L1 repeat: matches 4706..4895 of consensus"
     repeat_region     57342..57625
                     /note="AluJo repeat: matches 1..309 of consensus"
     repeat_region     57626..57695
                     /note="L1 repeat: matches 4637..4706 of consensus"
     misc_feature      complement(58255..58744)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ370740"
     repeat_region     58913..58989
                     /note="MIR repeat: matches 29..112 of consensus"
     misc_feature      59329..59741
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ042815"
     misc_feature      complement(59946..60167)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AL297779"
     misc_feature      complement(59952..60174)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AL274077"
     misc_feature      complement(59960..60129)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                     /note="match: STS: Em:G08038"
     misc_feature      59961..60190
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AL219668"
     misc_feature      59961..60174
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AL224504"
     misc_feature      59961..60119
                     /note="match: STS: Em:AU029014"
     misc_feature      complement(59966..60162)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AL229216"
     misc_feature      complement(59966..60160)
                     /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AL271073"
     misc_feature      59972..60162
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AL172133"
     misc_feature      59974..60162
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ740298"
     misc_feature      59978..60166
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AZ078596"
     misc_feature      59978..60165
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AZ105957"
     misc_feature      59978..60162
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AL229000"
```

```
misc_feature    59978..60129
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AG015039"
misc_feature    complement(59979..60152)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AL304830"
misc_feature    59981..60172
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ625218"
misc_feature    59981..60159
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AL306181 Em:AL348631"
misc_feature    59981..60110
                /note="match: STS: Em:L18007"
misc_feature    complement(59985..60124)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AL292877"
misc_feature    complement(59987..60161)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AL005032"
misc_feature    59988..60183
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ781433"
misc_feature    59988..60170
                /note="match: STS: Em:L18006"
misc_feature    59995..60191
                /note="match: GSS: Em:B92007"
misc_feature    complement(59995..60169)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AL285765"
misc_feature    60001..60151
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ667702"
misc_feature    complement(60021..60102)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AL125844"
misc_feature    60023..60128
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AL214374"
misc_feature    complement(60025..60112)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AL129826"
misc_feature    complement(60031..60162)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AL193675"
misc_feature    complement(60037..60177)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: STS: Em:G09203"
misc_feature    60056..60171
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AZ073866"
repeat_region   60166..60461
                /note="L2 repeat: matches 2409..2710 of consensus"
repeat_region   60871..60998
                /note="L2 repeat: matches 2564..2709 of consensus"
CDS             complement(join(<61351..61530,69648..69836,74651..74798,
                76982..}77124))
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="gene fragments .3 through .6 are all part of gene
                dJ686C3.3; the exact exon structure of the complete gene
                is yet to be determined
                match: proteins: Wp:T13G4.E Sw:Q11069"
                /codon_start=1
                /evidence=not_experimental
```

```
                     /product="dJ686C3.5 (novel protein)"
                     /protein_id="CAC29097.1"
                     /db_xref="GI:12832027"
                     /db_xref="GOA:Q8TDI7"
                     /db_xref="Swiss-Prot:Q8TDI7"
     repeat_region   61801..62110
                     /note="AluSg repeat: matches 1..307 of consensus"
     repeat_region   62777..62886
                     /note="MIR repeat: matches 26..149 of consensus"
     repeat_region   62992..63087
                     /note="L2 repeat: matches 2636..2731 of consensus"
     repeat_region   63322..63606
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..285 of consensus"
     repeat_region   63607..63648
                     /note="7 copies 6 mer taataa 100% conserved"
     repeat_region   63801..64106
                     /note="AluSq repeat: matches 1..309 of consensus"
     repeat_region   64913..65316
                     /note="202 copies 2 mer aa 58% conserved"
     repeat_region   65390..65696
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..307 of consensus"
     misc_feature    65958..66518
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:B17497"
     repeat_region   66276..66655
                     /note="MLT1B repeat: matches 3..374 of consensus"
     repeat_region   66723..67441
                     /note="MER21B repeat: matches 6..790 of consensus"
     repeat_region   68374..68539
                     /note="L1M4 repeat: matches 2114..2286 of consensus"
     repeat_region   68679..69130
                     /note="MLT1H repeat: matches 1..483 of consensus"
     repeat_region   70049..70103
                     /note="MIR repeat: matches 196..249 of consensus"
     repeat_region   70104..70390
                     /note="AluSp repeat: matches 1..297 of consensus"
     repeat_region   70391..70484
                     /note="MIR repeat: matches 99..196 of consensus"
     repeat_region   70485..70556
                     /note="L1 repeat: matches 4527..4600 of consensus"
     repeat_region   70559..70774
                     /note="MER58A repeat: matches 1..221 of consensus"
     repeat_region   70775..70934
                     /note="L1 repeat: matches 4362..4534 of consensus"
     repeat_region   70935..71112
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 150..312 of consensus"
     repeat_region   71113..71408
                     /note="AluY repeat: matches 1..294 of consensus"
     repeat_region   71409..71553
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..150 of consensus"
     repeat_region   71554..71623
                     /note="L1 repeat: matches 4296..4362 of consensus"
     repeat_region   72208..72357
                     /note="AluJo repeat: matches 1..147 of consensus"
     repeat_region   72387..72430
                     /note="22 copies 2 mer aa 86% conserved"
     repeat_region   72638..72810
                     /note="AluSg/x repeat: matches 155..312 of consensus"
```

```
repeat_region   72803..72880
                /note="AluSq/x repeat: matches 51..128 of consensus"
repeat_region   73242..73546
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..312 of consensus"
repeat_region   73750..73841
                /note="L1PB1 repeat: matches 6064..6155 of consensus"
repeat_region   73877..74037
                /note="MER5B repeat: matches 5..172 of consensus"
repeat_region   74152..74463
                /note="AluSq repeat: matches 1..302 of consensus"
misc_feature    complement(74300..74663)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ722963"
misc_feature    75116..75431
                /note="match: STS: Em:HS074WA9"
repeat_region   75191..75232
                /note="7 copies 6 mer acacac 95% conserved"
repeat_region   75299..75599
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..300 of consensus"
misc_feature    complement(75583..75777)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ421350"
repeat_region   75604..75649
                /note="MADE1 repeat: matches 35..80 of consensus"
repeat_region   76613..76784
                /note="L2 repeat: matches 2295..2454 of consensus"
misc_feature    complement(77011..77645)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: STS: Em:HS692H20T"
repeat_region   77422..77723
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..302 of consensus"
repeat_region   77924..78314
                /note="L2 repeat: matches 2002..2419 of consensus"
misc_feature    78066..78466
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ084195"
repeat_region   78593..78948
                /note="THE1C repeat: matches 1..371 of consensus"
repeat_region   79140..79454
                /note="L2 repeat: matches 1435..1791 of consensus"
repeat_region   79784..80077
                /note="AluSq repeat: matches 1..296 of consensus"
repeat_region   80170..80211
                /note="21 copies 2 mer tt 76% conserved"
repeat_region   80215..80526
                /note="AluJb repeat: matches 1..309 of consensus"
repeat_region   80945..81458
                /note="L1 repeat: matches 3961..4507 of consensus"
repeat_region   81729..81980
                /note="L1ME3A repeat: matches 5700..5956 of consensus"
repeat_region   81981..82270
                /note="AluY repeat: matches 1..290 of consensus"
repeat_region   82546..82628
                /note="AluJb repeat: matches 38..120 of consensus"
repeat_region   82629..82676
                /note="8 copies 6 mer cacaca 100% conserved"
repeat_region   82982..83203
                /note="L1M4 repeat: matches 1254..1488 of consensus"
```

```
repeat_region   83225..83264
                /note="20 copies 2 mer ac 92% conserved"
repeat_region   83227..83268
                /note="7 copies 6 mer acacac 90% conserved"
repeat_region   83275..83377
                /note="L1M4 repeat: matches 1472..1604 of consensus"
misc_feature    complement(83416..83975)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ489181"
repeat_region   83427..83683
                /note="MLT1E repeat: matches 293..564 of consensus"
repeat_region   83903..83990
                /note="MLT1E repeat: matches 1..81 of consensus"
repeat_region   84037..84342
                /note="L1MA8 repeat: matches 5988..6288 of consensus"
repeat_region   84383..84656
                /note="L1M4 repeat: matches 3584..3871 of consensus"
repeat_region   85019..85130
                /note="L1M4 repeat: matches 2879..3009 of consensus"
repeat_region   85148..85561
                /note="MSTB repeat: matches 1..426 of consensus"
repeat_region   85913..86280
                /note="MLT1F repeat: matches 1..340 of consensus"
misc_feature    86307..86804
                /note="match: GSS: Em:B69908"
misc_feature    86315..86806
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ244813"
repeat_region   86330..86549
                /note="MLT1F repeat: matches 297..541 of consensus"
repeat_region   86607..87140
                /note="L1ME1 repeat: matches 5655..6165 of consensus"
repeat_region   87484..87786
                /note="AluYa5 repeat: matches 1..303 of consensus"
repeat_region   87922..87965
                /note="MER5B repeat: matches 134..177 of consensus"
repeat_region   87966..88189
                /note="MLT1E repeat: matches 351..568 of consensus"
repeat_region   88190..88485
                /note="AluSg repeat: matches 1..297 of consensus"
repeat_region   88486..88815
                /note="MLT1E repeat: matches 1..351 of consensus"
repeat_region   88816..88941
                /note="MER5B repeat: matches 8..134 of consensus"
repeat_region   89174..89455
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..282 of consensus"
repeat_region   91203..91357
                /note="FRAM repeat: matches 1..155 of consensus"
repeat_region   91630..91691
                /note="MADE1 repeat: matches 2..68 of consensus"
repeat_region   91736..91776
                /note="MADE1 repeat: matches 35..80 of consensus"
CDS             complement(join(<91893..91999,92722..}92803))
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="gene fragments .3 through .6 are all part of gene
                dJ686C3.3; the exact exon structure of the complete gene
                is yet to be determined
                match: proteins: Wp:T13G4.E Sw:Q11069"
```

```
repeat_region   104404..105360
                /note="L1MD repeat: matches 0..1156 of consensus"
repeat_region   105632..105773
                /note="MIR repeat: matches 103..262 of consensus"
repeat_region   105890..106190
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 2..304 of consensus"
repeat_region   106429..106551
                /note="FLAM_C repeat: matches 23..143 of consensus"
repeat_region   106553..106763
                /note="MIR repeat: matches 23..258 of consensus"
repeat_region   106908..107112
                /note="L2 repeat: matches 2264..2481 of consensus"
repeat_region   107500..107798
                /note="AluY repeat: matches 1..299 of consensus"
repeat_region   107900..107921
                /note="L1MA8 repeat: matches 6271..6291 of consensus"
repeat_region   107922..108214
                /note="AluJo repeat: matches 1..291 of consensus"
repeat_region   108215..108404
                /note="L1MA8 repeat: matches 6070..6271 of consensus"
repeat_region   108405..108569
                /note="MER3 repeat: matches 1..169 of consensus"
repeat_region   108976..109272
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 14..310 of consensus"
CDS             complement(<109939..}110027)
                /gene="dJ686C3.3"
                /note="match: proteins: Wp:T13G4.E Sw:Q11069"
                /codon_start=1
                /evidence=not_experimental
                /product="dJ686C3.4 (gene fragments .3 through .6 are all
                part of gene dJ686C3.3; the exact exon structure of the
                complete gene is yet to be determined)"
                /protein_id="CAC29099.1"
                /db_xref="GI:12832029"
                /db_xref="GOA:Q8TDI7"
                /db_xref="Swiss-Prot:Q8TDI7"
repeat_region   110181..110308
                /note="L2 repeat: matches 2161..2282 of consensus"
repeat_region   110329..110878
                /note="Charlie5 repeat: matches 2026..2585 of consensus"
repeat_region   110881..110992
                /note="MER3 repeat: matches 32..143 of consensus"
repeat_region   111096..111393
                /note="AluY repeat: matches 1..298 of consensus"
misc_feature    complement(111843..112412)
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ316350"
misc_feature    112718..113461
                /note="CpG island"
                /evidence=not_experimental
repeat_region   113609..113655
                /note="LTR29 repeat: matches 571..618 of consensus"
repeat_region   113751..114072
                /note="MER39 repeat: matches 15..363 of consensus"
repeat_region   114136..114181
                /note="L1MCa repeat: matches 593..638 of consensus"
repeat_region   114184..114424
                /note="AluSg/x repeat: matches 66..305 of consensus"
```

```
                     /note="94 copies 2 mer tt 61% conserved"
     repeat_region   126149..126202
                     /note="9 copies 6 mer cttctt 88% conserved"
     repeat_region   126201..126266
                     /note="11 copies 6 mer cttctt 74% conserved"
     repeat_region   126730..127034
                     /note="AluJo repeat: matches 2..295 of consensus"
     repeat_region   127038..127171
                     /note="AluJo/FLAM repeat: matches 1..131 of consensus"
     repeat_region   127734..128045
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..299 of consensus"
     repeat_region   128687..128994
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..308 of consensus"
     repeat_region   129074..129250
                     /note="AluSg/x repeat: matches 115..295 of consensus"
     repeat_region   129353..129892
                     /note="MER34 repeat: matches 3..543 of consensus"
     misc_feature    129663..129969
                     /note="match: STS: Em:HSPF09A3"
     misc_feature    129808..130038
                     /note="match: STS: Em:G18126"
     repeat_region   130178..130276
                     /note="L1ME3A repeat: matches 5530..5630 of consensus"
     repeat_region   130277..130590
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..312 of consensus"
     repeat_region   130591..130796
                     /note="L1ME3A repeat: matches 5630..5840 of consensus"
     repeat_region   131276..131570
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..299 of consensus"
     repeat_region   131661..131968
                     /note="AluSg repeat: matches 1..308 of consensus"
     misc_feature    132846..133315
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ791502"
     repeat_region   134331..134455
                     /note="L2 repeat: matches 2394..2524 of consensus"
     repeat_region   135065..135192
                     /note="MIR repeat: matches 48..188 of consensus"
     repeat_region   135826..135960
                     /note="FLAM_C repeat: matches 9..143 of consensus"
     misc_feature    complement(135847..136275)
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ132134"
     repeat_region   136226..136651
                     /note="Charlie4a repeat: matches 3..414 of consensus"
     repeat_region   136652..136949
                     /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..305 of consensus"
     repeat_region   136950..137011
                     /note="Charlie4a repeat: matches 414..507 of consensus"
     misc_feature    137117..137903
                     /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ746134"
     repeat_region   137502..137618
                     /note="AluY repeat: matches 191..307 of consensus"
     repeat_region   137765..137847
                     /note="L2 repeat: matches 2638..2725 of consensus"
     repeat_region   138163..138281
                     /note="MIR repeat: matches 120..246 of consensus"
     repeat_region   138539..138802
                     /note="LTR16A repeat: matches 105..355 of consensus"
```

```
repeat_region   139209..140039
                /note="MER45B repeat: matches 1..898 of consensus"
repeat_region   140111..140238
                /note="AluJb repeat: matches 131..261 of consensus"
repeat_region   140239..140543
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..306 of consensus"
repeat_region   140548..140861
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..308 of consensus"
repeat_region   140862..140996
                /note="AluJb repeat: matches 1..131 of consensus"
repeat_region   140999..141028
                /note="MER45C repeat: matches 829..860 of consensus"
repeat_region   141029..141320
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..298 of consensus"
repeat_region   141321..141426
                /note="MER45C repeat: matches 860..951 of consensus"
repeat_region   141468..141667
                /note="MIR repeat: matches 2..228 of consensus"
repeat_region   141726..142044
                /note="L2 repeat: matches 2065..2410 of consensus"
repeat_region   143579..143689
                /note="MIR repeat: matches 88..198 of consensus"
repeat_region   144522..144633
                /note="HAL1 repeat: matches 2..113 of consensus"
repeat_region   144635..144819
                /note="MER20 repeat: matches 37..218 of consensus"
repeat_region   145219..145301
                /note="L1MB7 repeat: matches 6091..6173 of consensus"
repeat_region   145395..145538
                /note="MER41B repeat: matches 1..151 of consensus"
repeat_region   145539..145834
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 9..312 of consensus"
repeat_region   145835..146360
                /note="MER41B repeat: matches 151..635 of consensus"
misc_feature    146616..147435
                /note="CpG island"
                /evidence=not_experimental
repeat_region   147059..147155
                /note="FLAM_C repeat: matches 4..128 of consensus"
repeat_region   147638..147900
                /note="AluJb repeat: matches 12..283 of consensus"
repeat_region   147951..148029
                /note="AluSg/x repeat: matches 219..301 of consensus"
repeat_region   148030..148094
                /note="MER41B repeat: matches 570..635 of consensus"
repeat_region   148102..148271
                /note="AluSg/x repeat: matches 134..303 of consensus"
misc_feature    148180..148479
                /note="match: STS: Em:G26619"
repeat_region   148496..149055
                /note="MER41B repeat: matches 4..578 of consensus"
repeat_region   149059..149282
                /note="AluJb repeat: matches 1..222 of consensus"
repeat_region   151470..151597
                /note="FLAM_C repeat: matches 2..127 of consensus"
repeat_region   152288..152507
                /note="MLT2FB repeat: matches 195..414 of consensus"
```

```
repeat_region   152550..152663
                /note="19 copies 6 mer cagggt 71% conserved"
repeat_region   152809..153172
                /note="THE1C repeat: matches 1..371 of consensus"
repeat_region   153633..153947
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..312 of consensus"
misc_feature    complement(154082..154905)
                /note="match: GSS: Em:AQ898416"
repeat_region   154143..154455
                /note="AluJo repeat: matches 1..301 of consensus"
repeat_region   154485..154520
                /note="MLT2CB repeat: matches 287..323 of consensus"
repeat_region   154521..154554
                /note="17 copies 2 mer at 82% conserved"
repeat_region   154559..154592
                /note="17 copies 2 mer ta 82% conserved"
repeat_region   154603..154686
                /note="14 copies 6 mer atatat 70% conserved"
repeat_region   154604..154683
                /note="40 copies 2 mer ta 71% conserved"
repeat_region   155046..155099
                /note="9 copies 6 mer ctcacc 74% conserved"
repeat_region   155108..155185
                /note="13 copies 6 mer ccctga 70% conserved"
repeat_region   155313..155432
                /note="20 copies 6 mer cctgac 62% conserved"
repeat_region   155472..155573
                /note="17 copies 6 mer ctcaca 64% conserved"
repeat_region   155619..155721
                /note="FLAM_A repeat: matches 12..121 of consensus"
repeat_region   155817..155888
                /note="12 copies 6 mer ctcacc 73% conserved"
repeat_region   155894..155953
                /note="10 copies 6 mer ccctca 71% conserved"
repeat_region   155960..156001
                /note="7 copies 6 mer tctgac 83% conserved"
repeat_region   156831..156908
                /note="13 copies 6 mer tcttct 69% conserved"
repeat_region   156919..157249
                /note="AluSx repeat: matches 1..310 of consensus"
repeat_region   157709..157815
                /note="L1MB4 repeat: matches 6047..6158 of consensus"
repeat_region   157905..158839
                /note="L1MB5 repeat: matches 5132..6065 of consensus"
repeat_region   158840..159145
                /note="AluJo repeat: matches 1..292 of consensus"
repeat_region   159146..159272
                /note="L1MB5 repeat: matches 5005..5132 of consensus"
BASE COUNT
ORIGIN
```

EXHIBIT 2

###
Tue Feb 12 09:55:47 2002 [BLASTP 2.2.1 [Jul-12-2001], NCBI]
/home/ruby/va/Molbio/carpenda/tempids/p1.DNA81754 (111 aa)
/home/ruby/va/Molbio/carpenda/tempids/p1.DNA81754

Sequences producing High-scoring Segment Pairs:	Score	Match	Pct	E-val
1 P_AAB87590 Human PRO1928 - Homo sapiens.	596	111	100	2e-61
2 P_AAU29214 Human PRO polypeptide sequence #191 - Homo	596	111	100	2e-61
3 P_AAY87226 Human signal peptide containing protein HSP	596	111	100	2e-61

Dayhoff Protein Database (Rel 78, Mar 2004)

P_AAB87590 Human PRO1928 - Homo sapiens.
Length: 111 aa
Accession: P_AAB87590;
Species: Homo sapiens.
Keywords: Human; PRO protein; mapping; patent; GENESEQ patentdb.
Patent number: WO200116318-A2.
Publication date: 08-MAR-2001.
Filing date: 24-AUG-2000; 2000WO-US023328.
Priority: 01-SEP-1999; 99WO-US020111. 15-SEP-1999; 99WO-US021090.
07-DEC-1999; 99US-0169495P. 09-DEC-1999; 99US-0170262P.
11-JAN-2000; 2000US-0175481P. 18-FEB-2000; 2000WO-US004341.
18-FEB-2000; 2000WO-US004342. 22-FEB-2000; 2000WO-US004414.
01-MAR-2000; 2000WO-US005601. 03-MAR-2000; 2000US-0187202P.
21-MAR-2000; 2000US-0191007P. 30-MAR-2000; 2000WO-US008439.
25-APR-2000; 2000US-0199397P. 22-MAY-2000; 2000WO-US014042.
05-JUN-2000; 2000US-0209832P.
Assignee: (GETH) GENENTECH INC.
Inventors: Eaton DL, Filvaroff E, Gerritsen ME, Goddard A, Godowski PJ;
Grimaldi CJ, Gurney AL, Watanabe CK, Wood WI;
Cross reference: WPI; 2001-183260/18. N-PSDB; AAF92122.
Title: Eighty four nucleic acids encoding PRO polypeptides, useful in molecular biology, including use as hybridization probes, and in chromosome and gene mapping.
Patent format: Claim 12; Fig 130; 278pp; English.
Comment: The present sequence is a human PRO polypeptide (secreted and transmembrane). The PRO protein, and PRO agonists, PRO antagonists or anti-PRO antibodies are useful for preparation of a medicament useful in the treatment of a condition which is responsive to the PRO protein, agonists, antagonists or anti-PRO antibodies. The PRO protein may also be employed as molecular weight markers for protein electrophoresis. The PRO coding sequence has applications in molecular biology, including use as hybridisation probes, and in chromosome and gene mapping
Database: GENESEQ patent database (v200420, 23-SEP-2004).

P_AAU29214 Human PRO polypeptide sequence #191 - Homo sapiens.
Length: 111 aa
Accession: P_AAU29214;
Species: Homo sapiens.
Keywords: PRO polypeptide; mammal; tumour; cancer; human; cattle; horse; sheep; dog; cat; pig; goat; rabbit; tumour necrosis factor alpha; TNF-alpha; blood; chondrocyte cell; cell proliferation; cell differentiation; colon; adrenal; lung; breast; prostate; rectum; cervix; liver; genetic disorder; patent; GENESEQ patentdb.
Patent number: WO200168848-A2.

Publication date: 20-SEP-2001.
Filing date: 28-FEB-2001; 2001WO-US006520.
Priority: 01-MAR-2000; 2000WO-US005601. 02-MAR-2000; 2000WO-US005841.
03-MAR-2000; 2000US-0187202P.01-DEC-2000; 2000WO-US032678.
20-DEC-2000; 2000WO-US034956. plus 36 more dates.
Assignee: (GETH) GENENTECH INC.
Inventors: Baker KP, Chen J, Desnoyers L, Goddard A, Godowski PJ, Gurney AL; Pan J, Smith V, Watanabe CK, Wood WI, Zhang Z;
Cross reference: WPI; 2001-602746/68. N-PSDB; AAS46115.
Title: Novel nucleic acids encoding PRO polypeptides, used to diagnose the presence of tumors, such as prostate and breast tumors, in mammals and to screen for modulators of the compounds.
Patent format: Claim 11; Fig 382; 774pp; English.
Comment: Sequences AAU29024-AAU29328 represent PRO polypeptides of the invention. The PRO polypeptides and their associated nucleic acids can be used to detect the presence of a tumour in a mammal by comparing the level of expression of a PRO polypeptide in a test sample of cells from the animal and a control sample of normal cells, whereby a higher level of expression in the test sample indicates the presence of a tumour in the mammal. Mammals include dogs, cats, cattle, horses, sheep, pigs, goats and rabbits but are preferably human. The polypeptides can be used to stimulate tumour necrosis factor (TNF) alpha release from human blood, when contacted with it. A specific polypeptide can be used to stimulate the proliferation or differentiation of chondrocyte cells. The PRO proteins can be used to determine the presence of tumours and also susceptibility to tumour development, particularly adrenal, lung, colon, breast, prostate, rectal, cervical, or liver tumours, in mammalian subjects. The oligonucleotide probes specific for the PRO nucleic acids can be used for genetic analysis of individuals with genetic disorders
Database: GENESEQ patent database (v200420, 23-SEP-2004).

P_AAY87226 Human signal peptide containing protein HSPP-3 SEQ ID NO:3 - Homo sapiens.
Length: 111 aa
Accession: P_AAY87226;
Species: Homo sapiens.
Keywords: Human; signal peptide-containing protein; HSPP; diagnosis; cancer; inflammation; cardiovascular disease; anticancer; anti-inflammatory; antimicrobial; nootropic; neuroprotective; cardiovascular; hepatotropic; antiasthmatic; gene therapy; cell proliferation; neurological disorder; reproductive disorder; developmental disorder; arteriosclerosis; cirrhosis; psoriasis; acquired immune deficiency syndrome; anaemia; asthma; Crohn's disease; infection; Alzheimer's disease; schizophrenia; Parkinson's disease; Huntington's diseases; ovulatory defect; muscular dystrophy; patent; GENESEQ patentdb.
Patent number: WO200000610-A2.
Publication date: 06-JAN-2000.
Filing date: 25-JUN-1999; 99WO-US014484.
Priority: 26-JUN-1998; 98US-0090762P. 31-JUL-1998; 98US-0094983P.
01-OCT-1998; 98US-0102686P. 11-DEC-1998; 98US-0112129P.
Assignee: (INCY-) INCYTE PHARM INC.
Inventors: Lal P, Tang YT, Gorgone GA, Corley NC, Guegler KJ, Baughn MR; Akerblom IE, Au-Young J, Yue H, Patterson C, Reddy R, Hillman JL; Bandman O;

Cross reference: WPI; 2000-160673/14. N-PSDB; AAZ98111.
Title: New human signal peptide-containing proteins useful in treatment, prevention and diagnosis of e.g. cancer, inflammation and cardiovascular disease.
Patent format: Claim 1; Page 162; 327pp; English.
Comment: AAZ98109 to AAZ98242 encode AAY87224 to AAY87357 which represent the human signal peptide-containing proteins HSPP-1 to HSPP-134. HSPPs have anticancer, anti-inflammatory, antimicrobial, nootropic, hepatotropic, neuroprotective, cardiovascular and antiasthmatic activities, and can be used in gene therapy. HSPPs can be used to treat or prevent disorders associated with decreased activity or function of HSPP. Antagonists of HSPP are used to treat or prevent disorders associated with increased activity or function of HSPP. Such diseases include cell proliferation (including cancer), inflammation, cardiovascular, neurological, reproductive or developmental disorders, (e.g. arteriosclerosis, cirrhosis, psoriasis, acquired immune deficiency syndrome, anaemia, asthma, Crohn's disease, microbial or other infections, congestive or ischaemic heart disease, Alzheimer's, Parkinson's or Huntington's diseases, schizophrenia, ovulatory defects, muscular dystrophy). HSPP nucleic acids can be used for the recombinant production of HSPP, for detecting HSPP in standard hybridisation and amplification assays (for diagnosis and monitoring), in gene therapy, as antisense, triplex-forming or ribozyme therapeutics, for detecting related sequences or genetic variations, and for chromosomal mapping. HSPP are also used to raise specific antibodies (Ab) and to screen for agonists and antagonists (potential therapeutic agents). Ab are used to diagnose, or monitor, HSPP -related diseases (in usual immunoassays), as therapeutic antagonists, in competitive drug screens, and for purification of HSPP from natural sources
Database: GENESEQ patent database (v200420, 23-SEP-2004).

EXHIBIT 3

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant	:	Eaton, et al.
Appl. No.	:	10/063,557
Filed	:	May 2, 2002
For	:	SECRETED AND TRANSMEMBRANE POLYPEPTIDES AND NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING THE SAME
Examiner	:	David J. Blanchard
Group Art Unit	:	1642

DECLARATION OF J. CHRISTOPHER GRIMALDI, UNDER 37 CFR §1.132

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

I, J. Christopher Grimaldi, declare and state as follows:

1. I am a Senior Research Associate in the Molecular Biology Department of Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, CA 94080.

2. My scientific Curriculum Vitae, including my list of publications, is attached to and forms part of this Declaration (Exhibit A).

3. I joined Genentech in January of 1999. From 1999 to 2003, I directed the Cloning Laboratory in the Molecular Biology Department. During this time I directed or performed numerous molecular biology techniques including semi-quantitative Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) analyses. I am currently involved, among other projects, in the isolation of genes coding for membrane associated proteins which can be used as targets for antibody therapeutics against cancer. In connection with the above-identified patent application, I personally performed or directed the semi-quantitative PCR gene expression analyses in the assay entitled "Tumor Versus Normal Differential Tissue Expression Distribution," which is described in EXAMPLE 18 in the specification. These studies were used to identify differences in gene expression between tumor tissue and their normal counterparts.

4. EXAMPLE 18 reports the results of the PCR analyses conducted as part of the investigating of several newly discovered DNA sequences. This process included developing

primers and analyzing expression of the DNA sequences of interest in normal and tumor tissues. The analyses were designed to determine whether a difference exists between gene expression in normal tissues as compared to tumor in the same tissue type.

5. The DNA libraries used in the gene expression studies were made from pooled samples of normal and of tumor tissues. Data from pooled samples is more likely to be accurate than data obtained from a sample from a single individual. That is, the detection of variations in gene expression is likely to represent a more generally relevant condition when pooled samples from normal tissues are compared with pooled samples from tumors in the same tissue type.

6. In differential gene expression studies, one looks for genes whose expression levels differ significantly under different conditions, for example, in normal versus diseased tissue. Thus, I conducted a semi-quantitative analysis of the expression of the DNA sequences of interest in normal versus tumor tissues. Expression levels were graded according to a scale of +, -, and +/- to indicate the amount of the specific signal detected. Using the widely accepted technique of PCR, it was determined whether the polynucleotides tested were more highly expressed, less expressed, or whether expression remained the same in tumor tissue as compared to its normal counterpart. Because this technique relies on the visual detection of ethidium bromide staining of PCR products on agarose gels, it is reasonable to assume that any detectable differences seen between two samples will represent at least a two fold difference in cDNA.

7. The results of the gene expression studies indicate that the genes of interest can be used to differentiate tumor from normal. The precise levels of gene expression are irrelevant; what matters is that there is a relative difference in expression between normal tissue and tumor tissue. The precise type of tumor is also irrelevant; again, the assay was designed to indicate whether a difference exists between normal tissue and tumor tissue of the same type. If a difference is detected, this indicates that the gene and its corresponding polypeptide and antibodies against the polypeptide are useful for diagnostic purposes, to screen samples to differentiate between normal and tumor. Additional studies can then be conducted if further information is desired.

8. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information or belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

By: _____ Date: 8/10/2004

J. Christopher Grimaldi

S:\DOCS\AOK\AOK-5591.DOC/081004

EXHIBIT A

J. Christopher Grimaldi

1434-36th Ave.
San Francisco, CA 94122
(415) 681-1639 (Home)

EDUCATION

University of California, Berkeley
Bachelor of Arts in Molecular Biology, 1984

EMPLOYMENT EXPERIENCE

SRA — Genentech Inc., South San Francisco; 1/99 to present

Previously, was responsible to direct and manage the Cloning Lab. Currently focused on isolating cancer specific genes for the Tumor Antigen (TAP), and Secreted Tumor Protein (STOP) projects for the Oncology Department as well as Immunologically relevant genes for the Immunology Department. Directed a lab of 6 scientists focused on a company-wide team effort to identify and isolate secreted proteins for potential therapeutic use (SPDI). For the SPDI project my duties were, among other things, the critically important coordination of the cloning of thousands of putative genes, by developing a smooth process of communication between the Bioinformatics, Cloning, Sequencing, and Legal teams. Collaborated with several groups to discover novel genes through the Curagen project, a unique differential display methodology. Interacted extensively with the Legal team providing essential data needed for filing patents on novel genes discovered through the SPDI, TAP and Curagen projects. My group has developed, implemented and patented high throughput cloning methodologies that have proven to be essential for the isolation of hundreds of novel genes for the SPDI, TAP and Curagen projects as well as dozens of other smaller projects.

Scientist — DNAX Research Institute, Palo Alto; 9/91 to 1/99

Involved in multiple projects aimed at understanding novel genes discovered through bioinformatics studies and functional assays. Developed and patented a method for the specific depletion of eosinophils in vivo using monoclonal antibodies. Developed and implemented essential technical methodologies and provided strategic direction in the areas of expression, cloning, protein purification, general molecular biology, and monoclonal antibody production. Trained and supervised numerous technical staff.

Facilities Manager — Corixa, Redwood City; 5/89 - 7/91.

Directed plant-related activities, which included expansion planning, maintenance, safety, purchasing, inventory control, shipping and receiving, and laboratory management. Designed and implemented the safety program. Also served as liaison to regulatory agencies at the local, state and federal level. Was in charge of property leases, leasehold improvements, etc. Negotiated vendor contracts and directed the purchasing department. Trained and supervised personnel to carry out the above-mentioned duties.

SRA University of California, San Francisco
Cancer Research Institute; 2/87-4/89.

Was responsible for numerous cloning projects including: studies of somatic hypermutation, studies of AIDS-associated lymphomas, and cloning of t(5;14), t(11;14), and t(8;14) translocations. Focused on the activation of hemopoietic growth factors involved in the t(5;14) translocation in leukemia patients..

Research Technician Berlex Biosciences, South San Francisco; 7/85-2/87.

Worked on a subunit porcine vaccine directed against Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae. Was responsible for generating genomic libraries, screening with degenerate oligonucleotides, and characterizing and expressing clones in E. coli. Also constructed a general purpose expression vector for use by other scientific teams.

PUBLICATIONS

1. Hilary F. Clark, et al. "The Secreted Protein Discovery Initiative (SPDI), a Large-scale Effort to Identify Novel Human Secreted and Transmembrane Proteins: a bioinformatics assessment." Genome Res. Vol 13(10), 2265-2270, 2003

2. Sean H. Adams, Clarissa Chui' Sarah L. Schilbach, Xing Xian Yu, Audrey D. Goddard, J. Christopher Grimaldi, James Lee, Patrick Dowd, David A. Lewin, & Steven Colman' "BFIT, a Unique Acyl-CoA Thioesterase Induced in Thermogenic Brown Adiopose Tissue: Cloning, organization of the humanb gene and assessment of a potential link to obesity" Biochemical Journal, Vol 360, 135-142, 2001

3. Szeto W, Jiang W, Tice DA, Rubinfeld B, Hollingshead PG, Fong SE, Dugger DL, Pham T, Yansura D, Wong TA, Grimaldi JC, Corpuz RT, Singh JS, Frantz GD, , Devaux B, Crowley CW, Schwall RH, Eberhard DA, Rastelli L, Polakis.P; and Rennica D. "Overexpression of the Retenoic Acid-Responsive Gene Stra6 in Human Cancers and its Synergistic Activation by Wnt-1 and Retinoic Acid." Cancer Research Vol. 61(10), 4197-4205, 2001

4. Jeanne Kahn, Fuad Mehraban, Gladdys Ingle, Xiaohua Xin, Juliet E. Bryant, Gordon Vehar, Jill Schoenfeld, J. Christopher Grimaldi (incorrectly named as "Grimaldi, CJ"), Franklin Peale, Aparna Draksharapu, David A. Lewin, and Mary E. Gerritsen. "Gene Expression Profiling in an in Vitro Model of Angiogenesis." American Journal of Pathology Vol 156(6), 1887-1900, 2000.

5. Grimaldi JC, Yu NX, Grunig G, Seymour BW, Cottrez F, Robinson DS, Hosken N, Ferlin WG, Wu X, Soto H, O'Garra A, Howard MC, Coffman RL. "Depletion of eosinophils in mice through the use of antibodies specific for C-C chemokine receptor 3 (CCR3). Journal of Leukocyte Biology; Vol. 65(6), 846-53, 1999

6. Oliver AM, Grimaldi JC, Howard MC, Kearney JF. "Independently ligating CD38 and Fc gammaRIIB relays a dominant negative signal to B cells." Hybridoma Vol. 18(2), 113-9, 1999

7. Cockayne DA, Muchamuel T, Grimaldi JC, Muller-Steffner H, Randall TD, Lund FE, Murray R, Schuber F, Howard MC. "Mice deficient for the ecto-nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide glycohydrolase CD38 exhibit altered humoral immune responses." Blood Vol. 92(4), 1324-33, 1998

8. Frances E. Lund, Nanette W. Solvason, Michael P. Cooke, Andrew W. Heath, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Troy D. Randall, R. M. E. Parkhouse, Christopher C Goodnow and Maureen C. Howard. "Signaling through murine CD38 is impaired in antigen receptor unresponsive B cells." European Journal of Immunology, Vol. 25(5), 1338-1345, 1995

9. M. J. Guimaraes, J. F. Bazan, A. Zolotnik, M. V. Wiles, J. C. Grimaldi, F. Lee, T. McClanahan. "A new approach to the study of haematopoietic development in the yolk sac and embryoid body." Development, Vol. 121(10), 3335-3346, 1995

10. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Sriram Balasubramanian, J. Fernando Bazan, Armen Shanafelt, Gerard Zurawski and Maureen Howard. "CD38-mediated protein ribosylation." Journal of Immunology,Vol. 155(2), 811-817, 1995

11. Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, Frances F. Lund, Andrew W. Heath, Nanette Solvason, Wei Wei Wu, J. Christopher Grimaldi, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "CD38 unresponsiveness of xid B cells implicates Bruton's tyrosine kinase (btk) as a regulator of CD38 induced signal transduction." International Immunology, Vol 7(2), 163-170, 1995

12. Frances Lund, Nanette Solvason, J. Christopher Grimaldi, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "Murine CD38: An immunoregulatory ectoenzyme." Immunology Today, Vol. 16(10), 469-473, 1995

13. Maureen Howard, J. Christopher Grimaldi, J. Fernando Bazan, Frances E. Lund, Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, R. M. E. Parkhouse, Timothy F. Walseth, and Hon Cheung Lee. "Formation and Hydrolysis of Cyclic ADP-Ribose Catalyzed by Lymphocyte Antigen CD38." Science, Vol. 262, 1056-1059, 1993

14. Nobuyuki Harada, Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, Ray Chang, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Frances Lund, Camilynn I. Brannan, Neal G. Copeland, Nancy A. Jenkins, Andrew Heath, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "Expression Cloning of a cDNA Encoding a Novel Murine B Cell Activation Marker: Homology to Human CD38." The Journal of Immunology, Vol. 151, 3111-3118, 1993

15. David J. Rawlings, Douglas C. Saffran, Satoshi Tsukada, David A. Largaespada, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Lucie Cohen Randolph N. Mohr, J. Fernando Bazan, Maureen Howard, Neal G. Copeland, Nancy A. Jenkins, Owen Witte. "Mutation of Unique Region of Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase in Immunodeficient XID Mice." Science, Vol. 261, 358-360, 1993

16. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Raul Torres, Christine A. Kozak, Ray Chang, Edward Clark, Maureen Howard, and Debra A. Cockayne. "Genomic Structure and Chromosomal Mapping of the Murine CD40 Gene." The Journal of Immunology, Vol 149, 3921-3926, 1992

17. Timothy C. Meeker, Bruce Shiramizu, Lawrence Kaplan, Brian Herndier, Henry Sanchez, J. Christopher Grimaldi, James Baumgartner, Jacab Rachlin, Ellen Feigal, Mark Rosenblum and Michael S. McGrath. "Evidence for Molecular Subtypes of HIV-Associated Lymphoma:

Division into Peripheral Monoclonal, Polyclonal and Central Nervous System Lymphoma." AIDS, Vol. 5, 669-674, 1991

18. Ann Grimaldi and Chris Grimaldi. "Small-Scale Lambda DNA Prep." Contribution to Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Supplement 5, Winter 1989

19. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Timothy C. Meeker. "The t(5;14) Chromosomal Translocation in a Case of Acute Lymphocytic Leukemia Joins the Interleukin-3 Gene to the Immunoglobulin Heavy Chain Gene." Blood, Vol. 73, 2081-2085, 1989

20. Timothy C. Meeker, J. Christopher Grimaldi, et al. "An Additional Breakpoint Region in the BCL-1 Locus Associated with the t(11;14) (q13;q32) Translocation of B-Lymphocytic Malignancy." Blood, Vol. 74, 1801-1806, 1989

21 Timothy C. Meeker, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Robert O'Rourke, et al. "Lack of Detectable Somatic Hypermutation in the V Region of the Ig H Chain Gene of a Human Chronic B Lymphocytic Leukemia." The Journal of Immunology, Vol. 141, 3994-3998, 1988

MANUSCRIPTS IN PREPARATION

1. Sriram Balasubramanian, J. Christopher Grimaldi, J. Fernando Bazan, Gerard Zurawski and Maureen Howard. "Structural and functional characterization of CD38: Identification of active site residues"

PATENTS

1. "Methods for Eosinophil Depletion with Antibody to CCR3 Receptor" (US 6,207,155 B1).

2. "Amplification Based Cloning Method." (US 6,607,899)

3. Ashkenazi et al., "Secreted and Transmembrane Polypeptides and Nucleic Acids Encoding the Same." (this patent covers several hundred genes)

4. "IL-17 Homologous Polypeptides and Therapeutic Uses Thereof"

5. "Method of Diagnosing and Treating Cartilaginous Disorders."

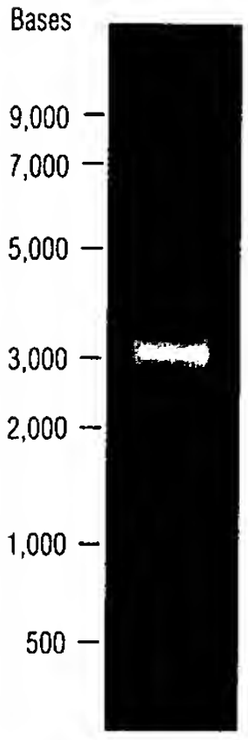
MEMBERSHIPS AND ACTIVITIES

Editor	Frontiers in Bioscience
Member	DNAX Safety Committee 1991-1999 Biological Safety Affairs Forum (BSAF) 1990-1991 Environmental Law Foundation (ELF) 1990-1991

EXHIBIT 4

RNA Ladder

#N0362S 25 µg $55



1 µg of RNA Ladder was heated at 60°C for 3 minutes in 1X RNA Ladder Sample Buffer and visualized by ethidium bromide staining (1.0% TBE agarose gel).

Description: The RNA Ladder is a set of 7 RNA molecules produced by *in vitro* transcription of a mixture of 7 linear DNA templates. The ladder sizes are: 9000, 7000, 5000, 3000, 2000, 1000 and 500 bases. The 3000 base fragment is at double intensity to serve as a reference band. This ladder is suitable for use as an RNA size standard on denaturing or native agarose gels.

Reagents Supplied with Ladders:
2X RNA Ladder Sample Buffer (for use with native agarose gels)

2X RNA Ladder Sample Buffer:
2X TBE (pH 8.3), 13% ficoll (w/v), 0.01% bromophenol blue and 7 M urea.

Concentration: 500 µg/ml.

Storage Conditions: 20 mM KOAc (pH 4.5). Store at –70°C. For short term storage (< 1 week), ladder can be stored at –20°C.

Notes on Use:
To avoid ribonuclease contamination: wear gloves, use RNase-free water for gels and buffers, wash equipment with detergent and rinse thoroughly with RNase-free water.

It is best to use freshly poured gels that are as thin as possible (i.e, 2–10 mm). Excessively long run times or high voltage can cause degradation of the bands on the gel. We recommend 4–8 volts/cm and running the bromophenol blue approximately 5 cm into the gel for good resolution.

Adding ethidium bromide to agarose gels and running buffer at a final concentration of 0.5 µg/ml will effectively stain the bands during electrophoresis.

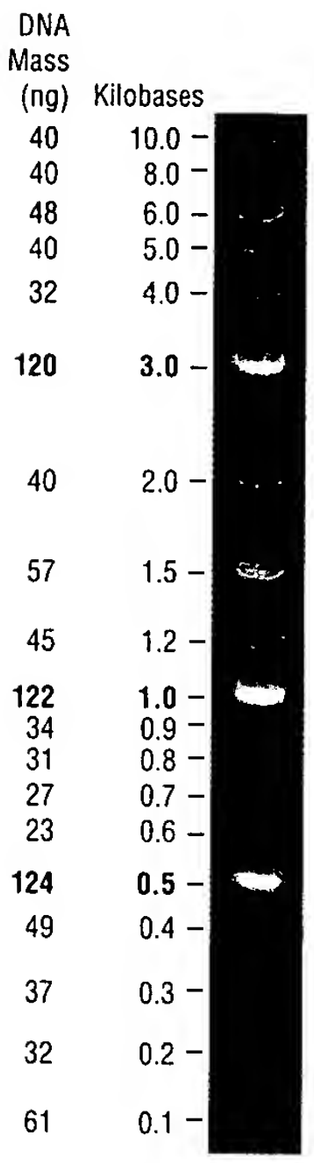
Denaturing vs. Native Agarose Gels:
It is common practice to electrophorese RNA on a fully denaturing agarose gel, such as one containing formaldehyde (1). However, in many cases it is possible to run RNA on a native agarose gel and obtain suitable results. In fact, it has been demonstrated that treatment of RNA samples in a denaturing buffer maintains the RNA molecules in a denatured state, during electrophoresis, for at least 3 hours (2,3). The use of native agarose gels eliminates problems associated with toxic chemicals and the difficulties encountered when staining and blotting formaldehyde gels.

References:
(1) Sambrook, J., Fritsch, E. F. and Maniatis, T. (1989). *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, (2nd ed.), (pp. 7.43–7.45). Cold Spring Harbor: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.
(2) Liu, Y-C., Chou, Y-C. (1990) *Biotechniques* 9, 558.
(3) Sandra Cook and Christina Marchetti, unpublished observations.

2-Log DNA Ladder (0.1–10.0 kb)

New

#N3200S 100 µg $55
#N3200L 500 µg $220



1.0 µg of 2-Log DNA Ladder visualized by ethidium bromide staining on a 1.0% TBE agarose gel.

Description: A number of proprietary plasmids are digested to completion with appropriate restriction enzymes to yield 19 bands suitable for use as molecular weight standards for agarose gel electrophoresis. This digested DNA includes fragments ranging from 100 bp to 10 kb. The 0.5, 1.0 and 3.0 kb bands have increased intensity to serve as reference points.

Preparation: Double-stranded DNA is digested to completion with the appropriate restriction enzymes, phenol extracted and equilibrated to 10 mM Tris-HCl (pH 8.0) and 1 mM EDTA.

Concentration: 1,000 µg/ml.

Storage Conditions: 10 mM Tris-HCl (pH 8.0) and 1 mM EDTA. For long term storage, store at –20°C. 2-Log DNA Ladder is stable for at least 3 months at 4°C.

Note: All fragments have 4-base, 5´ overhangs that can be end labeled using T4 Polynucleotide Kinase (NEB #M0201) or filled-in using DNA Polymerase I, Klenow Fragment (NEB #M0210) (1). Use α-[^{32}P] dATP or α-[^{32}P] dTTP for the fill-in reaction.

Usage Recommendation: We recommend loading 1 µg of the 2-Log DNA Ladder diluted in sample buffer. This ladder was not designed for precise quantification of DNA mass but can be used for approximating the mass of DNA in comparably intense samples of similar size.

The approximate mass of DNA in each of the bands in our 2-Log DNA Ladder is as follows (assuming a 1 µg loading):

Fragment	Base Pairs	DNA Mass
1	10,002	40 ng
2	8,001	40 ng
3	6,001	48 ng
4	5,001	40 ng
5	4,001	32 ng
6	**3,001**	**120 ng**
7	2,017	40 ng
8	1,517	57 ng
9	1,200	45 ng
10	**1,000**	**122 ng**
11	900	34 ng
12	800	31 ng
13	700	27 ng
14	600	23 ng
15a	**517**	> **124 ng**
15b	**500**	
16	400	49 ng
17	300	37 ng
18	200	32 ng
19	100	61 ng

Reference:
(1) Sambrook, J., Fritsch, E. F. and Maniatis, T. (1989). *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, (2nd ed.), (pp. 10.51–10.67). Cold Spring Harbor: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.

EXHIBIT 5

EXHIBIT 6

EXHIBIT 7

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant	:	Eaton, et al.
Appl. No.	:	10/063,557
Filed	:	May 2, 2002
For	:	SECRETED AND TRANSMEMBRANE POLYPEPTIDES AND NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING THE SAME
Examiner	:	David J. Blanchard
Group Art Unit	:	1642

DECLARATION OF J. CHRISTOPHER GRIMALDI, UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.132

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

I, J. Christopher Grimaldi, declare and say as follows:

1. I am a Senior Research Associate in the Molecular Biology Department of Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, CA 94080.

2. I joined Genentech in January of 1999. From 1999 to 2003, I directed the Cloning Laboratory in the Molecular Biology Department. During this time I directed or performed numerous molecular biology techniques including qualitative Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) analyses. I am currently involved in, among other projects, the isolation of genes coding for membrane associated proteins which can be used as targets for antibody therapeutics against cancer. In connection with the above-identified patent application, I personally performed or directed the semi-quantitative PCR analyses in the assay entitled "Tumor Versus Normal Differential Tissue Expression Distribution" which is described in EXAMPLE 18 in the specification that were used to identify differences in gene expression between tumor tissue and their normal counterparts.

3. My scientific Curriculum Vitae, including my list of publications, is attached to and forms part of this Declaration (Exhibit A).

4. In differential gene expression studies, one looks for genes whose expression levels differ significantly under different conditions, for example, in normal versus diseased tissue.

Chromosomal aberrations, such as gene amplification, and chromosomal translocations are important markers of specific types of cancer and lead to the aberrant expression of specific genes and their encoded polypeptides, including over-expression and under-expression. For example, gene amplification is a process in which specific regions of a chromosome are duplicated, thus creating multiple copies of certain genes that normally exist as a single copy. Gene under-expression can occur when a gene is not transcribed into mRNA. In addition, chromosomal translocations occur when two different chromosomes break and are rejoined to each other chromosome resulting in a chimeric chromosome which displays a different expression pattern relative to the parent chromosomes. Amplification of certain genes such as Her2/Neu [Singleton *et al.*, Pathol. Annu., 27Pt1:165-190], or chromosomal translocations such as t(5;14), [Grimaldi *et al.*, Blood, 73(8):2081-2085(1989); Meeker *et al.*, Blood, 76(2):285-289(1990)] give cancer cells a growth or survival advantage relative to normal cells, and might also provide a mechanism of tumor cell resistance to chemotherapy or radiotherapy. When the chromosomal aberration results in the aberrant expression of a mRNA and the corresponding gene product (the polypeptide), as it does in the aforementioned cases, the gene product is a promising target for cancer therapy, for example, by the therapeutic antibody approach.

5. Comparison of gene expression levels in normal versus diseased tissue has important implications both diagnostically and therapeutically. For example, those who work in this field are well aware that in the vast majority of cases, when a gene is over-expressed, as evidenced by an increased production of mRNA, the gene product or polypeptide will also be over-expressed. It is unlikely that one identifies increased mRNA expression without associated increased protein expression. This same principle applies to gene under-expression. When a gene is under-expressed, the gene product is also likely to be under-expressed. Stated in another way, two cell samples which have differing mRNA concentrations for a specific gene are expected to have correspondingly different concentration of protein for that gene. Techniques used to detect mRNA, such as Northern Blotting, Differential Display, *in situ* hybridization, quantitative PCR, Taqman, and more recently Microarray technology all rely on the dogma that a change in mRNA will represent a similar change in protein. If this dogma did not hold true then these techniques would have little value and not be so widely used. The use of mRNA quantitation techniques have identified a seemingly endless number of genes which are differentially expressed in various tissues and these genes have subsequently been shown to have correspondingly similar changes in their protein levels. Thus, the detection of increased mRNA expression is expected to result in increased polypeptide expression, and the detection of decreased mRNA expression is expected to result in decreased polypeptide expression. The detection of increased or decreased polypeptide expression can be used for cancer diagnosis and treatment.

6. However, even in the rare case where the protein expression does not correlate with the mRNA expression, this still provides significant information useful for cancer diagnosis and treatment. For example, if over- or under-expression of a gene product does not correlate with over- or under-expression of mRNA in certain tumor types but does so in others, then identification of both gene expression and protein expression enables more accurate tumor classification and hence better determination of suitable therapy. In addition, absence of over- or

under-expression of the gene product in the presence of a particular over- or under-expression of mRNA is crucial information for the practicing clinician. For example, if a gene is over-expressed but the corresponding gene product is not significantly over-expressed, the clinician accordingly will decide not to treat a patient with agents that target that gene product.

7. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information or belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

By: _____
J. Christopher Grimaldi

Date: 8/10/2004

S:\DOCS\AOK\AOK-5479.DOC
071904

EXHIBIT A

J. Christopher Grimaldi

1434-36th Ave.
San Francisco, CA 94122
(415) 681-1639 (Home)

EDUCATION University of California, Berkeley
Bachelor of Arts in Molecular Biology, 1984

EMPLOYMENT EXPERIENCE

SRA Genentech Inc., South San Francisco; 1/99 to present

Previously, was responsible to direct and manage the Cloning Lab. Currently focused on isolating cancer specific genes for the Tumor Antigen (TAP), and Secreted Tumor Protein (STOP) projects for the Oncology Department as well as Immunologically relevant genes for the Immunology Department. Directed a lab of 6 scientists focused on a company-wide team effort to identify and isolate secreted proteins for potential therapeutic use (SPDI). For the SPDI project my duties were, among other things, the critically important coordination of the cloning of thousands of putative genes, by developing a smooth process of communication between the Bioinformatics, Cloning, Sequencing, and Legal teams. Collaborated with several groups to discover novel genes through the Curagen project, a unique differential display methodology. Interacted extensively with the Legal team providing essential data needed for filing patents on novel genes discovered through the SPDI, TAP and Curagen projects. My group has developed, implemented and patented high throughput cloning methodologies that have proven to be essential for the isolation of hundreds of novel genes for the SPDI, TAP and Curagen projects as well as dozens of other smaller projects.

Scientist DNAX Research Institute, Palo Alto; 9/91 to 1/99

Involved in multiple projects aimed at understanding novel genes discovered through bioinformatics studies and functional assays. Developed and patented a method for the specific depletion of eosinophils in vivo using monoclonal antibodies. Developed and implemented essential technical methodologies and provided strategic direction in the areas of expression, cloning, protein purification, general molecular biology, and monoclonal antibody production. Trained and supervised numerous technical staff.

Facilities
Manager Corixa, Redwood City; 5/89 - 7/91.

Directed plant-related activities, which included expansion planning, maintenance, safety, purchasing, inventory control, shipping and receiving, and laboratory management. Designed and implemented the safety program. Also served as liaison to regulatory agencies at the local, state and federal level. Was in charge of property leases, leasehold improvements, etc. Negotiated vendor contracts and directed the purchasing department. Trained and supervised personnel to carry out the above-mentioned duties.

SRA — University of California, San Francisco
Cancer Research Institute; 2/87-4/89.

Was responsible for numerous cloning projects including: studies of somatic hypermutation, studies of AIDS-associated lymphomas, and cloning of t(5;14), t(11;14), and t(8;14) translocations. Focused on the activation of hemopoietic growth factors involved in the t(5;14) translocation in leukemia patients..

Research Technician — Berlex Biosciences, South San Francisco; 7/85-2/87.

Worked on a subunit porcine vaccine directed against Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae. Was responsible for generating genomic libraries, screening with degenerate oligonucleotides, and characterizing and expressing clones in E. coli. Also constructed a general purpose expression vector for use by other scientific teams.

PUBLICATIONS

1. Hilary F. Clark, et al. "The Secreted Protein Discovery Initiative (SPDI), a Large-scale Effort to Identify Novel Human Secreted and Transmembrane Proteins: a bioinformatics assessment." Genome Res. Vol 13(10), 2265-2270, 2003

2. Sean H. Adams, Clarissa Chui' Sarah L. Schilbach, Xing Xian Yu, Audrey D. Goddard, J. Christopher Grimaldi, James Lee, Patrick Dowd, David A. Lewin, & Steven Colman' "BFIT, a Unique Acyl-CoA Thioesterase Induced in Thermogenic Brown Adiopose Tissue: Cloning, organization of the humanb gene and assessment of a potential link to obesity" Biochemical Journal, Vol 360, 135-142, 2001

3. Szeto W, Jiang W, Tice DA, Rubinfeld B, Hollingshead PG, Fong SE, Dugger DL, Pham T, Yansura D, Wong TA, Grimaldi JC, Corpuz RT, Singh JS, Frantz GD, , Devaux B, Crowley CW, Schwall RH, Eberhard DA, Rastelli L, Polakis P, and Pennica D. "Overexpression of the Retenoic Acid-Responsive Gene Stra6 in Human Cancers and its Synergistic Activation by Wnt-1 and Retinoic Acid." Cancer Research Vol. 61(10), 4197-4205, 2001

4. Jeanne Kahn, Fuad Mehraban, Gladdys Ingle, Xiaohua Xin, Juliet E. Bryant, Gordon Vehar, Jill Schoenfeld, J. Christopher Grimaldi (incorrectly named as "Grimaldi, CJ"), Franklin Peale, Aparna Draksharapu, David A. Lewin, and Mary E. Gerritsen. "Gene Expression Profiling in an in Vitro Model of Angiogenesis." American Journal of Pathology Vol 156(6), 1887-1900, 2000.

5. Grimaldi JC, Yu NX, Grunig G, Seymour BW, Cottrez F, Robinson DS, Hosken N, Ferlin WG, Wu X, Soto H, O'Garra A, Howard MC, Coffman RL. "Depletion of eosinophils in mice through the use of antibodies specific for C-C chemokine receptor 3 (CCR3). Journal of Leukocyte Biology; Vol. 65(6), 846-53, 1999

6. Oliver AM, Grimaldi JC, Howard MC, Kearney JF. "Independently ligating CD38 and Fc gammaRIIB relays a dominant negative signal to B cells." Hybridoma Vol. 18(2), 113-9, 1999

7. Cockayne DA, Muchamuel T, Grimaldi JC, Muller-Steffner H, Randall TD, Lund FE, Murray R, Schuber F, Howard MC. "Mice deficient for the ecto-nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide glycohydrolase CD38 exhibit altered humoral immune responses." Blood Vol. 92(4), 1324-33, 1998

8. Frances E. Lund, Nanette W. Solvason, Michael P. Cooke, Andrew W. Heath, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Troy D. Randall, R. M. E. Parkhouse, Christopher C Goodnow and Maureen C. Howard. "Signaling through murine CD38 is impaired in antigen receptor unresponsive B cells." European Journal of Immunology, Vol. 25(5), 1338-1345, 1995

9. M. J. Guimaraes, J. F. Bazan, A. Zolotnik, M. V. Wiles, J. C. Grimaldi, F. Lee, T. McClanahan. "A new approach to the study of haematopoietic development in the yolk sac and embryoid body." Development, Vol. 121(10), 3335-3346, 1995

10. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Sriram Balasubramanian, J. Fernando Bazan, Armen Shanafelt, Gerard Zurawski and Maureen Howard. "CD38-mediated protein ribosylation." Journal of Immunology,Vol. 155(2), 811-817, 1995

11. Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, Frances F. Lund, Andrew W. Heath, Nanette Solvason, Wei Wei Wu, J. Christopher Grimaldi, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "CD38 unresponsiveness of xid B cells implicates Bruton's tyrosine kinase (btk) as a regulator of CD38 induced signal transduction." International Immunology, Vol 7(2), 163-170, 1995

12. Frances Lund, Nanette Solvason, J. Christopher Grimaldi, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "Murine CD38: An immunoregulatory ectoenzyme." Immunology Today, Vol. 16(10), 469-473, 1995

13. Maureen Howard, J. Christopher Grimaldi, J. Fernando Bazan, Frances E. Lund, Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, R. M. E. Parkhouse, Timothy F. Walseth, and Hon Cheung Lee. "Formation and Hydrolysis of Cyclic ADP-Ribose Catalyzed by Lymphocyte Antigen CD38." Science, Vol. 262, 1056-1059, 1993

14. Nobuyuki Harada, Leopoldo Santos-Argumedo, Ray Chang, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Frances Lund, Camilynn I. Brannan, Neal G. Copeland, Nancy A. Jenkins, Andrew Heath, R. M. E. Parkhouse and Maureen Howard. "Expression Cloning of a cDNA Encoding a Novel Murine B Cell Activation Marker: Homology to Human CD38." The Journal of Immunology, Vol. 151, 3111-3118, 1993

15. David J. Rawlings, Douglas C. Saffran, Satoshi Tsukada, David A. Largaespada, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Lucie Cohen Randolph N. Mohr, J. Fernando Bazan, Maureen Howard, Neal G. Copeland, Nancy A. Jenkins, Owen Witte. "Mutation of Unique Region of Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase in Immunodeficient XID Mice." Science, Vol. 261, 358-360, 1993

16. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Raul Torres, Christine A. Kozak, Ray Chang, Edward Clark, Maureen Howard, and Debra A. Cockayne. "Genomic Structure and Chromosomal Mapping of the Murine CD40 Gene." The Journal of Immunology, Vol 149, 3921-3926, 1992

17. Timothy C. Meeker, Bruce Shiramizu, Lawrence Kaplan, Brian Herndier, Henry Sanchez, J. Christopher Grimaldi, James Baumgartner, Jacab Rachlin, Ellen Feigal, Mark Rosenblum and Michael S. McGrath. "Evidence for Molecular Subtypes of HIV-Associated Lymphoma:

Division into Peripheral Monoclonal, Polyclonal and Central Nervous System Lymphoma." AIDS, Vol. 5, 669-674, 1991

18. Ann Grimaldi and Chris Grimaldi. "Small-Scale Lambda DNA Prep." Contribution to Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Supplement 5, Winter 1989

19. J. Christopher Grimaldi, Timothy C. Meeker. "The t(5;14) Chromosomal Translocation in a Case of Acute Lymphocytic Leukemia Joins the Interleukin-3 Gene to the Immunoglobulin Heavy Chain Gene." Blood, Vol. 73, 2081-2085, 1989

20. Timothy C. Meeker, J. Christopher Grimaldi, et al. "An Additional Breakpoint Region in the BCL-1 Locus Associated with the t(11;14) (q13;q32) Translocation of B-Lymphocytic Malignancy." Blood, Vol. 74, 1801-1806, 1989

21 Timothy C. Meeker, J. Christopher Grimaldi, Robert O'Rourke, et al. "Lack of Detectable Somatic Hypermutation in the V Region of the Ig H Chain Gene of a Human Chronic B Lymphocytic Leukemia." The Journal of Immunology, Vol. 141, 3994-3998, 1988

MANUSCRIPTS IN PREPARATION

1. Sriram Balasubramanian, J. Christopher Grimaldi, J. Fernando Bazan, Gerard Zurawski and Maureen Howard. "Structural and functional characterization of CD38: Identification of active site residues"

PATENTS

1. "Methods for Eosinophil Depletion with Antibody to CCR3 Receptor" (US 6,207,155 B1).

2. "Amplification Based Cloning Method." (US 6,607,899)

3. Ashkenazi et al., "Secreted and Transmembrane Polypeptides and Nucleic Acids Encoding the Same." (this patent covers several hundred genes)

4. "IL-17 Homologous Polypeptides and Therapeutic Uses Thereof"

5. "Method of Diagnosing and Treating Cartilaginous Disorders."

MEMBERSHIPS AND ACTIVITIES

Editor	Frontiers in Bioscience
Member	DNAX Safety Committee 1991-1999 Biological Safety Affairs Forum (BSAF) 1990-1991 Environmental Law Foundation (ELF) 1990-1991

The t(5;14) Chromosomal Translocation in a Case of Acute Lymphocytic Leukemia Joins the Interleukin-3 Gene to the Immunoglobulin Heavy Chain Gene

By J. Christopher Grimaldi and Timothy C. Meeker

Chromosomal translocations have proven to be important markers of the genetic abnormalities central to the pathogenesis of cancer. By cloning chromosomal breakpoints one can identify activated proto-oncogenes. We have studied a case of B-lineage acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL) that was associated with peripheral blood eosinophilia. The chromosomal translocation t(5;14) (q31;q32) from this sample was cloned and studied at the molecular level. This translocation joined the immunoglobulin heavy chain joining (Jh) region to the promotor region of the interleukin-3 (IL-3) gene in opposite transcriptional orientations. The data suggest that activation of the IL-3 gene by the enhancer of the immunoglobulin heavy chain gene may play a central role in the pathogenesis of this leukemia and the associated eosinophilia.

KARYOTYPIC STUDIES of leukemia and lymphoma have identified frequent nonrandom chromosomal translocations. Some of these translocations juxtapose the immunoglobulin heavy chain (IgH) gene with important protooncogenes, such as c-*myc* and *bcl*-2.[1,2] In this way, the IgH gene can activate proto-oncogenes, resulting in disordered gene expression and a step in the development of cancer. The investigation of additional nonrandom translocations into the IgH locus allows us to identify new genes promoting the generation of leukemia and lymphoma.

A distinct subtype of acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL) has been characterized by B-lineage phenotype, associated eosinophilia in the peripheral blood, and a t(5;14)(q31;q32) chromosomal translocation.[3,4] This syndrome probably occurs in <1% of all patients with ALL. We hypothesized that the cloning of the translocation characteristic of this leukemia might allow the identification of an important gene on chromosome 5 that plays a role in the evolution of this disease. In this report we demonstrate that the interleukin-3 gene (IL-3) and the IgH gene are joined by this translocation.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Sample and DNA blots. A bone marrow aspirate from a representative patient with ALL (L1 morphology by French-American-British [FAB] criteria), peripheral eosinophilia (up to 20,000 per microliter with a normal value of <350 per microliter) and a t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation was studied. Using published methods, genomic DNA was isolated and DNA blots were made.[5] Briefly, 10 μg of high molecular weight (mol wt) DNA were digested using an appropriate restriction enzyme and electrophoresed on a 0.8% agarose gel. The gel was stained with ethidium bromide, photographed, denatured, neutralized, and transferred to Hybond (Amersham, Arlington Heights, IL). After treatment of the filter with ultraviolet light, hybridization was performed. The filter was washed to a final stringency of 0.2% saturated sodium citrate (SSC) and 0.1% sodium lauryly sulfate (SDS) and exposed to film. The human Jh probe has been previously reported.[6]

Genomic library. The genomic library was made using pub-

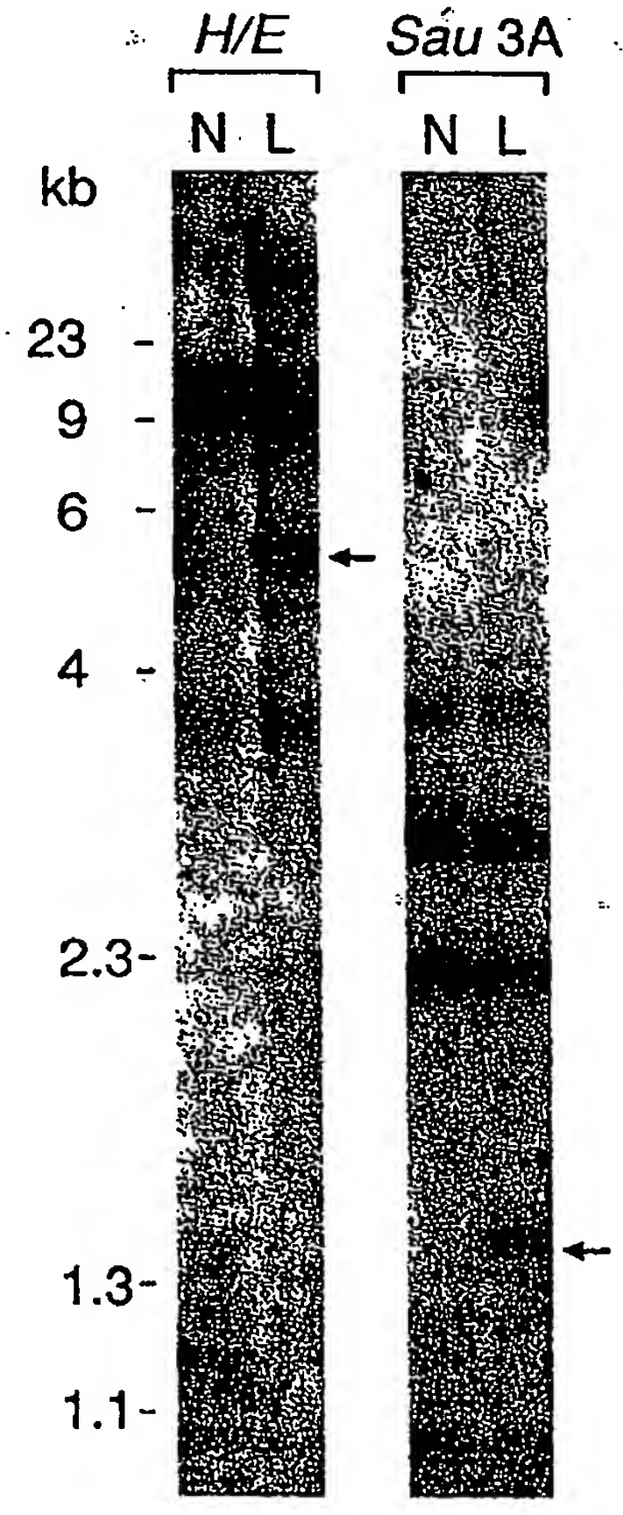


Fig 1. DNA blots of the leukemia sample. The restriction fragment pattern of normal human DNA (N) and the leukemia sample (L) were compared using a human Jh probe. Rearranged bands are indicated by arrows. Sample L exhibits a single rearranged band with both *Hind* III/*Eco*RI and *Sau*3A restriction digests. The rearranged bands are less intense than the other bands because the majority of cells in the sample represent normal bone marrow elements.

From the Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Medicine, University of California, San Francisco.
Submitted February 22, 1989; accepted March 8, 1989.
Supported by NIH Grant No. CA01102.
Address reprint requests to Timothy C. Meeker, MD, UCSF/VAMC 111H, 4150 Clement St, San Francisco, CA 94121.
Dr Grimaldi's current address is Biostan Inc, 440 Chesapeake Dr, Seaport Centre, Redwood City, CA 94063.
The publication costs of this article were defrayed in part by page charge payment. This article must therefore be hereby marked "advertisement" *in accordance with 18 U.S.C. section 1734 solely to indicate this fact.*

0006-4971/89/7308-0031$3.00/0

lished methods.[5] Approximately 100 μg of high mol wt genomic DNA were partially digested with the *Sau*3A restriction enzyme. Fragments from 9 to 23 kilobases (kb) in size were isolated on a sucrose gradient and ligated into phage EMBL3A (Strategene, San Diego). Recombinant phage were packaged, plated, and screened as previously reported.[5]

DNA sequencing. Fragments for sequencing were cloned into M13 vectors and sequenced by the chain termination method using Sequenase (United States Biochemical, Cleveland).[7] All sequence data were derived from both strands.

RESULTS

We studied a bone marrow sample from a patient with ALL and associated peripheral eosinophilia. Karyotypic analysis showed the characteristic t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation. These features define a distinctive subtype of ALL.[3,4] The leukemic cells were analyzed for cell surface phenotype by immunofluorecence. They were positive for B1 (CD20), B4 (CD19), cALLA (CD10), HLA-DR, and terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (Tdt), but negative for surface immunoglobulin. This phenotypic profile describes an immature cell from the B-lymphocytic lineage.[8]

The leukemia DNA was analyzed by Southern blotting for rearrangements of the IgH gene. Using a human immunoglobulin Jh probe, a single rearranged band was detected by *Eco*RI, *Hind*III, *Sst*I, *Sau*3A, and *Eco*RI plus *Hind*III restriction digests, suggesting rearrangement of one allele (Fig 1). The immunoglobulin Jh region from the other allele was presumably either deleted or in the germline configuration.

We hypothesized that the t(5;14)(q31;q32) juxtaposed a growth-promoting gene on chromosome 5 with the immunoglobulin Jh region on chromosome 14. Therefore, a genomic library was made from the leukemic sample and screened with a Jh probe. Fifteen distinct positive clones were isolated and screened for the presence of the rearranged *Sau*3A fragment that was detected by DNA blotting. By this analysis, five clones appeared to represent the rearranged allele identified by DNA blots. One of these clones (clone no. 4) was chosen for further study and a detailed restriction map was generated. The *Eco*RI, *Hind*III/*Eco*RI, and *Sst*I fragments from clone no. 4 that hybridized to the human Jh probe were also identical in size to the rearranged fragments from the leukemia sample, confirming that clone no. 4 represented the rearranged leukemic allele.

Phage clone no. 4 contained 3.7 kb of unknown origin joined to the IgH gene in the region of Jh4 (Fig 2). The IgH gene from Jh4 to the Cmu region appeared to be in germline configuration. Previously, the gene encoding hematopoietic growth factor IL-3 had been mapped to chromosome 5q31 so it was suspected that clone no. 4 might contain part of this gene.[9-12] When the restriction map of human IL-3 and clone no. 4 were compared, they were identical for more than 3 kb (Fig 2).

We confirmed the juxtaposition of the IL-3 gene and the IgH gene by nucleic acid sequencing of the subcloned *Bst*EII/*Hpa*I fragment (Fig 2). The sequence of this fragment showed no disruption of the protein coding region or the messenger RNA of the IL-3 gene. The break in the IL-3 gene occurred in the promotor region, 452 base pairs (bp) upstream of the transcriptional start site (position 64, Fig

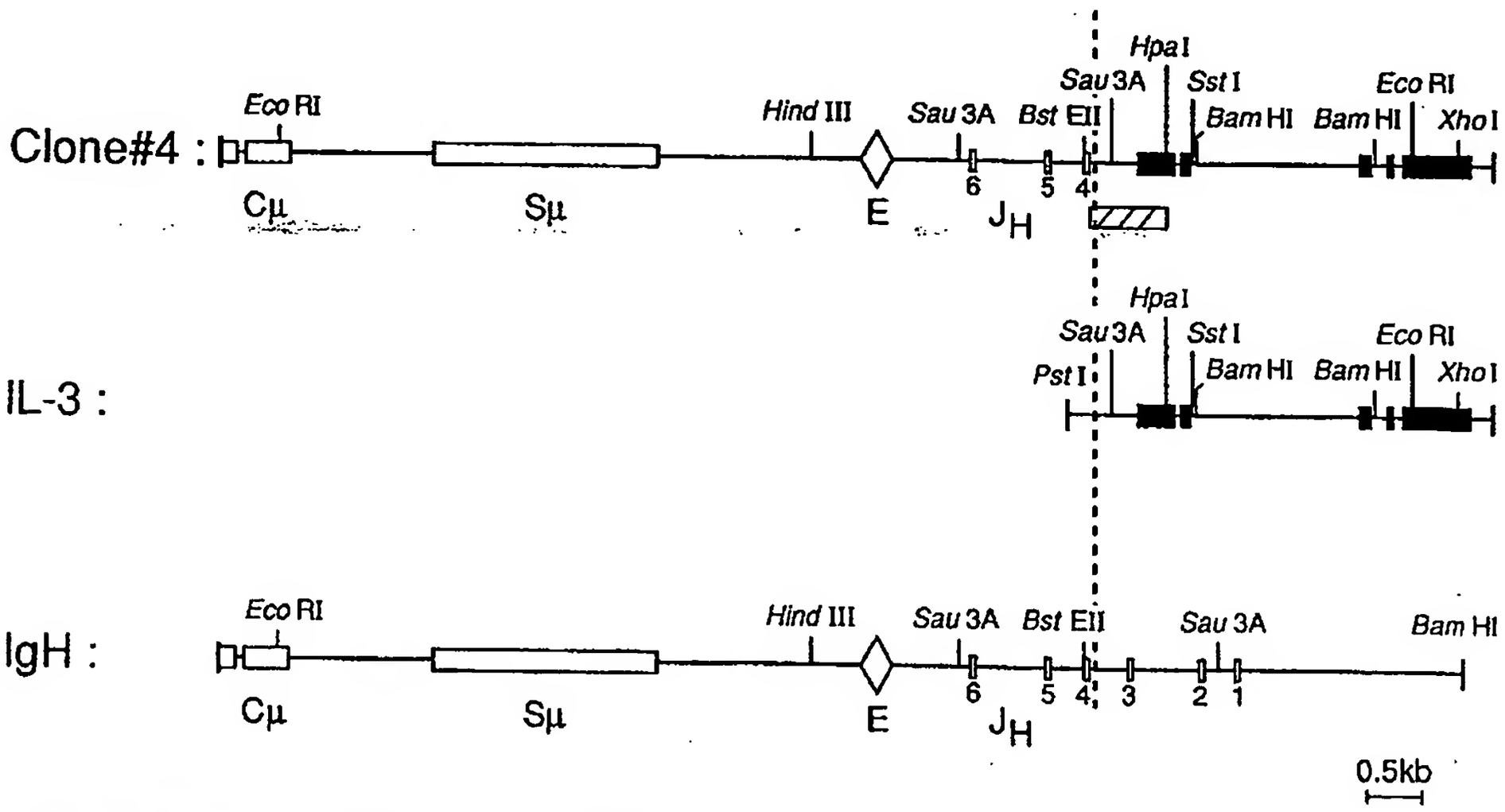


Fig 2. Breakpoint region: t(5;14)(q31;q32). Comparative mapping of phage clone no. 4, the germline IgJh region, and the germline IL-3 gene.[28,29] The map of clone no. 4 is identical to that of IgH until it diverges in the region of Jh4 (at the dashed line), after which it is identical to the map of IL-3. The two genes are positioned in a head-to-head orientation. The Ig μ chain constant region (Cμ), switch region (Sμ), enhancer (E), and Jh segments are indicated (open symbols). The five exons (dark boxes) and four introns of the IL-3 gene are shown. The hatched box indicates the sequenced region.

3A). The break in the IgH gene occurred 2 bp upstream of the Jh4 region. Between the two breaks, 25 bp of uncertain origin (putative N sequence) were inserted.[13,14] No sequences homologous to the immunoglobulin heptamer and nonamer could be identified in the IL-3 sequence (Fig 3B). Therefore, nucleic acid sequencing confirmed the juxtaposition of the IL-3 gene and the IgH gene. The sequence data clearly showed that the genes were positioned in opposite transcriptional orientations (head-to-head).

Available data also allowed us to determine the normal positions of the IL-3 gene and the GM-CSF gene in relation to the centromere of chromosome 5 (Fig 4). The IgH gene is known to be positioned with the variable regions toward the telomere on chromosome 14q.[2,15] It has also been shown that GM-CSF maps within 9 kb of IL-3 in the same transcriptional orientation.[16] Using this information and assuming a simple translocation event in our sample, we can conclude that the IL-3 gene is normally more centromeric, and the GM-CSF gene more telomeric on chromosome 5q (Fig 4). Furthermore, both are transcribed with their 5′ ends toward the centromere.

DISCUSSION

In this report we have cloned a unique chromosomal translocation that appears to be a consistent feature of a rare, yet distinct, clinical form of acute leukemia. This translocation joined the promotor of the IL-3 gene to the IgH gene. Except for the altered promotor, the IL-3 gene appeared

A

```
                                                                    +
5'GGTGACCAGGGTTCCCTGGCCCCAGTAGTCAAAGTAGTAGAGGTAATTCATCATAGCTGCGGATTAGCAGCGTGACCGGC   80
3'CCACTGGTCCCAAGGGACCGGGGTCATCAGTTTCATCATCTCCATTAAGTAGTATCGACGCCTAATCGTCGCACTGGCCG

5'TACCAGACAAACTCTCATCTGTTCCAGTGGCCTCCTGGCCACCCACCAGGACCAAGCAGGGCGGGCAGCAGAGGGCCAGG  160
3'ATGGTCTGTTTGAGAGTAGACAAGGTCACCGGAGGACCGGTGGGTGGTCCTGGTTCGTCCCGCCCGTCGTCTCCCGGTCC

                    **********
5'GTAGTCCAGGTGATGGCAGATGAGATCCCACTGGGCAGGAGGCCTCAGTGAGCTGAGTCAGGCTTCCCCTTCCTGCCACA  240
3'CATCAGGTCCACTACCGTCTACTCTAGGGTGACCCGTCCTCCGGAGTCACTCGACTCAGTCCGAAGGGGAAGGACGGTGT

5'GGGGTCCTCTCACCTGCTGCCATGCTTCCCATCTCTCATCCTCCTTGACAAGATGAAGTGATACCGTTTAAGTAATCTTT  320
3'CCCCAGGAGAGTGGACGACGGTACGAAGGGTAGAGAGTAGGAGGAACTGTTCTACTTCACTATGGCAAATTCATTAGAAA

                                                          **********
5'TTTCTTGTTTCACTGATCTTGAGTACTAGAAAGTCATGGATGAATAATTACGTCTGTGGTTTTCTATGGAGGTTCCATGT  400
3'AAAGAACAAAGTGACTAGAACTCATGATCTTTCAGTACCTACTTATTAATGCAGACACCAAAAGATACCTCCAAGGTACA

5'CAGATAAAGATCCTTCCGACGCCTGCCCCACACCACCACCTCCCCCCGCCTTGCCCGGGGTTGTGGGCACCTTGCTGCTG  480
3'GTCTATTTCTAGGAAGGCTGCGGACGGGGTGTGGTGGTGGAGGGGGGCGGAACGGGCCCCAACACCCGTGGAACGACGAC

5'CACATATAAGGCGGGAGGTTGTTGCCAACTCTTCAGAGCCCCACGAAGGACCAGAACAAGACAGAGTGCCTCCTGCCGAT  561
3'GTGTATATTCCGCCCTCCAACAACGGTTGAGAAGTCTCGGGGTGCTTCCTGGTCTTGTTCTGTCTCACGGAGGACGGCTA

5'CCAAACATGAGCCGCCTGCCCGTCCTGCTCCTGCTCCAACTCCTGGTCCGCCCCGGACTCCAAGCTCCCATGACCCAGAC  640
3'GGTTTGTACTCGGCGGACGGGCAGGACGAGGACGAGGTTGAGGACCAGGCGGGGCCTGAGGTTCGAGGGTACTGGGTCTG

5'AACGTCCTTGAAGACAAGCTGGGTTAAC 3'
3'TTGCAGGAACTTCTGTTCGACCCAATTG 5'  668
```

B

```
IgJh4   5'TGGCCCCAGTAGTCAAAGTAGTCACATTGTGGGAGGCCCCATTAAGGGGTGCACAAAAACCTGACTCTC
        3'ACCGGGGTCATCAGTTTCATCAGTGTAACACCCTCCGGGGTAATTCCCCACGTGTTTTTGGACTGAGAG
          ++++++++++++++++++++++

Cl.#4   5'TGGCCCCAGTAGTCAAAGTAGTAGAGGTAATTCATCATAGCTGCGGATTAGCAGCGTGACCGGCTACCA
        3'ACCGGGGTCATCAGTTTCATCATCTCCATTAAGTAGTATCGACGCCTAATCGTCGCACTGGCCGATGGT
                                                  ++++++++++++++++++++++

Il-3    5'GGCACCAAGAGATGTGCTTCTCAGAGCCTGAGGCTGAACGTGGATGTTTAGCAGCGTGACCGGCTACCA
        3'CCGTGGTTCTCTACACGAAGAGTCTCGGACTCCGACTTGCACCTACAAATCGTCGCACTGGCCGATGGT
```

Fig 3. Sequence of t(5;14)(q31;q32) breakpoint region. (A) Nucleotide sequence of the *Bst*EII/*Hpa*I fragment indicated on Fig 2. Nucleotides 1 to 36 represent the Jh4 coding region underlined on the coding strand.[6] Nucleotides 39 to 63 are a putative N region. The sequence from position 64 to 668 is that of the germline IL-3 gene.[26] The IL-3 TATA box (485), transcription start (515), and initiation methionine (567) are underlined. Two proposed regulatory sequences in the promotor are marked by asterisks (positions 182 and 389). (B) Comparative sequence of the t(5;14)(q31;q32) breakpoint region. The IgJh4 region is shown with its coding region, heptamer, and nonamer underlined. Clone no. 4 is shown with putative N region sequences underlined. The IL-3 sequence is also shown. A plus sign (+) denotes the identical nucleotide between sequences. No heptamer or nonamer is identified in the IL-3 sequence.

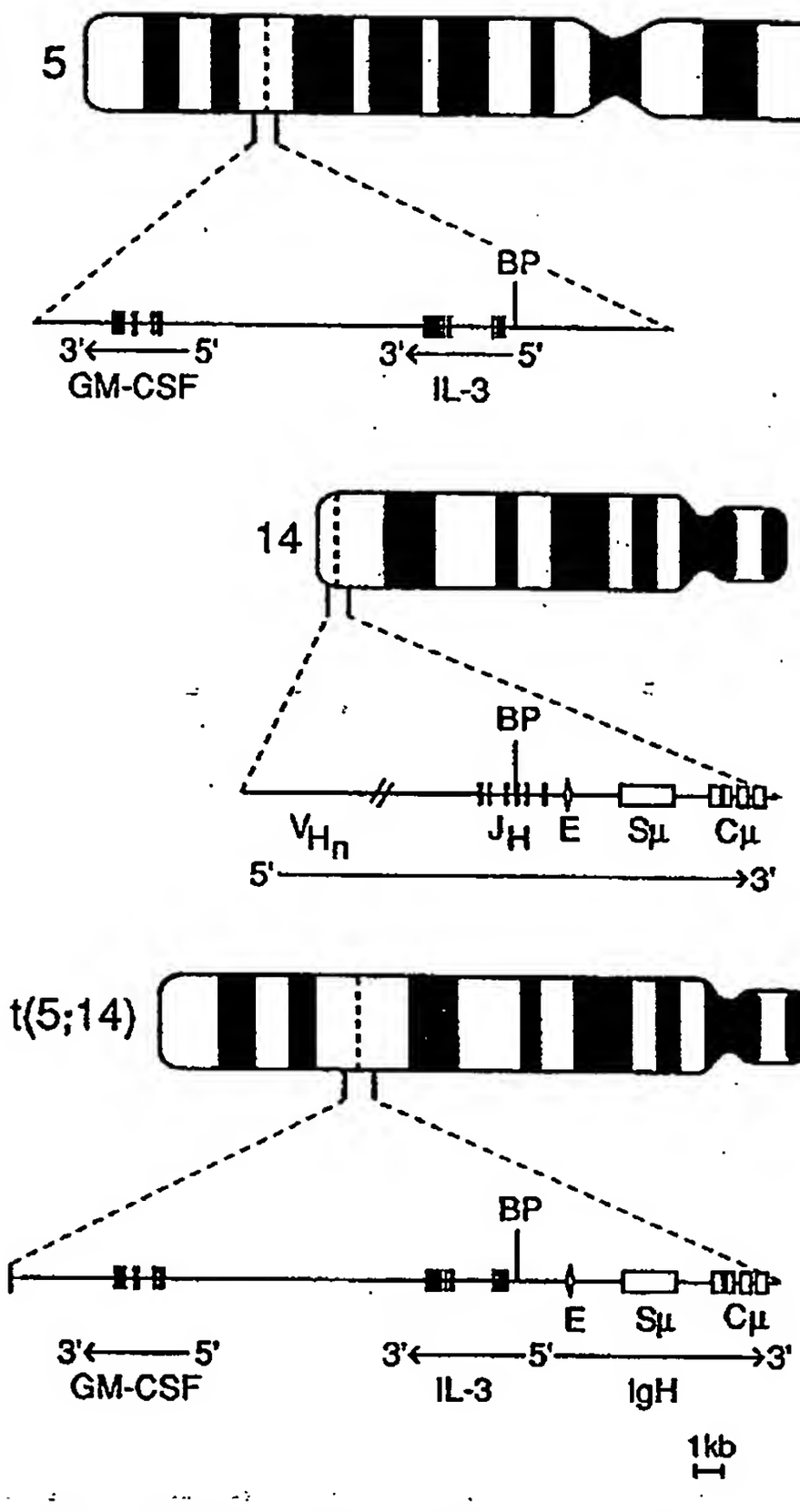


Fig 4. Diagram of the translocation. The normal chromosome 5q31 is shown with the GM-CSF gene telomeric to the IL-3 gene in the transcriptional orientation shown. On normal chromosome 14q32 the Vh regions are telomeric. The t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation results in the head-to-head orientation of these genes. Symbols are defined in Fig 2. BP, breakpoint position.

intact as no deletions, insertions, or point mutations were detected by restriction mapping of the entire gene and sequencing of part of the gene. The IgH gene has been truncated at the Jh4 region, which places the immunoglobulin enhancer within 2.5 kb of the IL-3 gene.[17,18] This leads to the hypothesis that the enhancer is increasing transcription of a structurally normal IL-3 gene. The same mechanism is important for activation of the c-*myc* gene in some cases of Burkitt's lymphoma.[19] An alternate hypothesis is that the elimination of an upstream IL-3 promotor element is crucial to the activation of the IL-3 gene.

The proposed activation of the IL-3 gene suggests that an autocrine loop is important for the pathogenesis of this leukemia.[20] Over-expression of the IL-3 gene coupled with the presence of the IL-3 receptor in these cells could account for a strong stimulus for proliferation. In this regard, there are data indicating that immature B-lineage lymphocytes and B-lineage leukemias may express the IL-3 receptor.[21,22]

An additional feature of this type of leukemia is the dramatic eosinophilia, consisting of mature forms. It has been hypothesized that the eosinophils do not arise from the malignant clone, but are stimulated by the tumor.[23,24] Because of the known effect of IL-3 on eosinophil differentiation, secretion of high levels of IL-3 by leukemic cells might have a role in the eosinophilia in this type of leukemia.[12]

The data suggest that the recombination mechanism that is active in the IgH gene during normal differentiation has a role in this translocation.[13,14] This is supported by the breakpoint location at the 5′ end of Jh4 and the presence of putative N-region sequences. On the other hand, no recombination signal sequence (heptamer and nonamer) was found in this region on chromosome 5, suggesting that additional factors also played a role. Further studies will elucidate the mechanism of this and other translocations.

In the leukemia we studied, it is possible that the immunoglobulin enhancer also activates the GM-CSF gene, since this gene is probably positioned only 14 kb away (Fig 4). This is known to be within the range of enhancer activation.[25] The interleukin-5 (IL-5) gene maps to chromosome 5q31.[26] Deregulation of the IL-5 gene by this translocation would act synergistically with IL-3 in the stimulation of eosinophil proliferation and differentiation.[27] These and other questions will be answered by the study of more patient samples. We plan to determine whether the t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation is capable of activating multiple lymphokines simultaneously and whether they cooperate in the generation of this leukemia.

REFERENCES

1. Klein G, Klein E: Evolution of tumours and the impact of molecular oncology. Nature 315:190, 1985

2. Showe L, Croce C: The role of chromosomal translocations in B- and T-cell neoplasia. Annu Rev Immunol 5:253, 1987

3. Hogan T, Koss W, Murgo A, Amato R, Fontana J, VanScoy F: Acute lymphoblastic leukemia with chromosomal 5;14 translocation and hypereosinophilia: Case report and literature review. J Clin Oncol 5:382, 1987

4. Tono-oka T, Sato Y, Matsumoto T, Ueno N, Ohkawa M, Shikano T, Takeda T: Hypereosinophilic syndrome in acute lymphoblastic leukemia with a chromosome translocation t(5q;14q). Med Pediatr Oncol 12:33, 1984

5. Meeker T, Grimaldi JC, O'Rourke R, Loeb J, Juliusson G, Einhorn S: Lack of detectable somatic hypermutation in the V region of the IgH gene of a human chronic B-lymphocytic leukemia. J Immunol 141:3394, 1988

6. Ravetch J, Siebenlist U, Korsmeyer S, Waldmann T, Leder P: Structure of the human immunoglobulin μ locus: Characterization of embryonic and rearranged J and D genes. Cell 27:583, 1981

7. Norrander U, Kempe T, Messing J, Construction of improved M13 vectors using oligodeoxynucleotide-directed mutagenesis. Gene 26:101, 1983

8. Foon K, Todd R: Immunologic classification of leukemia and lymphoma. Blood 68:1, 1986

9. LeBeau M, Epstein N, O'Brien SJ, Nienhuis AW, Yang Y-C, Clark S, Rowley J: The interleukin-3 gene is located on human

chromosome 5 and is deleted in myeloid leukemias with a deletion of 5q. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 84:5913, 1987

10. LeBeau M, Chandrasekharappi S, Lemons R, Schwartz J, Larson R, Arai N, Westbrook C: Molecular and cytogenetic analysis of chromosome 5 abnormalities in myeloid disorders, in cancer cells, in Proceedings of Molecular Diagnostics of Human Cancer. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, NY, 1989 (in press)

11. Ihle J, Weinstein Y: Immunological regulation of hematopoietic/lymphoid stem cell differentiation by interleukin-3. Adv Immunol 39:1, 1986

12. Clark S, Kamen R: The human hematopoietic colony-stimulating factors. Science 236:1229, 1987

13. Bakhshi A, Wright J, Graninger W, Seto M, Owens J, Cossman J, Jensen J, Goldman P, Korsmeyer S: Mechanism of the t(14,18) chromosomal translocation: Structural analysis of both derivative 14 and 18 reciprocal partners. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 84:2396, 1987

14. Tsujimoto Y, Louie E, Bashir M, Croce C: The reciprocal partners of both the t(14,18) and the t(11,14) translocations involved in B-cell neoplasms are rearranged by the same mechanism. Oncogene 2:347, 1988

15. Erikson J, Finan J, Nowell P, Croce C: Translocation of immunoglobulin VH genes in Burkitt lymphoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 80:810, 1982

16. Yang Y-C, Kovacic S, Kriz R, Wolf S, Clark S, Wellems T, Nienhuis A, Epstein N: The human genes for GM-CSF and IL-3 are closely linked in tandem on chromosome 5. Blood 71:958, 1988

17. Gillies S, Morrison S, Oi V, Tonegawa S: A tissue-specific transcription enhancer element is located in the major intron of a rearranged immunoglobulin heavy chain gene. Cell 33:717, 1983

18. Banerji J, Olson L, Schaffner W: A lymphocyte-specific cellular enhancer is located downstream of the joining region in immunoglobulin heavy chain genes. Cell 33:729, 1983

19. Hayday A, Gillies S, Saito H, Wood C, Wiman K, Hayward W, Tonegawa S: Activation of a translocated human c-*myc* gene by an enhancer in the immunoglobulin heavy-chain locus. Nature 307:334, 1984

20. Sporn M, Roberts A: Autocrine growth factors and cancer. Nature 313:745, 1985

21. Palacios R, Steinmetz M: IL-3–dependent mouse clones that express B-220 surface antigen, contain Ig genes in germ line configuration, and generate B lymphocytes in vivo. Cell 41:727, 1985

22. Uckun F, Gesner T, Song C, Myers D, Mufson A: Leukemic B-cell precursors express functional receptors for human interleukin-3. Blood 73:533, 1989

23. Spitzer G, Garson O: Lymphoblastic leukemia with marked eosinophilia: A report of two cases. Blood 42:377, 1973

24. Catovsky D, Bernasconi C, Verkonck P, Postma A, Howss J, Berg A, Rees J, Castelli G, Morra E, Galton D: The association of eosinophilia with lymphoblastic leukemia or lymphoma: A study of seven patients. Br J Haematol 45:523, 1980

25. Wang X-F, Calame K: The endogenous immunoglobulin heavy chain enhancer can activate tandem Vh promoters separated by a large distance. Cell 43:659, 1985

26. Sutherland G, Baker E, Callen D, Campbell H, Young I, Sanderson C, Garson O, Lopez A, Vadas M: Interleukin-5 is at 5q31 and is deleted in the 5q-syndrome. Blood 71:1150, 1988

27. Warren D, Moore M: Synergism among interleukin-1, interleukin-3, and interleukin-5 in the production of eosinophils from primitive hemopoietic stem cells. J Immunol 140:94, 1988

28. Yang Y-C, Clark S: Molecular cloning of a primate cDNA and the human gene for interleukin-3. Lymphokines 15:375, 1988

29. Yang Y-C, Ciarletta A, Temple P, Chung M, Kovacic S, Witek-Giannotti J, Leary A, Kriz R, Donahue R, Wong G, Clark S: Human IL-3 (multi-CSF): Identification by expression cloning of a novel hematopoietic growth factor related to murine IL-3. Cell 47:3, 1986

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Activation of the Interleukin-3 Gene by Chromosome Translocation in Acute Lymphocytic Leukemia With Eosinophilia

By Timothy C. Meeker, Dan Hardy, Cheryl Willman, Thomas Hogan, and John Abrams

The t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation from B-lineage acute lymphocytic leukemia with eosinophilia has been cloned from two leukemia samples. In both cases, this translocation joined the IgH gene and the interleukin-3 (IL-3) gene. In one patient, excess IL-3 mRNA was produced by the leukemic cells. In the second patient, serum IL-3 levels were measured and shown to correlate with disease activity. There was no evidence of excess granulocyte/macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF) or IL-5 expression. Our data support the formulation that this subtype of leukemia may arise in part because of a chromosome translocation that activates the IL-3 gene, resulting in autocrine and paracrine growth effects.

A NUMBER OF chromosome translocations have been associated with human leukemia and lymphoma. In many cases the study of these translocations has led to the discovery or characterization of proto-oncogenes, such as *bcl*-2, c-*abl*, and c-*myc*, that are located adjacent to the translocation.[1,2] It is now widely understood that cancer-associated translocations disrupt nearby proto-oncogenes.

A distinct subtype of acute leukemia is characterized by the triad of B-lineage immunophenotype, eosinophilia, and the t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation.[3,4] Leukemic cells from such patients have been positive for terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (Tdt), common acute lymphoblastic leukemia antigen (CALLA), and CD19, but negative for surface or cytoplasmic immunoglobulin. In previous work, we cloned the t(5;14) breakpoint from one leukemic sample (Case 1) and determined that the IgH and interleukin-3 (IL-3) genes were joined by this abnormality.[5] In this report, we extend those findings by showing that the t(5;14)(q31;q32) translocation from a second leukemia sample (Case 2) has a similar structure, and we report our study of growth factor expression in these patients.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Samples and Southern blots. Case 1 has been described.[5,6] Clinical features of Case 2 have been described in detail.[3] DNA isolation and Southern blotting was done using previously described methods.[5] Filters were hybridized with an immunoglobulin Jh probe, a 280 bp *Bam*HI/*Eco*RI genomic IL-3 fragment, and an IL-3 cDNA probe.[7,8]

Northern blots. RNA isolation and Northern blotting have been described.[9] Briefly, Northern blots were done by separating 9 μg total RNA on 1% agarose-formaldehyde gels. Equal RNA loading in each lane was confirmed by ethidium bromide staining. Blots were hybridized with an IL-3 cDNA probe extending to the *Xho* I site in exon 5, a 720 bp *Sst* I/*Kpn* I probe derived from intron 2 of the IL-3 gene, a 600 bp *Nhe* I/*Hpa* I IL-5 cDNA probe, and a 500 bp *Pst* I/*Nco* I granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF) cDNA probe.[10-12]

Polymerase chain reaction. Primers were designed with *Bam*HI sites for cloning. One primer hybridized to the Jh sequences from the IgH gene (Primer 144:5′-TAGGATCCGACGGTGACCAGGGT), and the other hybridized to the region of the TATA box in the IL-3 gene (Primer 161: 5′-AACAGGATCCCGCCTTATATGTGCAG). Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (95°C for 1 minute, 61°C for 30 seconds, and 72°C for 3 minutes) was done using 500 ng genomic DNA and 50 pmol of each primer in 100 μL containing 67 mmol/L Tris-HCl pH 8.8, 6.7 mmol/L $MgCl_2$, 10% dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), 170 μg/mL bovine serum albumin (BSA) (fraction V), 16.6 mmol/L ammonium sulfate, 1.5 mmol/L each dNTP and Taq polymerase (Perkin-Elmer, Norwalk, CT).[13]

Sequencing. Sequencing was done by chain termination in M13 vectors.[14] As part of this study, we sequenced a subclone of a normal IL-3 promotor, covering 598 base pairs from a *Sma* I site at position −1240 (with respect to the proposed site of transcription initiation) to an *Nhe* I site at position −642. The plasmid containing this region was a gift from Naoko Arai of the DNAX Research Institute.

Expression in Cos7 cells. A genomic IL-3 fragment from Case 1 was cloned into the pXM expression vector.[10] Briefly, the *Hin*dIII/*Sal* I fragment containing the IL-3 gene was subcloned from the previously described phage clone 4 into pUC18.[5] The 2.6 kb fragment extending from the *Sma* I site 61 bp upstream of the IL-3 transcription start to the *Sma* I site in the polylinker was cloned into the blunted *Xho* I site of pXM. The negative control construct was the pXM vector without insert. Plasmids were introduced into Cos7 cells by electroporation, and supernatant was collected after 48 hours in culture.

TF1 bioassay. TF-1 cells were passaged in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated fetal bovine serum, 2 mmol L-glutamine, and 1 ng/mL human GM-CSF.[15] Samples and antibodies were diluted in this same medium lacking GM-CSF but containing penicillin and streptomycin. A 25 μL volume of serial dilutions of patient serum was added to wells in a flat bottom 96-well microtiter plate. Rat anti-cytokine monoclonal antibody in a volume of 25 μL was added to appropriate wells and preincubated for 1 hour at 37°C. Fifty microliters of twice washed TF-1 cells were added to each well, giving a final cell concentration of 1×10^4 cells per well (final volume, 100 μL). The plate was incubated for 48 hours. The remaining cell viability was determined metabolically by the colori-

From the Division of Hematology/Oncology 111H, Department of Medicine, University of California and the Veterans Administration Medical Center, San Francisco, CA; the Center for Molecular and Cellular Diagnostics, Department of Pathology and Cell Biology, University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, NM; the Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Medicine, West Virginia University, Morgantown, WV; and DNAX Research Institute, Palo Alto, CA.

Submitted March 27, 1990; accepted April 19, 1990.

Supported in part by the University of California Cancer Research Coordinating Committee and University of New Mexico Cancer Center funding from the state of New Mexico. The DNAX Research Institute is supported by Schering-Plough.

Address reprint requests to Timothy C. Meeker, MD, Division of Hematology/Oncology 111H, Department of Medicine, University of California and the Veterans Administration Medical Center, 4150 Clement St, San Francisco, CA 94121.

0006-4971/90/7602-0022$3.00/0

```
IgJh5   5'GACGGTGACCAGGGTTCCTTGGCCCCAGGAGTCGAACCAGTTGTCACATTGTGACAACAATGCCAGACCCCGACAAAGAACGGGCGCCCCCGCACGTCCCT
        3'CTGCCACTGGTCCCAAGGAACCGGGGTCCTCAGCTTGGTCAACAGTGTAACACTGTTGTTACGGTCTGGGGCTGTTTCTTGCCCGCGGGGCGTGCAGGGA
          ++++++++++++++++++ ++++++++++ +++++++++++++++

Clone   5'GACGGTGACCAGGGTTCCCTGGCCCCAGGGGTCGAACCAGTTGTACCGCCATGTTATTGGGGGGGATCAAGACCTCTCAATACAACTGTCTCCTGCCAAT
        3'CTGCCACTGGTCCCAAGGGACCGGGGTCCCCAGCTTGGTCAACATGGCGGTACAATAACCCCCCCTAGTTCTGGAGAGTTATGTTGACAGAGGACGGTTA
                                                                                    (-934)*++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++

IL3     5'CCCCTCTCTGCAAACCTTGCCTACTGGGCCTGCACCTGGCAAATCCATGCTCAGCACAGACGGGGATCAAGACCTCTCAATACAACTGTCTCCTGCCAAT
        3'GGGGAGAGACGTTTGGAACGGATGACCCGGACGTGGACCGTTTAGGTACGAGTCGTGTCTGCCCCTAGTTCTGGAGAGTTATGTTGACAGAGGACGGTTA
```

Fig 1. Breakpoint sequences for Case 2. The germline IgJh5 region sequence (protein coding region and recombination signal sequences are underlined) is on top, the translocation sequence from Case 2 (PCR primer sequences and putative N region are underlined) is in the middle, and the germline IL-3 sequence, which we derived from a normal IL-3 clone, is on the bottom.[7] + indicates that each sequence has the same nucleotide. The sequence documents the head-to-head joining of the IL-3 and IgH genes. The breakpoint in the IL-3 gene occurred at position −934 (*).

metric method of Mosmann using a VMax microtiter plate reader (Molecular Devices, Menlo Park, CA) set at 570 and 650 nm.[16]

Cytokine immunoassays. These assays used rat monoclonal anti-cytokine antibodies (10 μg/mL) to coat the wells of a PVC microtiter plate. The capture antibodies used were BVD3-6G8, JES1-39D10, and BVD2-23B6, for the IL-3, IL-5, and GM-CSF assays, respectively. Patient sera were then added (undiluted and diluted 1:2 for IL-3, undiluted for IL-5, and undiluted and diluted 1:5 for GM-CSF). The detecting immunoreagents used were either mouse antiserum to IL-3 or nitroiodophenyl (NIP)-derivatized rat monoclonal antibodies JES1-5A2 and BVD2-21C11, specific for IL-5 and GM-CSF, respectively. Bound antibody was subsequently detected with immunoperoxidase conjugates: horseradish peroxidase (HRP)-labeled goat anti-mouse Ig for IL-3, or HRP-labeled rat (J4 MoAb) anti-NIP for IL-5 and GM-CSF. The chromogenic substrate was 3-3'azino-bis-benzthiazoline sulfonate (ABTS; Sigma, St Louis, MO). Unknown values were interpolated from standard curves prepared from dilutions of the recombinant factors using Softmax software available with the VMAX microplate reader (Molecular Devices).

RESULTS

Leukemic DNA from Case 2 was studied by Southern blotting. When digested with the *Hin*dIII restriction enzyme and hybridized with a human immunoglobulin heavy chain joining region (Jh) probe, a rearranged fragment at approximately 14 kb was detected (data not shown). When reprobed with either of two different IL-3 probes, a rearranged 14 kb fragment, comigrating with the rearranged Jh fragment, was identified. When leukemic DNA was digested with *Hin*dIII plus *Eco*RI, a rearranged Jh fragment was detected at 6 kb. The IL-3 probes also identified a comigrating fragment of this size. These experiments indicated that the leukemic sample studied was clonal and that a single fragment contained both Jh and IL-3 sequences, suggesting a translocation had occurred.

To characterize better the joining of the IL-3 gene and the immunoglobulin heavy chain (IgH) gene, the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) was used to clone the translocation.[13] A Jh primer and an IL-3 primer were designed to produce an amplified product in the event of a head-to-head translocation. While control DNA gave no PCR product, Case 2 DNA yielded a PCR-derived fragment of approximately 980 bp, which was cloned and sequenced.

The DNA sequence of the translocation clone from Case 2 confirmed the joining of the Jh region with the promotor of the IL-3 gene in a head-to-head configuration (Fig 1). Sequence analysis indicated that the breakpoint on chromosome 14 was just upstream of the Jh5 coding region. The breakpoint on chromosome 5 occurred 934 bp upstream of the putative site of transcription initiation of the IL-3 gene. We also determined that a putative N sequence of 17 bp was inserted between the chromosome 5 and chromosome 14 sequences during the translocation event.[17,18] Figure 2 shows

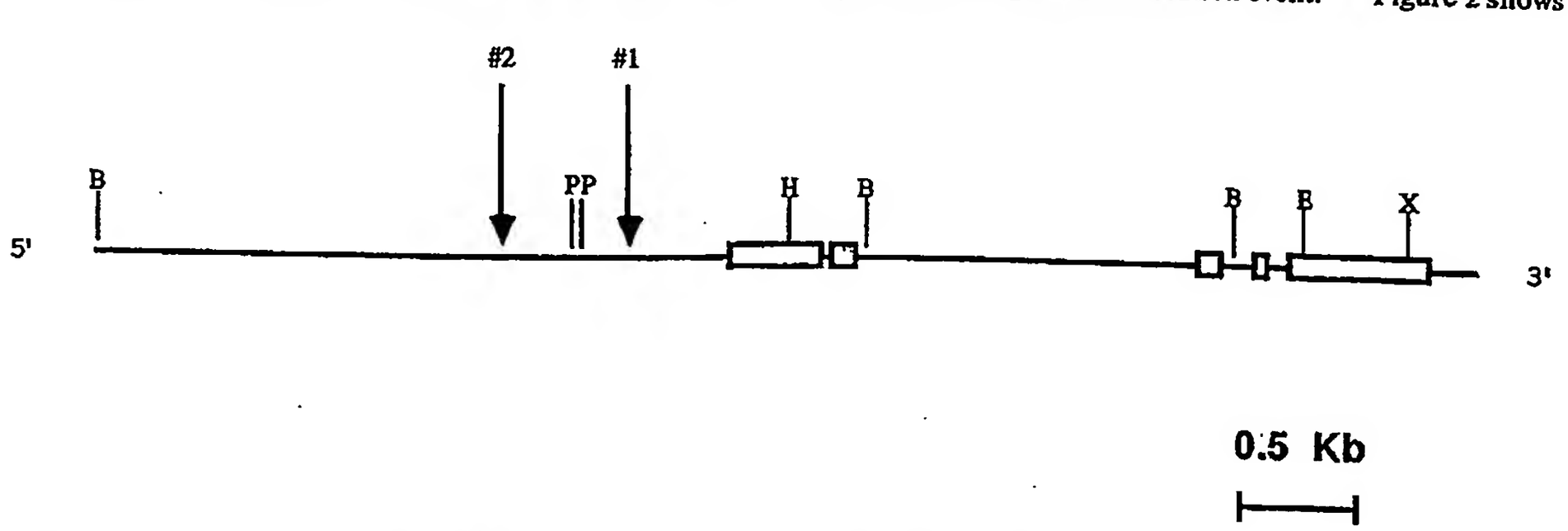


Fig 2. Relationship of chromosome 5 breakpoints to the IL-3 gene. This figure shows the two cloned breakpoints (arrows) in relation to the normal IL-3 gene.[8,10] One breakpoint occurred at position −462 and the other at −934 (arrows). In both circumstances, the translocations resulted in a head-to-head joining of the IgH gene and the IL-3 gene, leaving the mRNA and protein coding regions of the IL-3 gene intact. Boxes denote the five IL-3 exons; restriction enzymes are (B) *Bam*HI, (P) *Pst* I, (H) *Hpa* I, (E) *Eco*RI, and (X) *Xho* I.

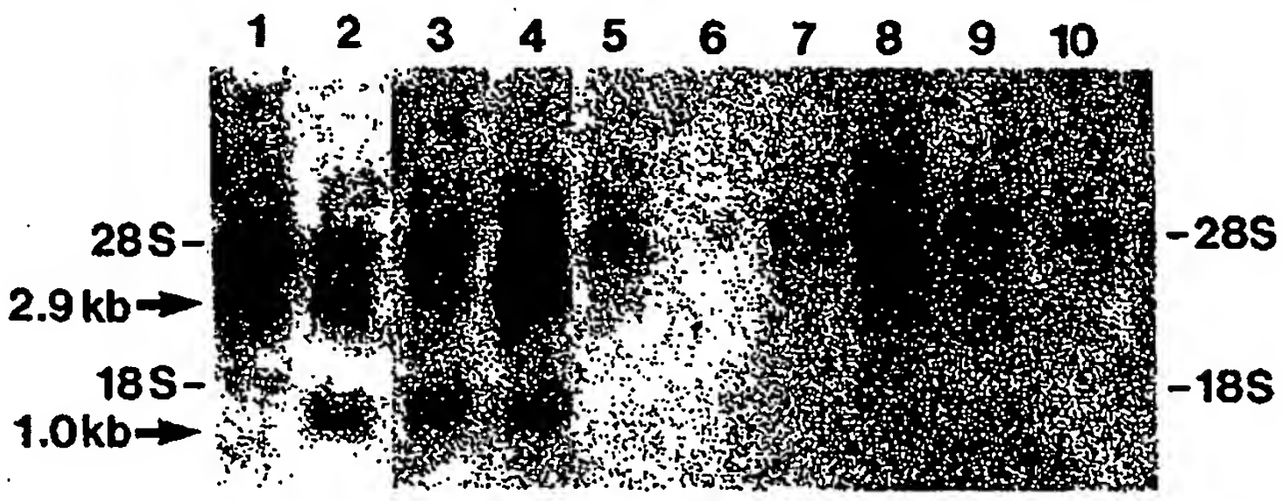


Fig 3. Documentation of IL-3 mRNA over-expression. A Northern blot was prepared and hybridized with a probe for IL-3. Lane 1 contained RNA from unstimulated peripheral blood lymphocytes (PBL) as a negative control. Lane 2 contained RNA from PBL stimulated for 4 hours with concanavalian A (ConA), and lane 3 contained RNA from PBL stimulated with ConA for 48 hours. As in the positive control lanes (2 and 3), a 1 kb band was identified in the leukemic sample from Case 1 (lane 4, lower arrow), suggesting aberrant expression of the IL-3 gene. In addition, the leukemic sample showed over-expression of an unspliced 2.9 kb IL-3 transcript (lane 4, upper arrow). We documented that this represented an unspliced precursor of the mature 1 kb transcript by showing that this band hybridized to a probe from intron 2 of the IL-3 gene. A similar 2.9 kb band was detected in lane 2, suggesting that an IL-3 mRNA of this size is sometimes detectable in normal mitogen-stimulated cells. Lane 5 through 10 represent RNA from six samples of B-lineage acute lymphocytic leukemia without the t(5;14) translocation, indicating that only the sample with the translocation exhibited IL-3 over-expression. Case 2 could not be analyzed by Northern blot because too few cells were available for study.

the locations of the two cloned breakpoints in relation to the IL-3 gene. The two chromosome 5 breakpoints were separated by less than 500 bp.

The genomic structure in Cases 1 and 2 suggested that a normal IL-3 gene product was over-expressed as a result of the altered promotor structure. This would predict that the IL-3 gene on the translocated chromosome was capable of making IL-3 protein. This prediction was tested by expressing a genomic fragment from the translocated allele of Case 1 containing all five IL-3 exons under the control of the SV40 promotor/enhancer in the Cos7 cell line. Cell supernatants were studied in a proliferation assay using the factor dependent erythroleukemic cell line, TF-1. The supernatants derived from transfections using the vector plus insert supported TF-1 proliferation, while supernatants from transfections using the vector alone were negative in this assay (data not shown). Furthermore, the biologic activity could be blocked by an antibody to human IL-3 (BVD3-6G8). This result showed that the translocated allele retained the ability to make IL-3 mRNA and protein.

The level of expression of IL-3 mRNA in leukemic cells from Case 1 was assessed. Northern blotting showed that the mature IL-3 mRNA (approximately 1 kb) and a 2.9 kb unspliced IL-3 mRNA were excessively produced by the leukemia (Fig 3). The 2.9 kb form of the mRNA is also present at low levels in normal peripheral blood T lymphocytes after mitogen activation (Fig 3). Several B-lineage acute leukemia samples without the t(5;14) translocation had undetectable levels of IL-3 mRNA in these experiments. In addition, although genes for GM-CSF and IL-5 map close to the IL-3 gene and might have been deregulated by the translocation, no IL-5 or GM-CSF mRNA could be detected in the leukemic sample (data not shown).[19,20]

Three serum samples from Case 2 were assayed by immunoassay for levels of IL-3, GM-CSF, and IL-5 (Table 1). Serum IL-3 could be detected and correlated with the clinical course. When the patient's leukemic cell burden was highest, the IL-3 level was highest. No serum GM-CSF or IL-5 could be detected.

Since the IL-3 immunoassay measured only immunoreactive factor, we confimed that biologically active IL-3 was present by using the TF-1 bioassay. This bioassay can be rendered monospecific using appropriate neutralizing monoclonal antibodies specific for IL-3, IL-5, or GM-CSF. We observed that sera from 1-16-84 and 3-14-84 contained TF-1 stimulating activity that could be blocked with anti–IL-3 MoAb (BVD3-6G8), but not with MoAbs to IL-5 (JES1-39D10) or GM-CSF (BVD2-23B6) (Fig 4; GM-CSF data not shown). The amount of neutralizable bioactivity in these two samples correlated very well with the difference in IL-3 levels obtained by immunoassay for these samples. Furthermore, the failure to block TF-1 proliferating activity with either anti–IL-5 or anti–GM-CSF was consistent with the inability to measure these factors by immunoassay and

Table 1. Peripheral Blood Counts and Growth Factor Levels at Different Times in Case 2

	Sample Date		
	11/15/83	1/16/84	3/14/84
Peripheral blood counts (cells/μL)			
WBC	81,800	116,500	12,300
Lymphoblasts	0	33,785	0
Eosinophils	46,626	73,080	615
Serum growth factor levels (pg/mL)			
IL-3	<444	7,995	1,051
GM-CSF	<15	<15	<15
IL-5	<50	<50	<50

Peripheral blood counts from Case 2 at three different time points with the corresponding growth factor levels quantified by immunoassay. The patient received chemotherapy between 1/16/84 and 3/14/84 to lower his leukemic burden.[3] No serum samples were available for a similar analysis of Case 1.

Abbreviation: WBC, white blood cells.

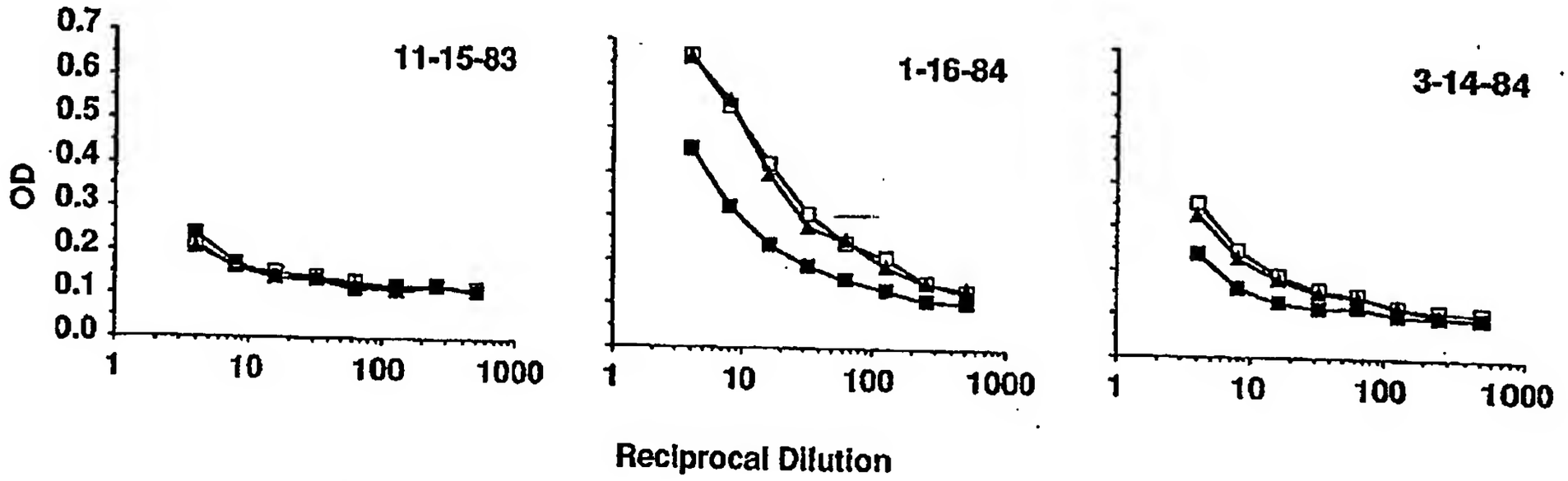


Fig 4. Bioassay of serum IL-3. Leukemic patient sera were tested for bioactive IL-3 and IL-5 in the TF-1 proliferation assay. The reciprocal of the dilution is indicated on the horizontal axis and the optical density indicating the amount of proliferation is indicated on the vertical axis. Serum from all three time points was assayed simultaneously. The assay was rendered monospecific by using a 1 μg/mL final concentration of monoclonal rat anti–IL-3, BVD3-6G8 (■), or anti–IL-5, JES1-39D10 (▲); □ indicates no MoAb. On 1/16/84 and 3/14/84, inhibition of proliferation was evident in the presence of anti–IL-3 antibody, documenting serum levels of IL-3 on those days. Serum IL-5 was not detected in this assay, as anti–IL-5 did not alter TF-1 proliferation.

indicated that these other myeloid growth factors were not detectably circulating in the serum of this patient.

DISCUSSION

In this report, we have extended our analysis of acute lymphocytic leukemia and eosinophilia associated with the t(5;14) translocation. In both cases we have studied, we have documented the joining of the IL-3 gene from chromosome 5 to the IgH gene from chromosome 14. The breakpoints on chromosome 5 are within 500 bp of each other, suggesting that additional breakpoints will be clustered in a small region of the IL-3 promotor. The PCR assay we have developed will be useful in the screening of additional clinical samples for this abnormality.

The finding of a disrupted IL-3 promotor associated with an otherwise normal IL-3 gene implied that this translocation might lead to the over-expression of a normal IL-3 gene product. In this work, we have documented that this is true. In addition, neither GM-CSF nor IL-5 are over-expressed by the leukemic cells. Furthermore, in one patient, serum IL-3 could be measured and correlated with disease activity. To our knowledge, this is the first measurement of human IL-3 in serum and its association with a disease process. The measurement of serum IL-3 in this and other clinical settings may now be indicated.

The finding of the IL-3 gene adjacent to a cancer-associated translocation breakpoint suggests that its activation is important for oncogenesis. It is our thesis that an autocrine loop for IL-3 is important for the evolution of this leukemia.[21] The excessive IL-3 production that we have documented would be one feature of such an autocrine loop. The final proof of our thesis must await additional data. In particular, from the study of additional clinical samples, it will be necessary to document that the IL-3 receptor is present on the leukemic cells and that anti–IL-3 antibody decreases proliferation of the leukemia in vitro.

An important aspect of this work is the suggestion of a therapeutic approach for this disease. If an autocrine loop for IL-3 can be documented in this disease, attempts to lower circulating IL-3 levels or block the interaction of IL-3 with its receptor may prove useful. Because it is also possible that the eosinophilia in these patients is mediated by the paracrine effects of leukemia-derived IL-3, similar interventions may improve this aspect of the disease. Antibodies or engineered ligands to accomplish these goals may soon be available.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

We thank Naoko Arai, Ken-ichi Arai, R. O'Rourke, J. Grimaldi, and T. O'Connell for technical assistance and/or helpful discussions.

REFERENCES

1. Klein G, Klein E: Evolution of tumours and the impact of molecular oncology. Nature 315:190, 1985

2. Showe L, Croce C: The role of chromosomal translocations in B- and T-cell neoplasia. Ann Rev Immunol 5:253, 1987

3. Hogan T, Koss W, Murgo A, Amato R, Fontana J, VanScoy F: Acute lymphoblastic leukemia with chromosomal 5;14 translocation and hypereosinophilia: Case report and literature review. J Clin Oncol 5:382, 1987

4. Tono-oka T, Sato Y, Matsumoto T, Ueno N, Ohkawa M, Shikano T, Takeda T: Hypereosinophilic syndrome in acute lymphoblastic leukemia with a chromosome translocation t(5q;14q). Med Ped Oncol 12:33, 1984

5. Grimaldi J, Meeker T: The t(5;14) chromosomal translocation in a case of acute lymphocytic leukemia joins the interleukin-3 gene to the immunoglobulin heavy chain gene. Blood 73:2081, 1989

6. McConnell T, Foucar K, Hardy W, Saiki J: Three-way reciprocal chromosomal translocation in an acute lymphoblastic leukemia patient with hypereosinophilia syndrome. J Clin Oncol 5:2042, 1987

7. Ravetch J, Siebenlist U, Korsmeyer S, Waldmann T, Leder P: Structure of the human immunoglobulin m locus: Characterization of embryonic and rearranged J and D genes. Cell 27:583, 1981

8. Otsuka T, Miyajima A, Brown N, Otsu K, Abrams J, Saeland S, Caux C, Malefijt R, Vries J, Meyerson P, Yokota K, Gemmel L,

Rennick D, Lee F, Arai N, Arai K, Yokota T: Isolation and characterization of an expressible cDNA encoding human IL-3. J Immunol 140:2288, 1988

9. Sambrook J, Fritsch E, Maniatis T: Molecular Cloning. Cold Spring Harbor, NY, Cold Spring Harbor Press, 1989

10. Yang Y-C, Ciarletta A, Temple P, Chung M, Kovacic S, Witek-Giannotti J, Leary A, Kriz R, Donahue R, Wong G, Clark S: Human IL-3 (multi-CSF): Identification by expression cloning of a novel hematopoietic growth factor related to murine IL-3. Cell 47:3, 1986

11. Yokota T, Coffman R, Hagiwara H, Rennick D, Takebe Y, Yokota K, Gemmell L, Shrader B, Yang G, Meyerson P, Luh J, Hoy P, Pene J, Briere F, Spits H, Banchereau J, Vries J, Lee F, Arai N, Arai K: Isolation and characterization of lymphokine cDNA clones encoding mouse and human IgA-enhancing factor and eosinophil colony-stimulating factor activities: Relationship to interleukin 5. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 84:7388, 1987

12. Wong G, Witek J, Temple P, Wilkens K, Leary A, Luxenberg D, Jones S, Brown E, Kay R, Orr E, Shoemaker C, Golde D, Kaufman R, Hewick R, Wang E, Clark S: Human GM-CSF: Molecular cloning of the complementary DNA and purification of the natural and recombinant proteins. Science 228:810, 1985

13. Saiki R, Scharf S, Faloona F, Mullis K, Horn G, Erlich H, Arnheim N: Enzymatic amplification of B-globin genomic sequences and restriction site analysis for diagnosis of sickle cell anemia. Science 230:1350, 1985

14. Norrander U, Kempe T, Messing J: Construction of improved M13 vectors using oligodeoxynucleotide-directed mutagenesis. Gene 26:101, 1983

15. Kitamura T, Tange T, Terasawa T, Chiba S, Kuwaki T, Miyagawa K, Piao Y, Miyazono K, Urabe A, Takaku F: Establishment and characterization of a unique human cell line that proliferates dependently on GM-CSF, IL-3, or erythropoietin. J Cell Physiol 140:323,-1989

16. Mosmann T: Rapid colorimetric assay for cellular growth and survival: Application to proliferation and cytotoxicity assays. J Immunol Methods 65:55, 1983

17. Bakhshi A, Wright J, Graninger W, Seto M, Owens J, Cossman J, Jensen J, Goldman P, Korsmeyer S: Mechanism of the t(14;18) chromosomal translocation: Structural analysis of both derivative 14 and 18 reciprocal partners. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 84:2396, 1987

18. Tsujimoto Y, Louie E, Bashir M, Croce C: The reciprocal partners of both the t(14;18) and the t(11;14) translocations involved in B-cell neoplasms are rearranged by the same mechanism. Oncogene 2:347, 1988

19. Yang Y-C, Kovacic S, Kriz R, Wolf S, Clark S, Wellems T, Nienhuis A, Epstein N: The human genes for GM-CSF and IL-3 are closely linked in tandem on chromosome 5. Blood 71:958, 1988

20. Sutherland G, Baker E, Callen D, Campbell H, Young I, Sanderson C, Garson O, Lopez A, Vadas M: Interleukin-5 is at 5q31 and is deleted in the 5q– syndrome. Blood 71:1150, 1988

21. Sporn M, Roberts A: Autocrine growth factors and cancer. Nature 313:745, 1985

Clinical and Pathologic Significance of the c-*erb*B-2 (*HER*-2/*neu*) Oncogene

Timothy P. Singleton and John G. Strickler

The c-*erb*B-2 oncogene was first shown to have clinical significance in 1987 by Slamon et al,[79] who reported that c-*erb*B-2 DNA amplification in breast carcinomas correlated with decreased survival in patients with metastasis to axillary lymph nodes. Subsequent studies, however, of c-*erb*B-2 activation in breast carcinoma reached conflicting conclusions about its clinical significance. This oncogene also has been reported to have clinical and pathologic implications in other neoplasms. Our review summarizes these various studies and examines the clinical relevance of c-*erb*B-2 activation, which has not been emphasized in recent reviews.[37,38,55] The molecular biology of the c-*erb*B-2 oncogene has been extensively reviewed[37,39,55] and will be discussed only briefly here.

BACKGROUND

The c-*erb*B-2 oncogene was discovered in the 1980s by three lines of investigation. The *neu* oncogene was detected as a mutated transforming gene in neuroblastomas induced by ethylnitrosurea treatment of fetal rats.[8,73,74,78] The c-*erb*B-2 was a human gene discovered by its homology to the retroviral gene v-*erb*B.[33,49,76] *HER*-2 was isolated by screening a human genomic DNA library for homology with v-*erb*B.[24] When the DNA sequences were determined subsequently, c-*erb*B-2, *HER*-2, and *neu* were found to represent the same gene. Recently, the c-*erb*B-2 oncogene also has been referred to as *NGL*.

The c-*erb*B-2 DNA is located on human chromosome 17q21[24,33,66] and codes for c-*erb*B-2 mRNA (4.6 kb), which translates c-*erb*B-2 protein (p185). This

protein is a normal component of cytoplasmic membranes. The c-*erb*B-2 oncogene is homologous with, but not identical to, c-*erb*B-1, which is located on chromosome 7 and codes for the epidermal growth factor receptor.[8,103] The c-*erb*B-2 protein is a receptor on cell membranes and has intracellular tyrosine kinase activity and an extracellular binding domain.[2,105] Electron microscopy with a polyclonal antibody detects c-*erb*B-2 immunoreactivity on cytoplasmic membranes of neoplasms, especially on microvilli and the non-villous outer cell membrane.[61] In normal cells, immunohistochemical reactivity for c-*erb*B-2 is frequently present at the basolateral membrane or the cytoplasmic membrane's brush border.[22,62]

There is experimental evidence that c-*erb*B-2 protein may be involved in the pathogenesis of breast neoplasia. Overproduction of otherwise normal c-*erb*B-2 protein can transform a cell line into a malignant phenotype.[25] Also, when the *neu* oncogene containing an activating point mutation is placed in transgenic mice with a strong promoter for increased expression, the mice develop multiple independent mammary adenocarcinomas.[18,63] In other experiments, monoclonal antibodies against the *neu* protein inhibit the growth (in nude mice) of a *neu*-transformed cell line,[26–28] and immunization of mice with *neu* protein protects them from subsequent tumor challenge with the *neu*-transformed cell line.[14] Some authors have speculated that the use of antagonists for the unknown ligand could be useful in future chemotherapy.[85] Further review of this experimental evidence is beyond the scope of this article.

The c-*erb*B-2 activation most likely occurs at an early stage of neoplastic development. This hypothesis is supported by the presence of c-*erb*B-2 activation in both in situ and invasive breast carcinomas. In addition, studies of metastatic breast carcinomas usually demonstrate uniform c-*erb*B-2 activation at multiple sites in the same patient,[11,12,39,41,52] although c-*erb*B-2 activation has rarely been detected in metastatic lesions but not in the primary tumor.[57,68,107] Even more rarely, c-*erb*B-2 DNA amplification has been detected in a primary breast carcinoma but not in its lymph node metastasis.[5] In patients who have bilateral breast neoplasms, both lesions have similar patterns of c-*erb*B-2 activation, but only a few such cases have been studied.[11]

MECHANISMS OF c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION

The most common mechanism of c-*erb*B-2 activation is genomic DNA amplification, which almost always results in overproduction of c-*erb*B-2 mRNA and protein.[17,34,65,81] The c-*erb*B-2 amplification may stabilize the overproduction of mRNA or protein through unknown mechanisms. Human breast carcinomas with c-*erb*B-2 amplification contain 2 to 40 times more c-*erb*B-2 DNA[4,5] and 4 to 128 times more c-*erb*B-2 mRNA[34,90] than found in normal tissue. Most human breast carcinomas with c-*erb*B-2 amplification have 2 to 15 times more c-*erb*B-2 DNA. Tumors with greater amplification tend to have greater overproduction.[17,52,65] The non-mammary neoplasms that have been studied tend to have

similar levels of c-*erb*B-2 amplification or overproduction relative to the corresponding normal tissue.

The second most common mechanism of c-*erb*B-2 activation is overproduction of c-*erb*B-2 mRNA and protein without amplification of c-*erb*B-2 DNA.[61] The quantities of mRNA and protein usually are less than those in amplified cases and may approach the small quantities present in normal breast or other tissues.[17,50,52] The c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction without mRNA overproduction or DNA amplification has been described in a few human breast carcinoma cell lines.[47]

Other rare mechanisms of c-*erb*B-2 activation have been reported. Translocations involving the c-*erb*B-2 gene have been described in a few mammary and gastric carcinomas, although some reported cases may represent restriction fragment length polymorphisms or incomplete restriction enzyme digestions that mimic translocations.[31,65,75,84,90,103] A single point mutation in the transmembrane portion of *neu* has been described in rat neuroblastomas induced by ethylnitrosurea.[9,55] The mutated *neu* protein has increased tyrosine kinase activity and aggregates at the cell membrane.[10,83,98] Although there has been speculation that some of the amplified c-*erb*B-2 genes may contain point mutations,[46] none has been detected in primary human neoplasms.[41,53,81]

TECHNIQUES FOR DETECTING c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION

Detection of c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification

Amplification of c-*erb*B-2 DNA is usually detected by DNA dot blot or Southern blot hybridization. In the dot blot method, the extracted DNA is placed directly on a nylon membrane and hybridized with a c-*erb*B-2 DNA probe. In the Southern blot method, the extracted DNA is treated with a restriction enzyme, and the fragments are separated by electrophoresis, transferred to a nylon membrane, and hybridized with a c-*erb*B-2 DNA probe. In both techniques, c-*erb*B-2 amplification is quantified by comparing the intensity (measured by densitometry) of the hybridization bands from the sample with those from control tissue.

Several technical problems may complicate the measurement of c-*erb*B-2 DNA amplification. First, the extracted tumor DNA may be excessively degraded or diluted by DNA from stromal cells.[81] Second, the c-*erb*B-2 DNA probe must be carefully chosen and labeled. For example, oligonucleotide c-*erb*B-2 probes may not be sensitive enough for measuring a low level of c-*erb*B-2 amplification, because diploid copy numbers can be difficult to detect (unpublished data). Third, the total amounts of DNA in the sample and control tissue must be compensated for, often with a probe to an unamplified gene. Many studies have used control probes to genes on chromosome 17, the location of c-*erb*B-2, to correct for possible alterations in chromosome number. Identical results, however, are obtained by using control probes to genes on other chromosomes,[5,65,80] with rare exception.[17] Studies using control probes to the beta-

globin gene must be interpreted with caution, because one allele of this gene is deleted occasionally in breast carcinomas.[3]

Amplification of c-*erb*B-2 DNA was assessed by using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) in one recent study.[32] Oligoprimers for the c-*erb*B-2 gene and a control gene are added to the sample's DNA, and PCR is performed. If the sample contains more copies of c-*erb*B-2 DNA than of the control gene, the c-*erb*B-2 DNA is replicated preferentially.

Detection of c-*erb*B-2 mRNA Overproduction

Overproduction of c-*erb*B-2 mRNA usually is measured by RNA dot blot or Northern blot hybridization. Both techniques require extraction of RNA but otherwise are analogous to DNA dot blot and Southern blot hybridization. Use of PCR for detection of c-*erb*B-2 mRNA has been described in two recent abstracts.[89,102]

Overproduction of c-*erb*B-2 mRNA can be measured by in situ hybridization. Sections are mounted on glass slides, treated with protease, hybridized with a radiolabeled probe, washed, treated with nuclease to remove unbound probe, and developed for autoradiography. Silver grains are seen only over tumor cells that overproduce c-*erb*B-2 mRNA. Negative control probes are used.[65,96,106] Our experience indicates that these techniques are relatively insensitive for detecting c-*erb*B-2 mRNA overproduction in routinely processed tissue. Although the sensitivity may be increased by modifications that allow simultaneous detection of c-*erb*B-2 DNA and mRNA, in situ hybridization still is cumbersome and expensive (unpublished data).

All of the above c-*erb*B-2 mRNA detection techniques have several problems that make them more difficult to perform than techniques for detecting DNA amplification. One major problem is the rapid degradation of RNA in tissue that is not immediately frozen or fixed. In addition, during the detection procedure, RNA can be degraded by RNase, a ubiquitous enzyme, which must be eliminated meticulously from laboratory solutions. Third, control probes to genes that are uniformly expressed in the tissue of interest need to be carefully selected.

Detection of c-*erb*B-2 Protein Overproduction

The most accurate methods for detecting c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction are the Western blot method and immunoprecipitation. Both techniques can document the binding specificity of various antibodies against c-*erb*B-2 protein. In Western blot studies, protein is extracted from the tissue, separated by electrophoresis (according to size), transferred to a membrane, and detected by using antibodies to c-*erb*B-2. In immunoprecipitation studies, antibodies against c-*erb*B-2 are added to a tumor lysate, and the resulting protein–antibody precipitate is separated by gel electrophoresis and stained for protein. Both Western blot and immunoprecipitation are useful research tools but currently are not practical for diagnostic pathology. Two recent abstracts have described an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for detection of c-*erb*B-2 protein.[18,45]

Overproduction of c-*erb*B-2 protein is most commonly assessed by various immunohistochemical techniques. These procedures often generate conflicting results, which are explained at least partially by three factors. First, various studies have used different polyclonal and monoclonal antibodies. Because some polyclonal antibodies recognize weak bands in addition to the c-*erb*B-2 protein band on Western blot or immunoprecipitation, the results of these studies should be interpreted with caution.[22,35,47,61] Even some monoclonal antibodies immunoprecipitate protein bands in addition to c-*erb*B-2 (p185).[30,59,88] Second, tissue fixation contributes to variability between studies. For example, some antibodies detect c-*erb*B-2 protein only in frozen tissue and do not react in fixed tissue. In general, formalin fixation diminishes the sensitivity of immunohistochemical methods and decreases the number of reactive cells.[81,86] When Bouin's fixative is used, there may be a higher percentage of positive cases.[22] Third, minimal criteria for interpreting immunohistochemical staining are generally lacking. Although there is general agreement that distinct crisp cytoplasmic membrane staining is diagnostic for c-*erb*B-2 activation in breast carcinoma, the number of positive cells and the staining intensity required to diagnose c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction varies from study to study and from antibody to antibody. Degradation of c-*erb*B-2 protein is not a problem because it can be detected in intact form more than 24 hours after tumor resection without fixation or freezing.[94]

ACTIVATION OF c-*erb*B-2 IN BREAST LESIONS

Incidence of c-*erb*B-2 Activation

Most studies of c-*erb*B-2 oncogene activation do not specify histological subtypes of infiltrating breast carcinoma. Amplification of c-*erb*B-2 DNA was found in 19.1 percent (519 of 2715) of invasive carcinomas in 25 studies (Table 1), and c-*erb*B-2 mRNA or protein overproduction was detected in 20.9 percent (566 of 2714) of invasive carcinomas in 20 studies. Twelve studies have documented c-*erb*B-2 mRNA or protein overproduction in 15 percent (88 of 604) of carcinomas that lacked c-*erb*B-2 DNA amplification.

The incidence of c-*erb*B-2 activation in infiltrating breast carcinoma varies with the histological subtype. Approximately 22 percent (142 of 650) of infiltrating ductal carcinomas have c-*erb*B-2 activation, as expected from the above data. Other variants of breast carcinoma with frequent c-*erb*B-2 activation are inflammatory carcinoma (62 percent, 54 of 87), Paget's disease (82 percent, 9 of 11), and medullary carcinoma (22 percent, 5 of 23). In contrast, c-*erb*B-2 activation is infrequent in infiltrating lobular carcinoma (7 percent, 5 of 73) and tubular carcinoma (7 percent, 1 of 15).

The c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction is present in 44 percent (44 of 100) of ductal carcinomas in situ and especially comedocarcinoma in situ (68 percent, 49 of 72). The micropapillary type of ductal carcinoma in situ also tends to have c-*erb*B-2 activation,[40,54,68] especially if larger cells are present. The greater fre-

TABLE 1. *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION IN MALIGNANT HUMAN BREAST NEOPLASMS

Histological Diagnosis	c-*erbB*-2 DNA Amplification[a]	c-*erbB*-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-*erbB*-2 Protein Overproduction[b]
Carcinoma, not otherwise specified	146/528,[61] 52/310,[17] 52/291,[109] 28/176,[57] 17/157,[113] 22/141,[35] 14/136,[57] 12/122,[4] 19/103,[79] 15/95,[90] 15/86,[111] 17/73,[77] 16/66,[42] 6/61,[50] 11/57,[52] 10/57,[55] 13/51,[13] 8/49,[23] 10/36,[92] 12/36,[94] 1/25,[15] 7/24,[91] 7/15,[31] 7/10,[93] 2/10[107]	42/180,[59] 49/126,[38] 19/62,[65] 19/57,[50] 3/11,[90] 6/10,[96] 3/9[31]	118/728,[85b] 58/330,[176] 47/313,[88] 17/195,[11] 32/191,[58] 31/185,[101] 34/102,[42] 24/53,[52b] 23/47,[13] 22/45,[8] 11/36,[94] 7/24,[91] 1/10[131]
Carcinoma, type not specified but lacking c-*erbB*-2 DNA amplification	—	18/136,[81] 14/73,[34] 8/16,[65] 0/8,[90] 1/4,[31] 0/3[96]	16/231,[176] 18/136,[81] 13/35,[13] 14/29,[52b] 1/28,[92] 3/24,[94] 0/17[91]
Infiltrating ductal carcinoma	21/118,[92] 23/107,[34] 17/50,[44] 7/37[90] 14/53 (comedo-carcinoma)[18] 3/33 (tubuloductal carcinoma)[16]	35/95[34]	22/137,[40] 14/93,[39] 9/34[88]

Inflammatory carcinoma	33/80,[35] 3/6[52]	46/75[35]	5/6[52b]
Paget's disease	—	—	5/6,[40] 2/3,[84] 2/2[92]
Tubular carcinoma	0/5,[16] 0/1[93]	—	1/9[40]
Medullary carcinoma	2/4,[16] 0/1[34]	0/1[34]	1/12,[40] 1/3,[58] 1/2,[92] 0/1[39]
Mucinous carcinoma	0/1,[16] 0/1[93]	—	1/2[58]
Invasive papillary carcinoma	0/2[93]	—	—
Infiltrating lobular carcinoma	1/15,[16] 0/6[34]	1/5[34]	2/27,[92] 0/12,[40] 0/9,[39] 1/5[85]
Mammary fibrosarcoma	0/1[90]	—	—
"Benign cystosarcoma"	—	—	0/1[88]
Ductal CIS[c] with minimal invasion	3/5[92]	—	—
Ductal CIS	0/2[34]	1/2[34]	33/74,[40] 10/24[39]
Ductal CIS, solid or comedo type	—	—	20/33,[58] 19/29,[92] 10/10[54]
Ductal CIS, micropapillary type	—	—	10/10[58]
Ductal CIS, micropapillary or cribriform type	—	—	1(focal)/14[54]
Ductal CIS, papillary or cribriform type	—	—	0/16,[92] 1/9,[58] 0/3[40]
Lobular CIS	—	—	0/16[40]

[a]Shown as number of cases with activation/number of cases studied; reference is given as a superscript.
[b]These protein studies used Western blots; the rest used immunohistochemical methods.
[c]CIS = carcinoma in situ.

quency of c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction in comedocarcinoma in situ, compared with infiltrating ductal carcinoma, could be explained by the fact that many infiltrating ductal carcinomas arise from other types of intraductal carcinoma, which show c-*erb*B-2 activation infrequently. Others have speculated that carcinoma in situ with c-*erb*B-2 activation tends to regress or to lose c-*erb*B-2 activation during progression to invasion.[40,68,92] Infiltrating and in situ components of ductal carcinoma, however, usually are similar with respect to c-*erb*B-2 activation,[11,39] although some authors have noted more heterogeneity of the immunohistochemical staining pattern in invasive than in in situ carcinoma.[40,42,68] Activation of c-*erb*B-2 is infrequent in lobular carcinoma in situ. If lesions contain more than one histological pattern of carcinoma in situ, the c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction tends to occur in the comedocarcinoma in situ but may include other areas of carcinoma in situ.[42,54,68] Overproduction of c-*erb*B-2 protein in ductal carcinoma in situ correlates with larger cell size and a periductal lymphoid infiltrate.[68]

Activation of c-*erb*B-2 has not been identified in benign breast lesions, including fibrocystic disease, fibroadenomas, and radial scars (Table 2). Strong membrane immunohistochemical reactivity for c-*erb*B-2 has not been described in atypical ductal hyperplasia, although weak accentuation of membrane staining has been noted infrequently.[39,42,54] In normal breast tissue, c-*erb*B-2 DNA is diploid, and c-*erb*B-2 is expressed at lower levels than in activated tumors.[34,35,65,88]

These preliminary data suggest that c-*erb*B-2 activation may not be useful for resolving many of the common problems in diagnostic surgical pathology. For example, c-*erb*B-2 activation is infrequent in tubular carcinoma and radial scars. In addition, because c-*erb*B-2 activation is unusual in atypical ductal hyperplasia, cribriform carcinoma in situ, and papillary carcinoma in situ, detection of c-*erb*B-2 activation in these lesions may not be helpful in their differential diagnosis. The histological features of comedocarcinoma in situ, which commonly overproduces c-*erb*B-2, are unlikely to be mistaken for those of benign lesions. Activation of

TABLE 2. c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION IN BENIGN HUMAN BREAST LESIONS

Histological Diagnosis	c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification[a]	c-*erb*B-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-*erb*B-2 Protein Overproduction
Fibrocystic disease	0/10[93]	—	0/32,[39] 0/9,[68] 0/8[88]
Atypical ductal hyperplasia	—	—	2(weak)/21,[54] 1(cytoplasmic)/13[39]
Benign ductal hyperplasia	—	—	0/12[39]
Sclerosing adenosis	—	—	0/4[39]
Fibroadenomas	0/16,[34] 0/6,[93] 0/2,[21] 0/1[91]	0/6,[35] 0/3[34]	0/21,[39] 0/10,[68] 0/8,[88] 0/3[42]
Radial scars	—	—	0/22[39]
Blunt duct adenosis	—	—	0/14[39]
"Breast mastosis"	—	0/3[35]	—

[a]Shown as number of cases with activation/number of cases studied; reference is given as a superscript.

c-*erb*B-2, however, does favor infiltrating ductal carcinoma over infiltrating lobular carcinoma. Further studies of these issues would be useful.

Correlation of c-*erb*B-2 Activation With Pathologic Prognostic Factors

Multiple studies have attempted to correlate c-*erb*B-2 activation with various pathologic prognostic factors (Table 3). Activation of c-*erb*B-2 was correlated with lymph node metastasis in 8 of 28 series, with higher histological grade in 6 of 17 series, and with higher stage in 4 of 14 series. Large tumor size was not associated with c-*erb*B-2 activation in most studies (11 of 14). Tetraploid DNA content and low proliferation, measured by Ki-67, have been suggested as prognostic factors and may correlate with c-*erb*B-2 activation.[6,7]

Correlation of c-*erb*B-2 Activation With Clinical Prognostic Factors

Various studies have attempted also to correlate c-*erb*B-2 activation with clinical features that may predict a poor outcome (Table 4). Activation of c-*erb*B-2 correlated with absence of estrogen receptors in 10 of 28 series and with absence of progesterone receptors in 6 of 18 series. In most studies, patient age did not correlate with c-*erb*B-2 activation, and, in the rest of the reports, c-*erb*B-2 activation was associated with either younger or older ages.

Correlation of c-*erb*B-2 Activation With Patient Outcome

Slamon et al[78,81] first showed that amplification of the c-*erb*B-2 oncogene independently predicts decreased survival of patients with breast carcinoma. The correlation of c-*erb*B-2 amplification with poor outcome was nearly as strong as the correlation of number of involved lymph nodes with poor outcome. Slamon et al also reported that c-*erb*B-2 amplification is an important prognostic indicator only in patients with lymph node metastasis.[78,81]

A large number of subsequent studies also attempted to correlate c-*erb*B-2 activation with prognosis (Table 5). In 12 series, there was a correlation between c-*erb*B-2 activation and tumor recurrence or decreased survival. In five of these series, the predictive value of c-*erb*B-2 activation was reported to be independent of other prognostic factors. In contrast, 18 series did not confirm the correlation of c-*erb*B-2 activation with recurrence or survival. Four possible explanations for this controversy are discussed below.

One problem is that c-*erb*B-2 amplification correlates with prognosis mainly in patients with lymph node metastasis. As summarized in Table 5, most studies of patients with axillary lymph node metastasis showed a correlation of c-*erb*B-2 activation with poor outcome. In contrast, most studies of patients without axillary metastasis have not demonstrated a correlation with patient outcome. Table 6 summarizes the studies in which all patients (with and without axillary metastasis) were considered as one group. There is a trend for studies with a higher percentage of metastatic cases to show an association between c-*erb*B-2 activation and poor outcome. Thus, most of the current evidence suggests that c-*erb*B-2 activation has prognostic value only in patients with metastasis to lymph nodes.

TABLE 3. CORRELATION OF *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION WITH PATHOLOGIC PROGNOSTIC FACTORS IN BREAST CARCINOMA

Prognostic Factor	P[a]	c-*erbB*-2 DNA Amplification[b]	c-*erbB*-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-*erbB*-2 Protein Overproduction[c]
Metastasis to axillary lymph nodes	<0.05	(118)[35] (105)[34] (49)[21]	(104)[35] (92)[34] (9)[31]	(350)[35a] (36)[13]
	0.05–0.15	(103)[79] (86)[78] (58)[111]	—	(189)[92]
	>0.15	(279)[17] (176)[87] (157)[113] (122)[4] (85)[90] (50)[52] (50)[44] (47)[15] (41)[93]	(50)[50]	(329)[17a] (261)[88] (195)[11] (185)[101] (102)[39] (50)[52b]
Larger size	<0.05	(280)[17]	—	(330)[17a] (189)[92]
	0.05–0.15	(86)[78]	—	—
	>0.15	(176)[87] (157)[113] (103)[79] (64)[77] (58)[111] (45)[21]	(51)[50]	(350)[35a] (185)[101] (34)[92]
Higher stage	<0.05	(300)[17] (64)[77] (58)[111]	—	(349)[17a]
	0.05–0.15	(56)[52]	—	—
	>0.15	(176)[87] (157)[113] (84)[90] (61)[50] (53)[21] (52)[87] (41)[93]	—	(102)[39] (56)[52b]
Higher histological grade	<0.05	(47)[13] (15)[31]	(53)[65]	(176)[101] (168)[11] (38)[13]
	0.05–0.15	—	—	—
	>0.15	(122)[4] (113)[34] (95)[90] (58)[111] (50)[44] (41)[93]	(86)[33] (65)[35]	(290)[88] (189)[92] (102)[39]

[a]A correlation is statistically significant at <0.05, equivocal at best between 0.05 and 0.15, and not statistically significant at >0.15.
[b]Numbers inside parentheses are the number of patients in an individual study; superscript is the reference. Some studies analyzed more than one group of patients.
[c]By Western blot method; all other protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

TABLE 4. CORRELATION OF c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION WITH CLINICAL PROGNOSTIC FACTORS IN BREAST CARCINOMA

Prognostic Factor	P[a]	c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification[b]	c-*erb*B-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-*erb*B-2 Protein Overproduction[c]
Absence of estrogen receptors	<0.05	(253)[109] (141)[35] (109)[34] (86)[79] (50)[44] (47)[13]	(104)[35]	(350)[85c] (330)[17a] (185)[101]
	0.05–0.15	—	—	—
	>0.15	(157)[113] (122)[4] (103)[79] (95)[90] (64)[77] (61)[50] (58)[111] (53)[21] (51)[52] (41)[93]	(180)[69] (62)[85] (62)[85] (57)[50]	(290)[88] (172)[11] (51)[62c] (38)[73]
Absence of progesterone receptors	<0.05	(253)[109] (141)[35] (109)[34] (50)[44]	—	(350)[85c] (306)[17a]
	0.05–0.15	(86)[79] (49)[52]	—	—
	>0.15	(157)[113] (122)[4] (103)[79] (64)[77]	(180)[69] (103)[35] (62)[85] (56)[35]	(90)[11] (49)[52a]
Age (menopausal status)	<0.05	—	—	(younger: 330)[17c] (older: 56)[52a]
	0.05–0.15	(younger: 86)[79]	—	—
	>0.15	(230)[17] (176)[87] (157)[113] (122)[4] (116)[34] (103)[79] (95)[90] (64)[77] (58)[111] (56)[52] (53)[21] (49)[13] (41)[93] (15)[21]	(62)[85]	(350)[85a] (290)[88] (189)[92] (162)[11] (45)[92]

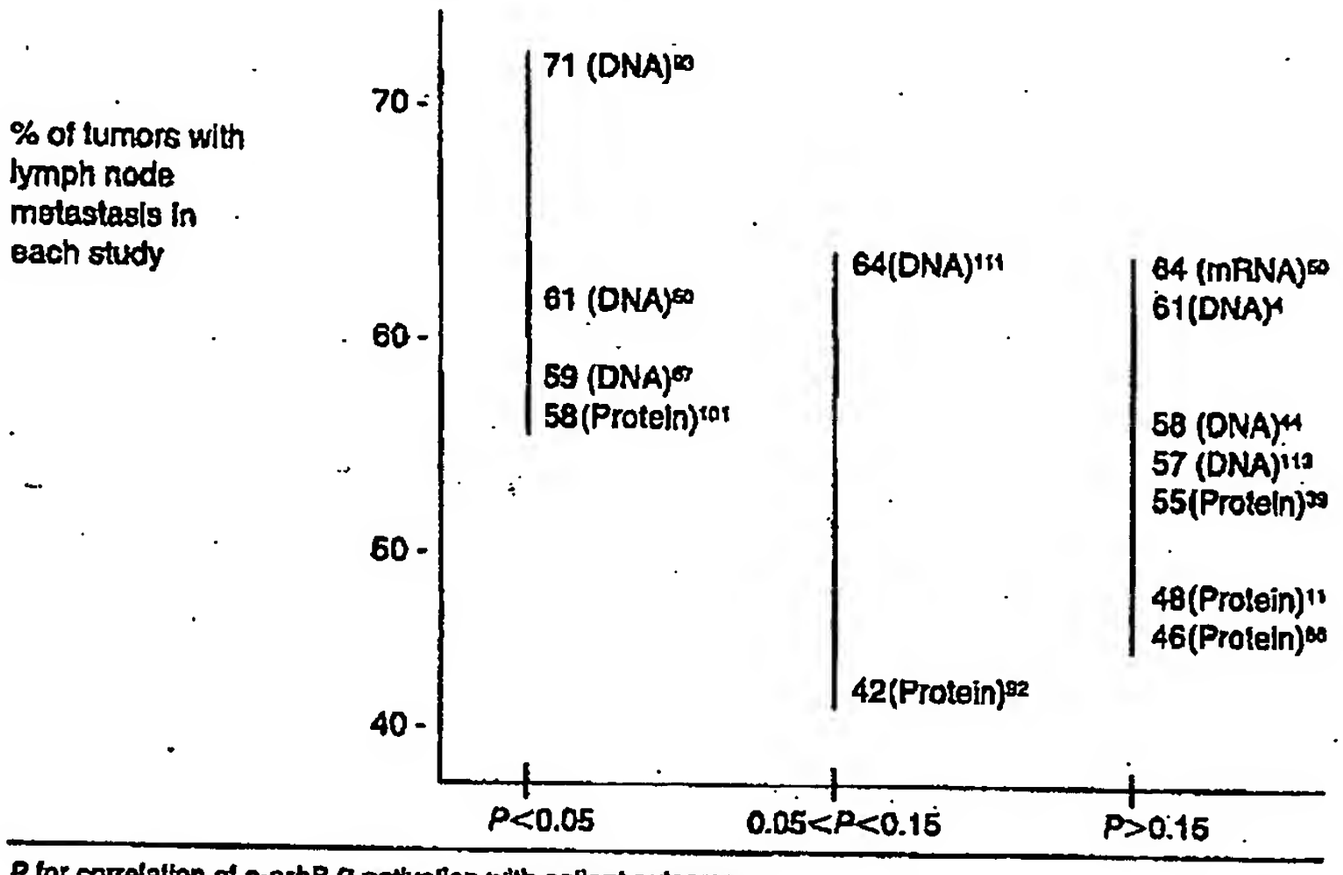
[a]A correlation is statistically significant at <0.05, equivocal at best between 0.05 and 0.15, and not statistically significant at >0.15
[b]Numbers inside parentheses are the number of patients in an individual study; superscript is the reference. Some studies analyzed more than one group of patients.
[c]By Western blot method; all other protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

TABLE 5. CORRELATION OF *c-erbB-2* ACTIVATION WITH OUTCOME IN PATIENTS WITH BREAST CARCINOMA

		Number of Patients				
P[a]	Type of *c-erbB-2* Activation[b]	Total	*With Metastasis to Axillary Lymph Nodes*	*No Metastasis*	Statistical Analysis[c]	Reference
<0.05	DNA	176			M	87
<0.05	DNA	61			U	60
<0.05	DNA	57			U	65
<0.05	DNA	41			U	93
<0.05	mRNA	62			U	65
<0.05	Protein	102			M	101
<0.05	DNA		345		M	81
<0.05	DNA		120		U	17
<0.05	DNA		91		U	87
<0.05	DNA		86		M	79
<0.05	Protein-WB		350		M	85
<0.05	Protein		62	44	U	101
0.05–0.15	DNA	57			U	111
0.05–0.15	Protein	189			M	92
0.05–0.15	Protein		120		U	86
>0.15	DNA	130			U	113
>0.15	DNA	122			M	4
>0.15	DNA	50			U	44
>0.15	mRNA	57			U	50
>0.15	Protein	290			M	86
>0.15	Protein	195			U	11
>0.15	Protein	102			U	39
>0.15	Protein		137		U	17
>0.15	DNA			181	M	81
>0.15	DNA			159	U	17
>0.15	DNA			73	U	87
>0.15	Protein-WB			378	U	85
>0.15	Protein-WB			192	U	17
>0.15	Protein			141	U	86
>0.15	Protein			41	U	40

[a]The endpoints of these studies were tumor recurrence or decreased survival or both. Correlation between *c-erbB-2* activation and a poorer patient outcome is statistically significant at <0.05, is of equivocal significance at 0.05 to 0.15, and is not significant at >0.15.
[b]Shown as variable measured. Letters "WB" indicate assay by Western blot; the other protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.
[c]M = multivariate statistical analysis; U = univariate statistical analysis.

TABLE 6. PERCENTAGE OF BREAST CARCINOMAS WITH METASTASIS COMPARED WITH PROGNOSTIC SIGNIFICANCE OF c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION



P for correlation of c-*erb*B-2 activation with patient outcome.
Each study's percentage of breast carcinomas with metastasis is compared with the correlation between c-*erb*B-2 activation and outcome. These data include only those studies that considered, as one group, all breast cancer patients, whether or not they had axillary metastasis. Superscripts are the references. In parentheses are the types of c-*erb*B-2 activation. *P* values are interpreted as in Table 3.

A second problem is that various types of breast carcinoma are grouped together in many survival studies. Because the current literature suggests that c-*erb*B-2 activation is infrequent in lobular carcinoma, studies that combine infiltrating ductal and lobular carcinomas may dilute the prognostic effect of c-*erb*B-2 activation in ductal tumors. In addition, most studies do not analyze inflammatory breast carcinoma separately. This condition frequently shows c-*erb*B-2 activation and has a worse prognosis than the usual mammary carcinoma, but it is an uncommon lesion.

A third potential problem is the paucity of studies that attempt to correlate c-*erb*B-2 activation with clinical outcome in subsets of breast carcinoma without metastasis. Two recent abstracts reported that in patients without lymph node metastasis who had various risk factors for recurrence (such as large tumor size and absence of estrogen receptors), c-*erb*B-2 overexpression predicted early recurrence.[23,67] In patients with ductal carcinoma in situ, one small study found no association between tumor recurrence and c-*erb*B-2 activation.[40]

A fourth problem is the lack of data regarding whether the prognosis correlates better with c-*erb*B-2 DNA amplification or with mRNA or protein overproduction. Most studies that find a correlation between c-*erb*B-2 activa-

tion and poor patient outcome measure c-*erb*B-2 DNA amplification (Table 5), and breast carcinoma patients with greater amplification of c-*erb*B-2 may have poorer survival.[78,81] Recent studies suggest that amplification has more prognostic power than overproduction,[17,34,35] but the clinical significance of c-*erb*B-2 overproduction without DNA amplification deserves further research.[17,52] Few studies have attempted to correlate patient outcome with c-*erb*B-2 mRNA overproduction, and many studies of c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction use relatively less reliable methods such as immunohistochemical studies with polyclonal antibodies.

Comparison of c-*erb*B-2 Activation With Other Oncogenes in Breast Carcinoma

Other oncogenes that may have prognostic implications in human breast cancer are reviewed elsewhere.[71,106] This section will be restricted to a comparison between the clinical relevance of c-*erb*B-2 and these other oncogenes.

The c-*myc* gene is often activated in breast carcinomas, but c-*myc* activation generally has less prognostic importance than c-*erb*B-2 activation.[31,34,77,87,93] One study found a correlation between increased mRNAs of c-*erb*B-2 and c-*myc*, although other reports have not confirmed this.[34,106] Subsequent research, however, could demonstrate a subset of breast carcinomas in which c-*myc* has more prognostic importance than c-*erb*B-2.

The gene c-*erb*B-1 for the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) is homologous with c-*erb*B-2 but is infrequently amplified in breast carcinomas.[79] Overproduction of EGFR, however, occurs more frequently than amplification and may correlate with a poor prognosis. In studies that have examined both c-*erb*B-2 and EGFR in the same tumor, c-*erb*B-2 has a stronger correlation with poor prognostic factors.[35,52] Studies have tended to show no correlation between amplification of c-*erb*B-2 and c-*erb*B-1 or overproduction of c-*erb*B-2 and EGFR, although at the molecular level EGFR mediates phosphorylation of c-*erb*B-2 protein.[51,52,61,88,100] Recent reviews describe EGFR in breast carcinoma.[43,100]

The genes c-*erb*A and *ear*-1 are homologous to the thyroid hormone receptor, and they are located adjacent to c-*erb*B-2 on chromosome 17. These genes are frequently coamplified with c-*erb*B-2 in breast carcinomas. The absence of c-*erb*A expression in breast carcinomas, however, is evidence against an important role for this gene in breast neoplasia.[90] Amplification of c-*erb*B-2 can occur without *ear*-1 amplification, and these tumors have a decreased survival that is similar to tumors with both c-*erb*B-2 and *ear*-1 amplification.[87] Consequently, c-*erb*B-2 amplification seems to be more important than amplification of c-*erb*A or *ear*-1.

Other genes also have been compared with c-*erb*B-2 activation in breast carcinomas. One study found a significant correlation between increased c-*erb*B-2 mRNA and increased mRNAs of *fos*, platelet-derived growth factor chain A, and Ki-*ras*.[106] Allelic deletion of c-Ha-*ras* may indicate a poorer prognosis in breast carcinoma,[21] but it has not been compared with c-*erb*B-2 activation. Some studies have suggested a correlation between advanced stage or recurrence of breast carcinoma and activation of any one of several oncogenes.[21,113]

ACTIVATION OF c-*erb*B-2 IN NON-MAMMARY TISSUES

Incidence of c-*erb*B-2 Activation in Non-Mammary Tissues

Table 7 summarizes the normal tissues in which c-*erb*B-2 expression has been detected, usually with immunohistochemical methods using polyclonal anti-

TABLE 7. PRESENCE OR ABSENCE OF c-*erb*B-2 mRNA OR c-*erb*B-2 PROTEIN IN NORMAL HUMAN TISSUES

Tissues With c-*erb*B-2 mRNA	Tissues Producing c-*erb*B-2 Protein[a]	Tissues Lacking c-*erb*B-2 mRNA	Tissues Lacking c-*erb*B-2 Protein
Skin[24]	Epidermis[56]		
	External root sheath[55]		
	Eccrine sweat gland[56]		
	Fetal oral mucosa[62]		Postnatal oral mucosa[62]
	Fetal esophagus[62]		Postnatal esophagus[62]
Stomach[24]	Stomach[22,62]		
	Fetal intestine[62a]		
Jejunum[24]	Small intestine[22,62]		
Colon[24]	Colon[22,62]		
Kidney[24]	Fetal kidney[62a]	Kidneys[104]	Glomerulus[62]
			Postnatal Bowman's capsule[62]
	Fetal proximal tubule[62]		Postnatal proximal tubule[62]
	Distal tubule[62]		
	Fetal collecting duct[62]		Postnatal collecting duct[62]
	Fetal renal pelvis[62]		Postnatal renal pelvis[62]
	Fetal ureter[62]		Postnatal fetal ureter[62]
Liver[24]	Hepatocytes[22]		Liver[62,95]
	Pancreatic acini[22]		
	Pancreatic ducts[22,62]		
	Endocrine cells of islets of Langerhans[22]		Pancreatic islets[62]
Lung[24]	Fetal trachea[62]		Postnatal trachea[62]
	Fetal bronchioles[62]		Postnatal bronchioles[62]
	Bronchioles[99]		
			Postnatal alveoli[62,99]
Fetal brain[24]			Postnatal brain[62]
	Fetal ganglion cells[62]		Postnatal ganglion cells[62]
Thyroid[1]			
Uterus[24]			
	Ovary[12]		
	Blood vessels[42]		Endothelium[62]
Placenta[24]			
			Adrenocortical cells[62]
			Postnatal thymus[62]
			Fibroblasts[62]
			Smooth muscle cells[62]
			Cardiac muscle cells[62]

[a]This protein study used Western blots; the rest used immunohistochemical methods.

bodies. Only a few studies have been performed, and some of these do not demonstrate convincing cell membrane reactivity in the published photographs. The interpretations in these studies, however, are listed, with the caveat that these findings should be confirmed by immunoprecipitation or Western or RNA blots. Production of c-*erb*B-2 has been identified in normal epithelium of the gastrointestinal tract and skin. Discrepancies regarding c-*erb*B-2 protein in other tissues could be due, at least in part, to differences in techniques.

The data on c-*erb*B-2 activation in various non-mammary neoplasms should be interpreted with caution, because only small numbers of tumors have been studied, usually by immunohistochemical methods using polyclonal antibodies. Studies using cell lines have been excluded, because cell culture can induce amplification and overexpression of other genes, although this has not been documented for c-*erb*B-2.

Activation of c-*erb*B-2 has been identified in 32 percent (64 of 203) of ovarian carcinomas in eight studies (Table 8). One abstract[45] stated that ovarian carcinomas contained significantly more c-*erb*B-2 protein than ovarian non-epithelial malignancies. Another report[81] showed that 12 percent of ovarian carcinomas had c-*erb*B-2 overproduction without amplification.

Activation of c-*erb*B-2 has been identified in 20 percent (40 of 198) of gastric adenocarcinomas in seven studies, including 33 percent (21 of 64) of

TABLE 8. c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION IN HUMAN GYNECOLOGIC TUMORS[a]

Tumor Type	c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification	c-*erb*B-2 mRNA Over-production	c-*erb*B-2 Protein Over-production
Ovary—carcinoma, not otherwise specified	31/120,[81] 1/11,[57] 0/5,[107] 0/6,[84] 0/3,[112] 0/2,[72] 0/1[110]	23/67[81]	23/73,[12] 36/72[81]
Ovary—serous (papillary) carcinoma	2/7,[110] 1/7,[112] 0/6[72]	—	—
Ovary—endometrioid carcinoma	0/3[110]	—	—
Ovary—mucinous carcinoma	1/2,[110] 0/1[72]	—	—
Ovary—clear cell carcinoma	0/2,[112] 0/1[72]	—	—
Ovary—mixed epithelial carcinoma	0/2[72]	—	—
Ovary—endometrioid borderline tumor	0/1[72]	—	—
Ovary—mucinous borderline tumor	0/3[72]	—	—
Ovary—serous cystadenoma	0/4[72]	—	—
Ovary—mucinous cystadenoma	0/2[72]	—	—
Ovary—sclerosing stromal tumor	0/1[72]	—	—
Ovary—fibrothecoma	0/1[72]	—	—
Uterus—endometrial adenocarcinoma	0/4,[84] 0/1[110]	—	—

[a]Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

intestinal or tubular subtypes and 9 percent (4 of 47) of diffuse or signet ring cell subtypes (Table 9). Activation of c-*erb*B-2 has been detected in 2 percent (6 of 281) of colorectal carcinomas, although an additional immunohistochemical study detected c-*erb*B-2 protein in seven of eight tissues fixed in Bouin's solution. One study found greater immunohistochemical reactivity for c-*erb*B-2 protein in colonic adenomatous polyps than in the adjacent normal epithelium, using Bouin's fixative. Lesions with anaplastic features and progression to invasive carcinoma tended to show decreased immunohistochemical reactivity for c-*erb*B-2 protein.[22] Hepatocellular carcinomas (12 of 14 cases) and cholangiocarcinomas (46 of 63 cases) reacted with antibodies against c-*erb*B-2 in one study, but some of these "positive" cases showed only diffuse cytoplasmic staining, which

TABLE 9. c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION IN HUMAN GASTROINTESTINAL TUMORS[a]

Tumor Type	c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification	c-*erb*B-2 Protein Over-production
Esophagus—squamous cell carcinoma	0/1[107]	0/1[51]
Stomach—carcinoma, poorly differentiated	0/22[108]	—
Stomach—adenocarcinoma	2/24,[84] 2/9,[107] 2/8,[111] 2/8,[57] 0/1[106]	4/27,[29] 3/10[51]
Stomach—carcinoma, intestinal or tubular type	5/10[108]	16/54[29]
Stomach—carcinoma, diffuse or signet ring cell type	0/2[108]	4/45[29]
Colorectum—carcinoma	2/49,[84] 1/45,[111] 1/45,[57] 1/45,[60] 0/40,[61] 0/32,[107] 0/3[62]	1/22,[58] 7/8[22b]
Colon—villous adenoma	0/1[59]	—
Colon—tubulovillous adenoma	0/5[59]	—
Colon—tubular adenoma	0/7[59]	19/19[22b]
Colon—hyperplastic polyp	0/1[60]	—
Intestine—leiomyosarcoma	—	0/1[51]
Hepatocellular carcinoma	0/12[111]	12/14,[95] 0/2[51]
Hepatoblastoma	0/1[57]	—
Cholangiocarcinoma	—	46/63[95]
Pancreas—adenocarcinoma	—	2/80,[41c] 0/2[51]
Pancreas—acinar carcinoma	—	0/1[41]
Pancreas—clear cell carcinoma	—	0/2[41]
Pancreas—large cell carcinoma	—	0/3[41]
Pancreas—signet ring carcinoma	—	0/1[41]
Pancreas—chronic inflammation	—	0/14[41c]

[a]Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods. No studies analyzed for c-*erb*B-2 mRNA.
[b]Tissues fixed in Bouin's solution.
[c]Only cases with distinct membrane staining are interpreted as showing c-*erb*B-2 overproduction.

TABLE 10. c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION IN HUMAN PULMONARY TUMORS[a]

Tumor Type	c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification	c-*erb*B-2 Protein Overproduction
Non-small cell carcinoma	2/60,[75] 0/60[81]	1/84[59]
Epidermoid carcinoma	0/13,[82] 0/10,[57] 0/6[20]	3/5[99]
Adenocarcinoma	0/21,[82] 1/13,[20] 0/7,[111] 0/7,[57] 0/3[107]	4/12[99]
Large cell carcinoma	0/9,[82] 0/6[20]	—
Small cell carcinoma	—	0/26,[58] 0/3[99]
Carcinoid tumor	0/1[82]	0/3[99]

[a]Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods. No studies analyzed for c-*erb*B-2 mRNA.

does not indicate c-*erb*B-2 activation in breast neoplasms.[85] Also, some pancreatic carcinomas and chronic pancreatitis tissue had cytoplasmic immunohistochemical reactivity for c-*erb*B-2 protein, in addition to the rare case of pancreatic adenocarcinoma with distinct cell membrane staining.[41]

Tables 10 through 14 summarize the studies of c-*erb*B-2 activation in other neoplasms. The c-*erb*B-2 oncogene is not activated in most of these tumors. Activation of c-*erb*B-2 has been detected in 1 percent (4 of 299) of pulmonary non-small cell carcinomas in nine studies, although one additional report[99] found c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction in 41 percent (7 of 17). Renal cell carcinoma had c-*erb*B-2 activation in 7 percent (2 of 30) in four studies. Overproduction of c-*erb*B-2 protein was described in one transitional cell carcinoma of the urinary bladder, a grade 2 papillary lesion.[58] Squamous cell carcinoma and basal cell carcinoma of the skin may contain c-*erb*B-2 protein, but it is not clear

TABLE 11. c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION IN HUMAN HEMATOLOGIC PROLIFERATIONS[a]

Tumor Type	c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification	c-*erb*B-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-*erb*B-2 Protein Overproduction
Hematologic malignancies	0/23[111]	—	—
Malignant lymphoma	0/9,[57] 0/3[107]	0/1[1]	0/15[61]
Acute leukemia	0/14[57]	—	—
Acute lymphoblastic leukemia	0/1[107]	—	—
Acute myeloblastic leukemia	0/3[107]	—	—
Chronic leukemia	0/19[57]	—	—
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia	0/6[107]	—	—
Chronic myelogenous leukemia	0/8[107]	—	—
Myeloproliferative disorder	0/1[57]	—	—

[a]Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

TABLE 12. c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION IN HUMAN TUMORS OF SOFT TISSUE AND BONE[a]

Tumor Type	c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification
Sarcoma	0/10,[111] 0/8[67]
Malignant fibrous histiocytoma	0/1[107]
Liposarcoma	0/3[107]
Pleomorphic sarcoma	0/1[107]
Rhabdomyosarcoma	0/1[107]
Osteogenic sarcoma	0/2,[107] 0/25[7]
Chondrosarcoma	0/1[107]
Ewing's sarcoma	0/1[57]
Schwannoma	0/1[57]

[a]Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. No studies analyzed for c-*erb*B-2 mRNA or c-*erb*B-2 protein.

whether the protein level is increased over that of normal skin.[56] Thyroid carcinomas and adenomas can have low levels of increased c-*erb*B-2 mRNA. One abstract described low-level c-*erb*B-2 DNA amplification in one of ten salivary gland pleomorphic adenomas.[48]

Correlation of c-*erb*B-2 Activation With Patient Outcome

Very few studies have attempted to correlate c-*erb*B-2 activation in non-mammary tumors with outcome. Slamon et al[81] showed that c-*erb*B-2 amplification or overexpression in ovarian carcinomas correlates with decreased survival, especially when marked activation is present. However, they did not report the stage, histological grade, or histological subtype of these neoplasms. Another study of stages III and IV ovarian carcinomas found a correlation between decreased survival and c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction, but not between survival and histological grade.[18] One abstract stated that c-*erb*B-2 protein overproduction in 10 of 16 pulmonary adenocarcinomas correlated with decreased disease-free interval.[70] Another abstract described a tendency for immunohisto-

TABLE 13. c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION IN HUMAN TUMORS OF THE URINARY TRACT[a]

Tumor Type	c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification	c-*erb*B-2 mRNA Over-production	c-*erb*B-2 Protein Over-production
Kidney—renal cell carcinoma	1/5,[57] 1/4,[107] 0/5[84]	0/16[104]	—
Wilms' tumor	0/4[57]	—	—
Prostate—adenocarcinoma	—	—	0/23[58]
Urinary bladder—carcinoma	—	—	1/48[58]

[a]Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

TABLE 14. c-*erb*B-2 ACTIVATION IN MISCELLANEOUS HUMAN TUMORS[a]

Tumor Type	c-*erb*B-2 DNA Amplification	c-*erb*B-2 mRNA Overproduction	c-*erb*B-2 Protein Over-production
Skin—malignant melanoma	—	—	0/10[58]
Skin, head and neck—squamous cell carcinoma	0/7[107]	—	—
Site not stated—squamous cell carcinoma	0/8,[57] 0/2[76]	—	—
Salivary gland—adenocarcinoma	1/1[76]	—	—
Parotid gland—adenoid cystic carcinoma	—	—	0/1[61]
Thyroid—anaplastic carcinoma	0/1[1]	0/1[1]	—
Thyroid—papillary carcinoma	0/5[1]	3(low levels)/5[1]	—
Thyroid—adenocarcinoma	0/1[84]	—	—
Thyroid—adenoma	0/2[1]	1(low levels)/2[1]	—
Neuroblastoma	0/35,[61] 0/8,[57] 0/1[76]	—	—
Meningioma	0/2[57]	—	—

[a]Shown as number of cases with amplification (or overproduction)/total number of cases studied; reference is given as superscript. All protein studies used immunohistochemical methods.

chemical reactivity for c-*erb*B-2 protein to correlate with higher grades of prostatic adenocarcinoma.[97] Additional prognostic studies of ovarian carcinomas and other neoplasms are needed.

SUMMARY

Activation of the c-*erb*B-2 oncogene can occur by amplification of c-*erb*B-2 DNA and by overproduction of c-*erb*B-2 mRNA and c-*erb*B-2 protein. Approximately 20 percent of breast carcinomas show evidence of c-*erb*B-2 activation, which correlates with a poor prognosis primarily in patients with metastasis to axillary lymph nodes. Studies that have attempted to correlate c-*erb*B-2 activation with other prognostic factors in breast carcinoma have reported conflicting conclusions. The pathologic and clinical significance of c-*erb*B-2 activation in other neoplasms is unclear and should be assessed by additional studies.

REFERENCES

1. Aasland R, Lillehaug JR, Male R, et al. Expression of oncogenes in thyroid tumors: Coexpression of c-*erb*B2/*neu* and c-*erb*B. *Br J Cancer.* 57:358, 1988
2. Akiyama T, Sudo C, Ogawara H, et al. The product of the human c-*erb*B-2 gene: A 185-kilodalton glycoprotein with tyrosine kinase activity. *Science.* 232:1644, 1986

3. Ali IU, Lidereau R, Theillet C, Callahan R. Reduction to homozygosity of genes on chromosome 11 in human breast neoplasia. *Science.* 238:185, 1987
4. Ali IU, Campbell G, Lidereau R, Callahan R. Amplification of c-*erb*B-2 and aggressive human breast tumors. *Science.* 240:1795, 1988
5. Ali IU, Campbell C, Lidereau R, Callahan R. Lack of evidence for the prognostic significance of c-*erb*B-2 amplification in human breast carcinoma. *Oncogene Res.* 3:139, 1988
6. Bacus SS, Bacus JW, Slamon DJ, Press MF. HER-2/*neu* oncogene expression and DNA ploidy analysis in breast cancer. *Arch Pathol Lab Med.* 114:164, 1990
7. Bacus SS, Ruby SG, Weinberg DS, et al. HER-2/*neu* oncogene expression and proliferation in breast cancers. *Am J Pathol.* 137:103, 1990
8. Bargmann CI, Hung MC, Weinberg RA. The *neu* oncogene encodes an epidermal growth factor receptor-related protein. *Nature.* 319:226, 1986
9. Bargmann CI, Hung MC, Weinberg RA. Multiple independent activations of the *neu* oncogene by a point mutation altering the transmembrane domain of p185. *Cell.* 45:649, 1986
10. Bargmann CI, Weinberg RA. Oncogenic activation of the *neu*-encoded receptor protein by point mutation and deletion. *EMBO J.* 7:2043, 1988
11. Barnes DM, Lammie GA, Millis RR, et al. An immunohistochemical evaluation of c-*erb*B-2 expression in human breast carcinoma. *Br J Cancer.* 58:448, 1988
12. Berchuck A, Kamel A, Whitaker R, et al. Overexpression of *HER-2/neu* is associated with poor survival in advanced epithelial ovarian cancer. *Cancer Res.* 50:4087, 1990
13. Berger MS, Locher GW, Saurer S, et al. Correlation of c-*erb*B-2 gene amplification and protein expression in human breast carcinoma with nodal status and nuclear grading. *Cancer Res.* 48:1238, 1988
14. Bernards R, Destree A, McKenzie S, et al. Effective tumor immunotherapy directed against an oncogene-encoded product using a vaccinia virus vector. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 84:6854, 1987
15. Biunno I, Pozzi MR, Pierotti MA, et al. Structure and expression of oncogenes in surgical specimens of human breast carcinomas. *Br J Cancer.* 57:464, 1988
16. Borg Å, Linell F, Idvall I, et al. *Her2/neu* amplification and comedo type breast carcinoma. *Lancet.* 1:1268, 1989
17. Borg Å, Tandon AK, Sigurdsson H, et al. *HER-2/neu* amplification predicts poor survival in node-positive breast cancer. *Cancer Res.* 50:4332, 1990
18. Bouchard L, Lamarre L, Tremblay PJ, Jolicoeur P. Stochastic appearance of mammary tumors in transgenic mice carrying the MMTV/c-*neu* oncogene. *Cell.* 57:931, 1989
19. Carney WP, Retos C, Petit D, et al. Quantitation of the *neu* oncogene protein using a monoclonal antibody based immunoassay (abstract). *Mod Pathol.* 3:15A, 1990
20. Cline MJ, Battifora H. Abnormalities of protooncogenes in non-small cell lung cancer: Correlations with tumor type and clinical characteristics. *Cancer.* 60:2669, 1987
21. Cline MJ, Battifora H, Yokota J. Proto-oncogene abnormalities in human breast cancer: Correlations with anatomic features and clinical course of disease. *J Clin Oncol.* 5:999, 1987
22. Cohen JA, Weiner DB, More KF, et al. Expression pattern of the *neu* (NGL) gene-encoded growth factor receptor protein ($p185^{neu}$) in normal and transformed epithelial tissues of the digestive tract. *Oncogene.* 4:81, 1989
23. Colnaghi MI, Miotti S, Andreola S, et al. New prognostic factors in breast cancer (abstract). *Am Assoc Cancer Res Ann Meeting.* 30:230A, 1989

24. Coussens L, Yang-Feng TL, Liao YC, et al. Tyrosine kinase receptor with extensive homology to EGF receptor shares chromosomal location with *neu* oncogene. *Science.* 230:1132, 1985
25. Di Fiore PP, Pierce JH, Kraus MH, et al. *erbB*-2 is a potent oncogene when overexpressed in NIH/3T3 cells. *Science.* 237:178, 1987
26. Drebin JA, Link VC, Weinberg RA, Greene MI. Inhibition of tumor growth by a monoclonal antibody reactive with an oncogene-encoded tumor antigen. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 83:9129, 1986
27. Drebin JA, Link VC, Greene MI. Monoclonal antibodies reactive with distinct domains of the *neu* oncogene-encoded p185 molecule exert synergistic anti-tumor effects in vivo. *Oncogene.* 2:273, 1988
28. Drebin JA, Link VC, Greene MI. Monoclonal antibodies specific for the *neu* oncogene product directly mediate anti-tumor effects in vivo. *Oncogene.* 2:387, 1988
29. Falck VG, Gullick WJ. c-*erbB*-2 oncogene product staining in gastric adenocarcinoma. An immunohistochemical study. *J Pathol.* 159:107, 1989
30. Fendly BM, Winget M, Hudziak RM, et al. Characterization of murine monoclonal antibodies reactive to either the human epidermal growth factor receptor or *HER2/neu* gene product. *Cancer Res.* 50:1550, 1990
31. Fontaine J, Tesseraux M, Klein V, et al. Gene amplification and expression of the *neu* (c-*erbB*-2) sequence in human mammary carcinoma. *Oncology.* 45:360, 1988
32. Frye RA, Benz CC, Liu E. Detection of amplified oncogenes by differential polymerase chain reaction. *Oncogene.* 4:1153, 1989
33. Fukushige SI, Matsubara KI, Yoshida M, et al. Localization of a novel v-*erbB*-related gene, c-*erbB*-2, on human chromosome 17 and its amplification in a gastric cancer cell line. *Mol Cell Biol.* 6:955, 1986
34. Guerin M, Barrois M, Terrier MJ, et al. Overexpression of either c-*myc* or c-*erbB*-2/*neu* proto-oncogenes in human breast carcinomas: Correlation with poor prognosis. *Oncogene Res.* 3:21, 1988
35. Guerin M, Gabillot M, Mathieu MC, et al. Structure and expression of c-*erbB*-2 and EGF receptor genes in inflammatory and non-inflammatory breast cancer: Prognostic significance. *Int J Cancer.* 43:201, 1989
36. Gullick WJ, Berger MS, Bennett PLP, et al. Expression of the c-*erbB*-2 protein in normal and transformed cells. *Int J Cancer.* 40:246, 1987
37. Gullick WJ, Venter DJ. The c-*erbB*2 gene and its expression in human cancers. In: Waxman J, Sikora K, eds. *The Molecular Biology of Cancer.* Boston, Blackwell Sci Publ; 1989: 38–53
38. Gullick WJ. Expression of the c-*erbB*-2 proto-oncogene protein in human breast cancer. *Recent Results Cancer Res.* 113:51, 1989
39. Gusterson BA, Machin LG, Gullick WJ, et al. c-*erbB*-2 expression in benign and malignant breast disease. *Br J Cancer.* 58:453, 1988
40. Gusterson BA, Machin LG, Gullick WJ, et al. Immunohistochemical distribution of c-*erbB*-2 in infiltrating and in situ breast cancer. *Int J Cancer.* 42:842, 1988
41. Hall PA, Hughes CM, Staddon SL, et al. The c-*erbB*-2 proto-oncogene in human pancreatic cancer. *J Pathol.* 161:195, 1990
42. Hanna W, Kahn HJ, Andrulis I, Pawson T. Distribution and patterns of staining of *neu* oncogene product in benign and malignant breast diseases. *Mod Pathol.* 3:455, 1990
43. Harris AL, Nicholson S. Epidermal growth factor receptors in human breast cancer.

In: Lippman ME, Dickson RB, eds. *Breast Cancer: Cellular and Molecular Biology.* Boston, Kluwer Academic Publ; 1988: 93–118
44. Heintz NH, Leslie KO, Rogers LA, Howard PL. Amplification of the c-*erb*B-2 oncogene and prognosis of breast adenocarcinoma. *Arch Pathol Lab Med.* 114:160, 1990
45. Huettner P, Carney W, Delellis R, et al. Quantification of the *neu* oncogene product in ovarian neoplasms (abstract). *Mod Pathol.* 3:46A, 1990
46. Hung MC, Yan DH, Zhao X. Amplification of the proto-*neu* oncogene facilitates oncogenic activation by a single point mutation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 86:2545, 1989
47. Hynes NE, Gerber HA, Saurer S, Groner B. Overexpression of the c-*erb*B-2 protein in human breast tumor cell lines. *J Cell Biochem.* 39:167, 1989
48. Kahn HJ, Hanna W, Auger M, Andreulis I. Expression and amplification of *neu* oncogene in pleomorphic adenoma of salivary glands (abstract). *Mod Pathol.* 3:50A, 1990
49. King CR, Kraus MH, Aaronson SA. Amplification of a novel v-*erb*B-related gene in a human mammary carcinoma. *Science.* 229:974, 1985
50. King CR, Swain SM, Porter L, et al. Heterogeneous expression of *erb*B-2 messenger RNA in human breast cancer. *Cancer Res.* 49:4185, 1989
51. Kokai Y, Dobashi K, Weiner DB, et al. Phosphorylation process induced by epidermal growth factor receptor alters the oncogenic and cellular *neu* (*NGL*) gene products. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 85:5389, 1988
52. Lacroix H, Iglehart JD, Skinner MA, Kraus MH. Overexpression of *erb*B-2 or EGF receptor proteins present in early stage mammary carcinoma is detected simultaneously in matched primary tumors and regional metastases. *Oncogene.* 4:145, 1989
53. Lemoine NR, Staddon S, Dickson C, et al. Absence of activating transmembrane mutations in the c-*erb*B-2 proto-oncogene in human breast cancer. *Oncogene.* 5:237, 1990
54. Lodato RF, Maguire HC, Greene MJ, et al. Immunohistochemical evaluation of c-*erb*B-2 oncogene expression in ductal carcinoma in situ and atypical ductal hyperplasia of the breast. *Mod Pathol.* 3:449, 1990
55. Maguire HC, Greene MI. The *neu* (c-*erb*B-2) oncogene. *Semin Oncol.* 16:148, 1989
56. Maguire HC, Jaworsky C, Cohen JA, et al. Distribution of *neu* (c-*erb*B-2) protein in human skin. *J Invest Dermatol.* 89:786, 1989
57. Masuda H, Battifora H, Yokota J, et al. Specificity of proto-oncogene amplification in human malignant diseases. *Mol Biol Med.* 4:213, 1987
58. McCann A, Dervan PA, Johnston PA, et al. c-*erb*B-2 oncoprotein expression in primary human tumors. *Cancer.* 65:88, 1990
59. McKenzie SJ, Marks PJ, Lam T, et al. Generation and characterization of monoclonal antibodies specific for the human *neu* oncogene product, p185. *Oncogene.* 4:543, 1989
60. Meltzer SJ, Ahnen DJ, Battifora H, et al. Protooncogene abnormalities in colon cancers and adenomatous polyps. *Gastroenterology.* 92:1174, 1987
61. Mori S, Akiyama T, Morishita Y, et al. Light and electron microscopical demonstration of c-*erb*B-2 gene product-like immunoreactivity in human malignant tumors. *Virchows Arch* [*B*]. 54:8, 1987
62. Mori S, Akiyama T, Yamada Y, et al. C-*erb*B-2 gene product, a membrane protein commonly expressed in human fetal epithelial cells. *Lab Invest.* 61:93, 1989
63. Muller WJ, Sinn E, Pattengale PK, et al. Single-step induction of mammary

adenocarcinoma in transgenic mice bearing the activated c-*neu* oncogene. *Cell.* 54:105, 1988

64. Ong G, Gullick W, Sikora K. Oncoprotein stability after tumor resection. *Br J Cancer.* 61:538, 1990
65. Parks HC, Lillycrop K, Howell A, Craig RK. C-*erb*B2 mRNA expression in human breast tumors: Comparison with c-*erb*B2 DNA amplification and correlation with prognosis. *Br J Cancer.* 61:39, 1990
66. Popescu NC, King CR, Kraus MH. Localization of the *erb*B-2 gene on normal and rearranged chromosomes 17 to bands q12–21.32. *Genomics.* 4:362, 1989
67. Press MF, Pike MC, Paterson MC, et al. Overexpression of *HER-2/neu*. proto-oncogene in node negative breast cancer: Correlation with increased risk of early recurrent disease (abstract). *Mod Pathol.* 3:80A, 1990
68. Ramachandra S, Machin L, Ashley S, et al. Immunohistochemical distribution of c-*erb*B-2 in in situ breast carcinoma: A detailed morphological analysis. *J Pathol.* 161:7, 1990
69. Rio MC, Bellocq JP, Gairard B, et al. Specific expression of the pS2 gene in subclasses of breast cancers in comparison with expression of the estrogen and progesterone receptors and the oncogene *ERBB2*. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 84:9243, 1987
70. Robinson R, Kern J, Weiner D, et al. p185^{neu} expression in human lung non-small cell carcinomas: An immunohistochemical study with clinicopathologic correlation (abstract). *Mod Pathol.* 3:85A, 1990
71. Rochlitz CF, Benz CC. Oncogenes in human solid tumors. In: Benz C, Liu E, eds. *Oncogenes.* Boston, Kluwer Academic Publ; 1989: 199–240
72. Sasano H, Garret CT, Wilkinson DS, et al. Protooncogene amplification and tumor ploidy in human ovarian neoplasms. *Hum Pathol.* 21:382, 1990
73. Schechter AL, Stern DF, Vaidyanathan L, et al. The *neu* oncogene: An *erb*-B-related gene encoding a 185,000-*M*$_r$ tumor antigen. *Nature.* 312:513, 1984
74. Schechter AL, Hung MC, Vaidyanathan L, et al. The *neu* gene: An *erb*B-homologous gene distinct from and unlinked to the gene encoding the EGF receptor. *Science.* 229:976, 1985
75. Schneider PM, Hung MC, Chiocca SM, et al. Differential expression of the c-*erb*B-2 gene in human small cell and non-small cell lung cancer. *Cancer Res.* 49:4968, 1989
76. Semba K, Kamata N, Toyoshima K, Yamamoto T. A v-*erb*B-related protooncogene, c-*erb*B-2, is distinct from the c-*erb*B-1/epidermal growth factor-receptor gene and is amplified in a human salivary gland adenocarcinoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 82:6497, 1985
77. Seshadri R, Matthews C, Dobrovic A, Horsfall DJ. The significance of oncogene amplification in primary breast cancer. *Int J Cancer.* 43:270, 1989
78. Shih C, Padhy LC, Murray M, Weinberg RA. Transforming genes of carcinomas and neuroblastomas introduced into mouse fibroblasts. *Nature.* 290:261, 1981
79. Slamon DJ, Clark GM, Wong SG, et al. Human breast cancer: Correlation of relapse and survival with amplification of the *HER-2/neu* oncogene. *Science.* 235:177, 1987
80. Slamon DJ, Clark GM. Amplification of c-*erb*B-2 and aggressive human breast tumors. *Science.* 240:1795, 1988
81. Slamon DJ, Godolphin W, Jones LA, et al. Studies of the *HER-2/neu* proto-oncogene in human breast and ovarian cancer. *Science.* 244:707, 1989

82. Slebos RJC, Evers SG, Wagenaar SS, Rodenhuis S. Cellular protooncogenes are infrequently amplified in untreated non-small cell lung cancer. *Br J Cancer.* 59:76, 1989
83. Stern DF, Kamps MP, Cao H. Oncogenic activation of p185^{neu} stimulates tyrosine phosphorylation in vivo. *Mol Cell Biol.* 8:3969, 1988
84. Tal M, Wetzler M, Josefberg Z, et al. Sporadic amplification of the *HER2/neu* protooncogene in adenocarcinomas of various tissues. *Cancer Res.* 48:1517, 1988
85. Tandon AK, Clark GM, Chamness GC, et al. *HER-2/neu* oncogene protein and prognosis in breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol.* 7:1120, 1989
86. Thor AD, Schwartz LH, Koerner FC, et al. Analysis of c-*erb*B-2 expression in breast carcinomas with clinical follow-up. *Cancer Res.* 49:7147, 1989
87. Tsuda H, Hirohashi S, Shimosato Y, et al. Correlation between long-term survival in breast cancer patients and amplification of two putative oncogene-coamplification units: *hst-1/int-2* and c-*erb*B-2*/ear-1*. *Cancer Res.* 49:3104, 1989
88. Tsutsumi Y, Naber SP, DeLellis RA, et al. *Neu* oncogene protein and epidermal growth factor receptor are independently expressed in benign and malignant breast tissues. *Hum Pathol.* 21:750, 1990
89. Tsutsumi Y, Stork PJ, Wolfe HJ. Detection of DNA amplification and mRNA overexpression of the *neu* oncogene in breast carcinomas by polymerase chain reaction (abstract). *Mod Pathol.* 3:101A, 1990
90. Van de Vijver M, van de Bersselaar R, Devilee P, et al. Amplification of the *neu* (c-*erb*B-2) oncogene in human mammary tumors is relatively frequent and is often accompanied by amplification of the linked c-*erb*A oncogene. *Mol Cell Biol.* 7:2019, 1987
91. Van de Vijver MJ, Mooi WJ, Wisman P, et al. Immunohistochemical detection of the *neu* protein in tissue sections of human breast tumors with amplified *neu* DNA. *Oncogene.* 2:175, 1988
92. Van de Vijver MJ, Peterse JL, Mooi WJ, et al. *Neu*-protein overexpression in breast cancer: Association with comedo-type ductal carcinoma in situ and limited prognostic value in stage II breast cancer. *N Engl J Med.* 319:1239, 1988
93. Varley JM, Swallow JE, Brammar WJ, et al. Alterations to either c-*erb*B-2 (*neu*) or c-*myc* proto-oncogenes in breast carcinomas correlate with poor short-term prognosis. *Oncogene.* 1:423, 1987
94. Venter DJ, Tuzi NL, Kumar S, Gullick WJ. Overexpression of the c-*erb*B-2 oncoprotein in human breast carcinomas: Immunohistological assessment correlates with gene amplification. *Lancet.* 2:69, 1987
95. Voravud N, Foster CS, Gilbertson JA, et al. Oncogene expression in cholangiocarcinoma and in normal hepatic development. *Hum Pathol.* 20:1163, 1989
96. Walker RA, Senior PV, Jones JL, et al. An immunohistochemical and in situ hybridization study of *c-myc* and *c-erb*B-2 expression in primary human breast carcinomas. *J Pathol.* 158:97, 1989
97. Ware JL, Maygarden SJ, Koontz WW, Strom SC. Differential reactivity with anti-c-*erb*B-2 antiserum among human malignant and benign prostatic tissue (abstract). *Am Assoc Cancer Res Ann Meeting.* 30:437A, 1989
98. Weiner DB, Liu J, Cohen JA, et al. A point mutation in the *neu* oncogene mimics ligand induction of receptor aggregation. *Nature.* 339:230, 1989
99. Weiner DB, Nordberg J, Robinson R, et al. Expression of the *neu* gene-encoded protein (p185^{neu}) in human non-small cell carcinomas of the lung. *Cancer Res.* 50:421, 1990

100. Wells A. The epidermal growth factor receptor and its ligand. In: Benz C, Liu E, eds. *Oncogenes*. Boston, Kluwer Academic Pub; 1989: 143–168
101. Wright C, Angus B, Nicholson S, et al. Expression of c-*erb*B-2 oncoprotein: A prognostic indicator in human breast cancer. *Cancer Res.* 49:2087, 1989
102. Wu A, Colombero A, Low J, et al. Analysis of expression and mutation of the *erb*B-2 gene in breast carcinoma by the polymerase chain reaction (abstract). *Mod Pathol.* 3:108A, 1990
103. Yamamoto T, Ikawa S, Akiyama T, et al. Similarity of protein encoded by the human c-*erb*B-2 gene to epidermal growth factor receptor. *Nature.* 319:230, 1986
104. Yao M, Shuin T, Misaki H, Kubota Y. Enhanced expression of c-*myc* and epidermal growth factor receptor (C-*erb*B-1) genes in primary human renal cancer. *Cancer Res.* 48:6753, 1988
105. Yarden Y, Weinberg RA. Experimental approaches to hypothetical hormones: Detection of a candidate ligand of the *neu* protooncogene. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 86:3179, 1989
106. Yee LD, Kacinski BM, Carter D. Oncogene structure, function and expression in breast cancer. *Semin Diagn Pathol.* 6:110, 1989
107. Yokota J, Yamamoto T, Toyoshima K, et al. Amplification of c-*erb*B-2 oncogene in human adenocarcinomas in vivo. *Lancet.* 1:765, 1986
108. Yokota J, Yamamoto T, Miyajima N, et al. Genetic alterations of the c-*erb*B-2 oncogene occur frequently in tubular adenocarcinoma of the stomach and are often accompanied by amplification of the v-*erb*A homologue. *Oncogene.* 2:283, 1988
109. Zeillinger R, Kury F, Czerwenka K, et al. *HER-2* amplification, steroid receptors and epidermal growth factor receptor in primary breast cancer. *Oncogene.* 4:109, 1989
110. Zhang X, Silva E, Gershenson D, Hung MC. Amplification and rearrangement of c-*erb*B proto-oncogenes in cancer of human female genital tract. *Oncogene.* 4:985, 1989
111. Zhou D, Battifora H, Yokota J, et al. Association of multiple copies of the c-*erb*B-2 oncogene with spread of breast cancer. *Cancer Res.* 47:6123, 1987
112. Zhou D, Gonzalez-Cadavid N, Ahuja H, et al. A unique pattern of proto-oncogene abnormalities in ovarian adenocarcinomas. *Cancer.* 62:1573, 1988
113. Zhou D, Ahuja H, Cline MJ. Proto-oncogene abnormalities in human breast cancer: c-*erb*B-2 amplification does not correlate with recurrence of disease. *Oncogene.* 4:105, 1989

EXHIBIT 8

GNE2930R1C3

PATENT

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant	:	Botstein, et al.
Appl. No.	:	10/032,996
Filed	:	December 27, 2001
For	:	SECRETED AND TRANSMEMBRANE POLYPEPTIDES AND NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING THE SAME
Examiner	:	Fredman, J.
Group Art Unit	:	1634

DECLARATION OF PAUL POLAKIS, PH.D. UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.132

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

Attached is the Declaration of Paul Polakis, Ph.D.

Respectfully submitted,

KNOBBE, MARTENS, OLSON & BEAR, LLP

Dated: June 14, 2004

By: AnneMarie Kaiser

AnneMarie Kaiser
Registration No. 37,649
Attorney of Record
Customer No. 30,313
(619) 235-8550

S:\DOCS\BSG\BSG-1215.DOC
061404

DECLARATION OF PAUL POLAKIS, Ph.D.

I, Paul Polakis, Ph.D., declare and say as follows:

1. I was awarded a Ph.D. by the Department of Biochemistry of the Michigan State University in 1984. My scientific Curriculum Vitae is attached to and forms part of this Declaration (Exhibit A).

2. I am currently employed by Genentech, Inc. where my job title is Staff Scientist. Since joining Genentech in 1999, one of my primary responsibilities has been leading Genentech's Tumor Antigen Project, which is a large research project with a primary focus on identifying tumor cell markers that find use as targets for both the diagnosis and treatment of cancer in humans.

3. As part of the Tumor Antigen Project, my laboratory has been analyzing differential expression of various genes in tumor cells relative to normal cells. The purpose of this research is to identify proteins that are abundantly expressed on certain tumor cells and that are either (i) not expressed, or (ii) expressed at lower levels, on corresponding normal cells. We call such differentially expressed proteins "tumor antigen proteins". When such a tumor antigen protein is identified, one can produce an antibody that recognizes and binds to that protein. Such an antibody finds use in the diagnosis of human cancer and may ultimately serve as an effective therapeutic in the treatment of human cancer.

4. In the course of the research conducted by Genentech's Tumor Antigen Project, we have employed a variety of scientific techniques for detecting and studying differential gene expression in human tumor cells relative to normal cells, at genomic DNA, mRNA and protein levels. An important example of one such technique is the well known and widely used technique of microarray analysis which has proven to be extremely useful for the identification of mRNA molecules that are differentially expressed in one tissue or cell type relative to another. In the course of our research using microarray analysis, we have identified approximately 200 gene transcripts that are present in human tumor cells at significantly higher levels than in corresponding normal human cells. To date, we have generated antibodies that bind to about 30 of the tumor antigen proteins expressed from these differentially expressed gene transcripts and have used these antibodies to quantitatively determine the level of production of these tumor antigen proteins in both human cancer cells and corresponding normal cells. We have then compared the levels of mRNA and protein in both the tumor and normal cells analyzed.

5. From the mRNA and protein expression analyses described in paragraph 4 above, we have observed that there is a strong correlation between changes in the level of mRNA present in any particular cell type and the level of protein

expressed from that mRNA in that cell type. In approximately 80% of our observations we have found that increases in the level of a particular mRNA correlates with changes in the level of protein expressed from that mRNA when human tumor cells are compared with their corresponding normal cells.

6. Based upon my own experience accumulated in more than 20 years of research, including the data discussed in paragraphs 4 and 5 above and my knowledge of the relevant scientific literature, it is my considered scientific opinion that for human genes, an increased level of mRNA in a tumor cell relative to a normal cell typically correlates to a similar increase in abundance of the encoded protein in the tumor cell relative to the normal cell. In fact, it remains a central dogma in molecular biology that increased mRNA levels are predictive of corresponding increased levels of the encoded protein. While there have been published reports of genes for which such a correlation does not exist, it is my opinion that such reports are exceptions to the commonly understood general rule that increased mRNA levels are predictive of corresponding increased levels of the encoded protein.

7. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information or belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Dated: 5/07/04

By: Paul Polakis

Paul Polakis, Ph.D.

SV 2031808 v1

EXHIBIT A

CURRICULUM VITAE

PAUL G. POLAKIS
Staff Scientist
Genentech, Inc
1 DNA Way, MS#40
S. San Francisco, CA 94080

EDUCATION:

Ph.D., Biochemistry, Department of Biochemistry,
Michigan State University (1984)

B.S., Biology. College of Natural Science, Michigan State University (1977)

PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE:

2002-present	Staff Scientist, Genentech, Inc S. San Francisco, CA
1999- 2002	Senior Scientist, Genentech, Inc., S. San Francisco, CA
1997 -1999	Research Director Onyx Pharmaceuticals, Richmond, CA
1992- 1996	Senior Scientist, Project Leader, Onyx Pharmaceuticals, Richmond, CA
1991-1992	Senior Scientist, Chiron Corporation, Emeryville, CA.
1989-1991	Scientist, Cetus Corporation, Emeryville CA.
1987-1989	Postdoctoral Research Associate, Genentech, Inc., South SanFrancisco, CA.
1985-1987	Postdoctoral Research Associate, Department of Medicine, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC

1984-1985	Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, Oberlin College, Oberlin, Ohio
1980-1984	Graduate Research Assistant, Department of Biochemistry, Michigan State University East Lansing, Michigan

PUBLICATIONS:

1. Polakis, P G. and Wilson, J. E. 1982 Purification of a Highly Bindable Rat Brain Hexokinase by High Performance Liquid Chromatography. **Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.** 107, 937-943.

2. Polakis, P.G. and Wilson, J. E. 1984 Proteolytic Dissection of Rat Brain Hexokinase: Determination of the Cleavage Pattern during Limited Digestion with Trypsin. **Arch. Biochem. Biophys**. 234, 341-352.

3. Polakis, P. G. and Wilson, J. E. 1985 An Intact Hydrophobic N-Terminal Sequence is Required for the Binding Rat Brain Hexokinase to Mitochondria. **Arch. Biochem. Biophys**. 236, 328-337.

4. Uhing, R.J., **Polakis,P.G.** and Snyderman, R. 1987 Isolaton of GTP-binding Proteins from Myeloid HL60 Cells. **J. Biol. Chem.** 262, 15575-15579.

5. Polakis, P.G., Uhing, R.J. and Snyderman, R. 1988 The Formylpeptide Chemoattractant Receptor Copurifies with a GTP-binding Protein Containing a Distinct 40 kDa Pertussis Toxin Substrate. **J. Biol. Chem**: 263, 4969-4979.

6. Uhing, R. J., Dillon, S., **Polakis, P. G.**, Truett, A. P. and Snyderman, R. 1988 Chemoattractant Receptors and Signal Transduction Processes in Cellular and Molecular Aspects of Inflammation (Poste, G. and Crooke, S. T. eds.) pp 335-379.

7. Polakis, P.G., Evans, T. and Snyderman 1989 Multiple Chromatographic Forms of the Formylpeptide Chemoattractant Receptor and their Relationship to GTP-binding Proteins. **Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun**. 161, 276-283.

8. Polakis, P. G., Snyderman, R. and Evans, T. 1989 Characterization of G25K, a GTP-binding Protein Containing a Novel Putative Nucleotide Binding Domain. **Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comun.** 160, 25-32.

9. Polakis, P., Weber,R.F., Nevins,B., Didsbury, J. Evans,T. and Snyderman, R. 1989 Identification of the ral and rac1 Gene Products, Low Molecular Mass GTP-binding Proteins from Human Platelets. **J. Biol. Chem.** 264, 16383-16389.

10. Snyderman, R., Perianin, A., Evans, T., **Polakis, P.** and Didsbury, J. 1989 G Proteins and Neutrophil Function. In ADP-Ribosylating Toxins and G Proteins: Insights into Signal Transduction. (J. Moss and M. Vaughn, eds.) Amer. Soc. Microbiol. pp. 295-323.

11. Hart, M.J., **Polakis, P.G.**, Evans, T. and Cerrione, R.A. 1990 The Identification and Charaterization of an Epidermal Growth Factor-Stimulated Phosphorylation of a Specific Low Molecular Mass GTP-binding Protein in a Reconstituted Phospholipid Vesicle System. **J. Biol. Chem.** 265, 5990-6001.

12. Yatani, A., Okabe, K., **Polakis, P.** Halenbeck, R. McCormick, F. and Brown, A. M. 1990 ras p21 and GAP Inhibit Coupling of Muscarinic Receptors to Atrial K^+ Channels. **Cell**. 61, 769-776.

13. Munemitsu, S., Innis, M.A., Clark, R., McCormick, F., Ullrich, A. and **Polakis, P.G.** 1990 Molecular Cloning and Expression of a G25K cDNA, the Human Homolog of the Yeast Cell Cycle Gene CDC42. **Mol. Cell. Biol.** 10, 5977-5982.

14. Polakis, P.G. Rubinfeld, B. Evans, T. and McCormick, F. 1991 Purification of Plasma Membrane-Associated GTPase Activating Protein (GAP) Specific for rap-1/krev-1 from HL60 Cells. **Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA** 88, 239-243.

15. Moran, M. F., **Polakis, P.**, McCormick, F., Pawson, T. and Ellis, C. 1991 Protein Tyrosine Kinases Regulate the Phosphorylation, Protein Interactions, Subcellular Distribution, and Activity of p21ras GTPase Activating Protein. **Mol. Cell. Biol.** 11, 1804-1812

16. Rubinfeld, B., Wong, G., Bekesi, E. Wood, A. McCormick, F. and **Polakis, P. G.** 1991 A Synthetic Peptide Corresponding to a Sequence in the GTPase Activating Protein Inhibits $p21^{ras}$ Stimulation and Promotes Guanine Nucleotide Exchange. **Internatl. J. Peptide and Prot. Res.** 38, 47-53.

17. Rubinfeld, B., Munemitsu, S., Clark, R., Conroy, L., Watt, K., Crosier, W., McCormick, F., and **Polakis, P.** 1991 Molecular Cloning of a GTPase Activating Protein Specific for the Krev-1 Protein $p21^{rap1}$. **Cell** 65, 1033-1042.

18. Zhang, K. Papageorge, A., G., Martin, P., Vass, W. C., Olah, Z., **Polakis, P.**, McCormick, F. and Lowy, D, R. 1991 Heterogenous Amino Acids in RAS and Rap1A Specifying Sensitivity to GAP Proteins. **Science** 254, 1630-1634.

19. Martin, G., Yatani, A., Clark, R., **Polakis, P.**, Brown, A. M. and McCormick, F. 1992 GAP Domains Responsible for $p21^{ras}$-dependent Inhibition of Muscarinic Atrial K^+ Channel Currents. **Science** 255, 192-194.

20. McCormick, F., Martin, G. A., Clark, R., Bollag, G. and **Polakis, P** . 1992 Regulation of p21ras by GTPase Activating Proteins. Cold Spring Harbor **Symposia on Quantitative Biology**. Vol. 56, 237-241.

21. Pronk, G. B., **Polakis, P.**, Wong, G., deVries-Smits, A. M., Bos J. L. and McCormick, F. 1992 $p60^{v\text{-}src}$ Can Associate with and Phosphorylate the $p21^{ras}$ GTPase Activating Protein. **Oncogene** 7,389-394.

22. Polakis P. and McCormick, F. 1992 Interactions Between $p21^{ras}$ Proteins and Their GTPase Activating Proteins. In **Cancer Surveys** (Franks, L. M., ed.) 12, 25-42.

23. Wong, G., Muller, O., Clark, R., Conroy, L., Moran, M., **Polakis,P.** and McCormick, F. 1992 Molecular coloning and nucleic acid binding properties of the GAP-associated tyrosine phosphoprotein p62. **Cell** 69, 551-558.

24. Polakis, P., Rubinfeld, B. and McCormick, F. 1992 Phosphorylation of rap1GAP in vivo and by cAMP-dependent Kinase and the Cell Cycle $p34^{cdc2}$ Kinase in vitro. **J. Biol. Chem.** 267, 10780-10785.

25. McCabe, P.C., Haubrauck, H., **Polakis, P.**, McCormick, F., and Innis, M. A. 1992 Functional Interactions Between $p21^{rap1A}$ and Components of the Budding pathway of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. **Mol. Cell. Biol.** 12, 4084-4092.

26. Rubinfeld, B., Crosier, W.J., Albert, I., Conroy,L., Clark, R., McCormick, F. and **Polakis, P.** 1992 Localization of the rap1GAP Catalytic Domain and Sites of Phosphorylation by Mutational Analysis. **Mol. Cell . Biol.** 12, 4634-4642.

27. Ando, S., Kaibuchi, K., Sasaki, K., Hiraoka, T., Nishiyama, T., Mizuno, T., Asada, M., Nunoi, H., Matsuda, I., Matsuura, Y., **Polakis, P.**, McCormick, F. and Takai, Y. 1992 Post-translational processing of rac p21s is important both for their interaction with the GDP/GTP exchange proteins and for their activation of NADPH oxidase. **J. Biol. Chem.** 267, 25709-25713.

28. Janoueix-Lerosey, I., **Polakis, P.**, Tavitian, A. and deGunzberg, J. 1992 Regulation of the GTPase activity of the ras-related rap2 protein. **Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.** 189, 455-464.

29. Polakis, P. 1993 GAPs Specific for the rap1/Krev-1 Protein. in GTP-binding Proteins: the *ras*-superfamily. (J.C. LaCale and F. McCormick, eds.) 445-452.

30. Polakis, P. and McCormick, F. 1993 Structural requirements for the interaction of $p21^{ras}$ with GAP, exchange factors, and its bological effector target. **J. Biol Chem.** 268, 9157-9160.

31. Rubinfeld, B., Souza, B. Albert, I., Muller, O., Chamberlain, S., Masiarz, F., Munemitsu, S. and **Polakis, P.** 1993 Association of the APC gene product with beta- catenin. **Science** 262, 1731-1734.

32. Weiss, J., Rubinfeld, B., **Polakis, P.**, McCormick, F. Cavenee, W. A. and Arden, K. 1993 The gene for human rap1-GTPase activating protein (rap1GAP) maps to chromosome 1p35-1p36.1. **Cytogenet. Cell Genet.** 66, 18-21.

33. Sato, K. Y., **Polakis, P.**, Haubruck, H., Fasching, C. L., McCormick, F. and Stanbridge, E. J. 1994 Analysis of the tumor suppressor acitvity of the K-rev gene in human tumor cell lines. **Cancer Res.** 54, 552-559.

34. Janoueix-Lerosey, I., Fontenay, M., Tobelem, G., Tavitian, A., **Polakis, P.** and DeGunzburg, J. 1994 Phosphorylation of rap1GAP during the cell cycle. **Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.** 202, 967-975

35. Munemitsu, S., Souza, B., Mueller, O., Albert, I., Rubinfeld, B., and **Polakis, P.** 1994 The APC gene product associates with microtubules in vivo and affects their assembly in vitro. **Cancer Res.** 54, 3676-3681.

36. Rubinfeld, B. and **Polakis, P.** 1995 Purification of baculovirus produced rap1GAP. **Methods Enz.** 255,31

37. Polakis, P. 1995 Mutations in the APC gene and their implications for protein structure and function. **Current Opinions in Genetics and Development** 5, 66-71

38. Rubinfeld, B., Souza, B., Albert, I., Munemitsu, S. and **Polakis P.** 1995 The APC protein and E-cadherin form similar but independent complexes with α-catenin, β-catenin and Plakoglobin. **J. Biol. Chem.** 270, 5549-5555

39. Munemitsu, S., Albert, I., Souza, B., Rubinfeld, B., and **Polakis, P.** 1995 Regulation of intracellular β-catenin levels by the APC tumor suppressor gene. **Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.** 92, 3046-3050.

40. Lock, P., Fumagalli, S., **Polakis, P.** McCormick, F. and Courtneidge, S. A. 1996 The human p62 cDNA encodes Sam68 and not the rasGAP-associated p62 protein. **Cell** 84, 23-24.

41. Papkoff, J., Rubinfeld, B., Schryver, B. and **Polakis, P.** 1996 Wnt-1 regulates free pools of catenins and stabilizes APC-catenin complexes. **Mol. Cell. Biol.** 16, 2128-2134.

42. Rubinfeld, B., Albert, I., Porfiri, E., Fiol, C., Munemitsu, S. and **Polakis, P.** 1996 Binding of GSK3β to the APC-β-catenin complex and regulation of complex assembly. **Science** 272, 1023-1026.

43. Munemitsu, S., Albert, I., Rubinfeld, B. and **Polakis, P.** 1996 Deletion of amino-terminal structure stabilizes β-catenin in vivo and promotes the hyperphosphorylation of the APC tumor suppressor protein. **Mol. Cell. Biol.**16, 4088-4094.

44. Hart, M. J., Callow, M. G., Sousa, B. and **Polakis P.** 1996 IQGAP1, a calmodulin binding protein witha rasGAP related domain, is a potential effector for cdc42Hs. **EMBO J.** 15, 2997-3005.

45. Nathke, I. S., Adams, C. L., **Polakis, P.**, Sellin, J. and Nelson, W. J. 1996 The adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) tumor suppressor protein is localized to plasma membrane sites involved in active epithelial cell migration. **J. Cell. Biol.** 134, 165-180.

46. Hart, M. J., Sharma, S., elMasry, N., Qui, R-G., McCabe, P., **Polakis, P.** and Bollag, G. 1996 Identification of a novel guanine nucleotide exchange factor for the rho GTPase. **J. Biol. Chem.** 271, 25452.

47. Thomas JE, Smith M, Rubinfeld B, Gutowski M, Beckmann RP, and **Polakis P.** 1996 Subcellular localization and analysis of apparent 180-kDa and 220-kDa proteins of the breast cancer susceptibility gene, BRCA1. **J. Biol. Chem.** 1996 271, 28630-28635

48. Hayashi, S., Rubinfeld, B., Souza, B., **Polakis, P.**, Wieschaus, E., and Levine, A. 1997 A Drosophila homolog of the tumor suppressor adenomatous polyposis coli

down-regulates β -catenin but its zygotic expression is not essential for the regulation of armadillo. **Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.** 94, 242-247.

49. Vleminckx, K., Rubinfeld, B., **Polakis, P.** and Gumbiner, B. 1997 The APC tumor suppressor protein induces a new axis in Xenopus embryos. **J. Cell. Biol.** 136, 411-420.

50. Rubinfeld, B., Robbins, P., El-Gamil, M., Albert, I., Porfiri, P. and **Polakis, P.** 1997 Stabilization of β-catenin by genetic defects in melanoma cell lines. **Science** 275, 1790-1792.

51. Polakis, P. The adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) tumor suppressor. 1997 **Biochem. Biophys. Acta**, 1332, F127-F147.

52. Rubinfeld, B., Albert, I., Porfiri, E., Munemitsu, S., and **Polakis, P** 1997 Loss of β-catenin regulation by the APC tumor suppressor protein correlates with loss of structure due to common somatic mutations of the gene. **Cancer Res.** 57, 4624-4630.

53. Porfiri, E., Rubinfeld, B., Albert, I., Hovanes. K., Waterman, M., and **Polakis, P.** 1997 Induction of a β-catenin-LEF-1 complex by wnt-1 and transforming mutants of β-catenin. **Oncogene** 15, 2833-2839.

54. Thomas JE, Smith M, Tonkinson JL, Rubinfeld B, and **Polakis P.**, 1997 Induction of phosphorylation on BRCA1 during the cell cycle and after DNA damage. **Cell Growth Differ.** 8, 801-809.

55. Hart, M., de los Santos, R., Albert, I., Rubinfeld, B., and **Polakis P.**, 1998 Down regulation of β-catenin by human Axin and its association with the adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) tumor suppressor, β-catenin and glycogen synthase kinase 3β. **Current Biology 8,** 573-581.

56. Polakis, P. 1998 The oncogenic activation of β-catenin. **Current Opinions in Genetics and Development** 9, 15-21

57. Matt Hart, Jean-Paul Concordet, Irina Lassot, Iris Albert, Rico del los Santos, Herve Durand, Christine Perret, Bonnee Rubinfled, Florence Margottin, Richard Benarous and **Paul Polakis**. 1999 The F-box protein β–TrCP associates with phosphorylated β–catenin and regulates its activity in the cell. **Current Biology** 9, 207-10.

58. Howard C. Crawford, Barbara M. Fingleton, Bonnee Rubinfeld, **Paul Polakis** and Lynn M. Matrisian 1999 The metalloproteinase matrilysin is a target of β–catenin transactivation in intestinal tumours. **Oncogene** 18, 2883-91.

59. Meng J, Glick JL, **Polakis P**, Casey PJ. 1999 Functional interaction between Galpha(z) and Rap1GAP suggests a novel form of cellular cross-talk. **J Biol Chem.** 17, 36663-9

60. Vijayasurian Easwaran, Virginia Song, **Paul Polakis** and Steve Byers 1999 The ubiquitin-proteosome pathway and serine kinase activity modulate APC mediated regulation of β-catenin-LEF signaling. **J. Biol. Chem.** 274(23):16641-5.

61 Polakis P, Hart M and Rubinfeld B. 1999 Defects in the regulation of beta-catenin
in colorectal cancer. **Adv Exp Med Biol.** 470, 23-32

62 Shen Z, Batzer A, Koehler JA, **Polakis P,** Schlessinger J, Lydon NB, Moran MF. 1999 Evidence for SH3 domain directed binding and phosphorylation of Sam68 by Src. **Oncogene.** 18, 4647-53

64. Thomas GM, Frame S, Goedert M, Nathke I, **Polakis P**, Cohen P. 1999 A GSK3- binding peptide from FRAT1 selectively inhibits the GSK3-catalysed phosphorylation of axin and beta-catenin. **FEBS Lett.** 458, 247-51.

65. Peifer M, **Polakis P.** 2000 Wnt signaling in oncogenesis and embryogenesis--a look outside the nucleus. **Science** 287,1606-9,

66. **Polakis P.** 2000 Wnt signaling and cancer. **Genes Dev;**14, 1837-1851.

67. Spink KE, **Polakis P**, Weis WI 2000 Structural basis of the Axin-adenomatous polyposis coli interaction. **EMBO J** 19, 2270-2279.

68. Szeto , W., Jiang, W., Tice, D.A., Rubinfeld, B., Hollingshead, P.G., Fong, S.E., Dugger, D.L., Pham, T., Yansura, D.E., Wong, T.A., Grimaldi, J.C., Corpuz, R.T., Singh J.S., Frantz, G.D., Devaux, B., Crowley, C.W., Schwall, R.H., Eberhard, D.A.,
Rastelli, L., **Polakis, P.** and Pennica, D. 2001 Overexpression of the Retinoic Acid-
Responsive Gene Stra6 in Human Cancers and its Synergistic Induction by Wnt-1 and
Retinoic Acid. **Cancer Res** 61, 4197-4204.

69. Rubinfeld B, Tice DA, **Polakis P.** 2001 Axin dependent phosphorylation of the adenomatous polyposis coli protein mediated by casein kinase 1 epsilon. **J Biol Chem**
276, 39037-39045.

70. **Polakis P.** 2001 More than one way to skin a catenin. **Cell** 2001 105, 563-566.

71. Tice DA, Soloviev I, **Polakis P.** 2002 Activation of the Wnt Pathway Interferes withSerum Response Element-driven Transcription of Immediate Early Genes. **J Biol.**
Chem. 277, 6118-6123.

72. Tice DA, Szeto W, Soloviev I, Rubinfeld B, Fong SE, Dugger DL, Winer J,

Williams PM, Wieand D, Smith V, Schwall RH, Pennnica D, **Polakis P.** 2002 Synergistic activation of tumor antigens by wnt-1 signaling and retinoic acid revealed by gene expression profiling. **J Biol Chem.** 277,14329-14335.

73. **Polakis, P.** 2002 Casein kinase I: A wnt'er of disconnect. **Curr. Biol.** 12, R499.

74. Mao,W. , Luis, E., Ross, S., Silva, J., Tan, C., Crowley, C., Chui, C., Franz, G., Senter, P., Koeppen, H., **Polakis, P.** 2004 EphB2 as a therapeutic antibody drug target for the treatment of colorectal cancer. **Cancer Res.** 64, 781-788.

75. Shibamoto, S., Winer, J., Williams, M., Polakis, P. 2003 A Blockade in Wnt signaling is activated following the differentiation of F9 teratocarcinoma cells. **Exp. Cell Res.** 29211-20.

76. Zhang Y, Eberhard DA, Frantz GD, Dowd P, Wu TD, Zhou Y, Watanabe C, Luoh SM, **Polakis P,** Hillan KJ, Wood WI, Zhang Z. 2004 GEPIS--quantitative gene expression profiling in normal and cancer tissues. **Bioinformatics,** April 8

EXHIBIT 9

MOLECULAR BIOLOGY OF
THE CELL
THIRD EDITION

Text Editor: Miranda Robertson
Managing Editor: Ruth Adams
Illustrator: Nigel Orme
Molecular Model Drawings: Kate Hesketh-Moore
Director of Electronic Publishing: John M-Roblin
Computer Specialist: Chuck Bartelt
Disk Preparation: Carol Winter
Copy Editor: Shirley M. Cobert
Production Editor: Douglas Goertzen
Production Coordinator: Perry Bessas
Indexer: Maija Hinkle

Bruce Alberts received his Ph.D. from Harvard University and is currently President of the National Academy of Sciences and Professor of Biochemistry and Biophysics at the University of California, San Francisco. *Dennis Bray* received his Ph.D. from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and is currently a Medical Research Council Fellow in the Department of Zoology, University of Cambridge. *Julian Lewis* received his D.Phil. from the University of Oxford and is currently a Senior Scientist in the Imperial Cancer Research Fund Developmental Biology Unit, University of Oxford. *Martin Raff* received his M.D. from McGill University and is currently a Professor in the MRC Laboratory for Molecular Cell Biology and the Biology Department, University College London. *Keith Roberts* received his Ph.D. from the University of Cambridge and is currently Head of the Department of Cell Biology, the John Innes Institute, Norwich. *James D. Watson* received his Ph.D. from Indiana University and is currently Director of the Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory. He is the author of *Molecular Biology of the Gene* and, with Francis Crick and Maurice Wilkins, won the Nobel Prize in Medicine and Physiology in 1962.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Molecular biology of the cell / Bruce Alberts . . . [et al.].—3rd ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 0-8153-1619-4 (hard cover).—ISBN 0-8153-1620-8 (pbk.)
1. Cytology. 2. Molecular biology. I. Alberts, Bruce.
[DNLM: 1. Cells. 2. Molecular Biology. QH 581.2 M718 1994]
QH581.2.M64 1994
574.87—dc20
DNLM/DLC
for Library of Congress 93-45907
CIP

Published by Garland Publishing, Inc.
717 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10022

Printed in the United States of America

15 14 13 12 10 9 8 7

Front cover: The photograph shows a rat nerve cell in culture. It is labeled (*yellow*) with a fluorescent antibody that stains its cell body and dendritic processes. Nerve terminals (*green*) from other neurons (not visible), which have made synapses on the cell, are labeled with a different antibody. (Courtesy of Olaf Mundigl and Pietro de Camilli.)

Dedication page: Gavin Borden, late president of Garland Publishing, weathered in during his mid-1980s climb near Mount McKinley with MBoC author Bruce Alberts and famous mountaineer guide Mugs Stump (1940–1992).

Back cover: The authors, in alphabetical order, crossing Abbey Road in London on their way to lunch. Much of this third edition was written in a house just around the corner. (Photograph by Richard Olivier.)

carrot

a whole
lated

ability to
ıgle cell
cells that
ɜ plant.

extracts. If these minor cell proteins differ among cells to the same extent as the more abundant proteins, as is commonly assumed, only a small number of protein differences (perhaps several hundred) suffice to create very large differences in cell morphology and behavior.

A Cell Can Change the Expression of Its Genes in Response to External Signals [3]

Most of the specialized cells in a multicellular organism are capable of altering their patterns of gene expression in response to extracellular cues. If a liver cell is exposed to a glucocorticoid hormone, for example, the production of several specific proteins is dramatically increased. Glucocorticoids are released during periods of starvation or intense exercise and signal the liver to increase the production of glucose from amino acids and other small molecules; the set of proteins whose production is induced includes enzymes such as tyrosine aminotransferase, which helps to convert tyrosine to glucose. When the hormone is no longer present, the production of these proteins drops to its normal level.

Other cell types respond to glucocorticoids in different ways. In fat cells, for example, the production of tyrosine aminotransferase is reduced, while some other cell types do not respond to glucocorticoids at all. These examples illustrate a general feature of cell specialization—different cell types often respond in different ways to the same extracellular signal. Underlying this specialization are features that do not change, which give each cell type its permanently distinctive character. These features reflect the persistent expression of different sets of genes.

Gene Expression Can Be Regulated at Many of the Steps in the Pathway from DNA to RNA to Protein [4]

If differences between the various cell types of an organism depend on the particular genes that the cells express, at what level is the control of gene expression exercised? There are many steps in the pathway leading from DNA to protein, and all of them can in principle be regulated. Thus a cell can control the proteins it makes by (1) controlling when and how often a given gene is transcribed (**transcriptional control**), (2) controlling how the primary RNA transcript is spliced or otherwise processed (**RNA processing control**), (3) selecting which completed mRNAs in the cell nucleus are exported to the cytoplasm (**RNA transport control**), (4) selecting which mRNAs in the cytoplasm are translated by ribosomes (**translational control**), (5) selectively destabilizing certain mRNA molecules in the cytoplasm (**mRNA degradation control**), or (6) selectively activating, inactivating, or compartmentalizing specific protein molecules after they have been made (**protein activity control**) (Figure 9–2).

For most genes transcriptional controls are paramount. This makes sense because, of all the possible control points illustrated in Figure 9–2, only transcriptional control ensures that no superfluous intermediates are synthesized. In the

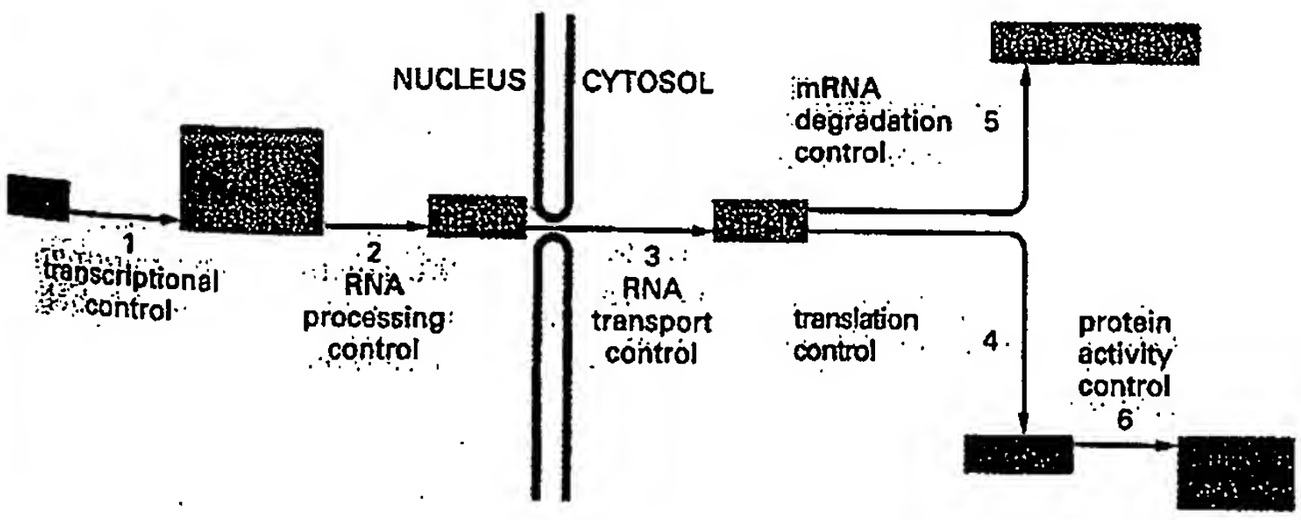


Figure 9–2 Six steps at which eucaryote gene expression can be controlled. Only controls that operate at steps 1 through 5 are discussed in this chapter. The regulation of protein activity (step 6) is discussed in Chapter 5; this includes reversible activation or inactivation by protein phosphorylation as well as irreversible inactivation by proteolytic degradation.

following sections we discuss the DNA and protein components that regulate the initiation of gene transcription. We return at the end of the chapter to the other ways of regulating gene expression.

Summary

The genome of a cell contains in its DNA sequence the information to make many thousands of different protein and RNA molecules. A cell typically expresses only a fraction of its genes, and the different types of cells in multicellular organisms arise because different sets of genes are expressed. Moreover, cells can change the pattern of genes they express in response to changes in their environment, such as signals from other cells. Although all of the steps involved in expressing a gene can in principle be regulated, for most genes the initiation of RNA transcription is the most important point of control.

DNA-binding Motifs in Gene Regulatory Proteins [5]

How does a cell determine which of its thousands of genes to transcribe? As discussed in Chapter 8, the transcription of each gene is controlled by a regulatory region of DNA near the site where transcription begins. Some regulatory regions are simple and act as switches that are thrown by a single signal. Other regulatory regions are complex and act as tiny microprocessors, responding to a variety of signals that they interpret and integrate to switch the neighboring gene on or off. Whether complex or simple, these switching devices consist of two fundamental types of components: (1) short stretches of DNA of defined sequence and (2) *gene regulatory proteins* that recognize and bind to them.

We begin our discussion of gene regulatory proteins by describing how these proteins were discovered.

Gene Regulatory Proteins Were Discovered Using Bacterial Genetics [6]

Genetic analyses in bacteria carried out in the 1950s provided the first evidence of the existence of **gene regulatory proteins** that turn specific sets of genes on or off. One of these regulators, the *lambda repressor*, is encoded by a bacterial virus, *bacteriophage lambda*. The repressor shuts off the viral genes that code for the protein components of new virus particles and thereby enables the viral genome to remain a silent passenger in the bacterial chromosome, multiplying with the bacterium when conditions are favorable for bacterial growth (see Figure 6–80). The lambda repressor was among the first gene regulatory proteins to be characterized, and it remains one of the best understood, as we discuss later. Other bacterial regulators respond to nutritional conditions by shutting off genes encoding specific sets of metabolic enzymes when they are not needed. The *lac repressor*, for example, the first of these bacterial proteins to be recognized, turns off the production of the proteins responsible for lactose metabolism when this sugar is absent from the medium.

The first step toward understanding gene regulation was the isolation of mutant strains of bacteria and bacteriophage lambda that were unable to shut off specific sets of genes. It was proposed at the time, and later proved, that most of these mutants were deficient in proteins acting as specific repressors for these sets of genes. Because these proteins, like most gene regulatory proteins, are present in small quantities, it was difficult and time-consuming to isolate them. They were eventually purified by fractionating cell extracts on a series of standard chromatography columns (see pp. 166–169). Once isolated, the proteins were shown to bind to specific DNA sequences close to the genes that they

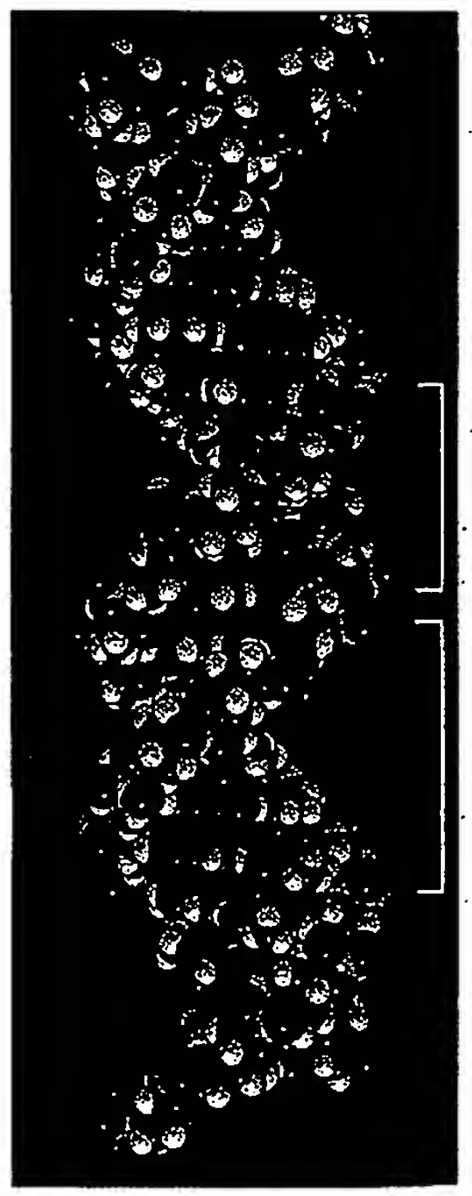


Figure 9–3 Double-helical structure of DNA. The major and minor grooves on the outside of the double helix are indicated. The atoms are colored as follows: carbon, *dark blue;* nitrogen, *light blue;* hydrogen, *white;* oxygen, *red;* phosphorus, *yellow.*

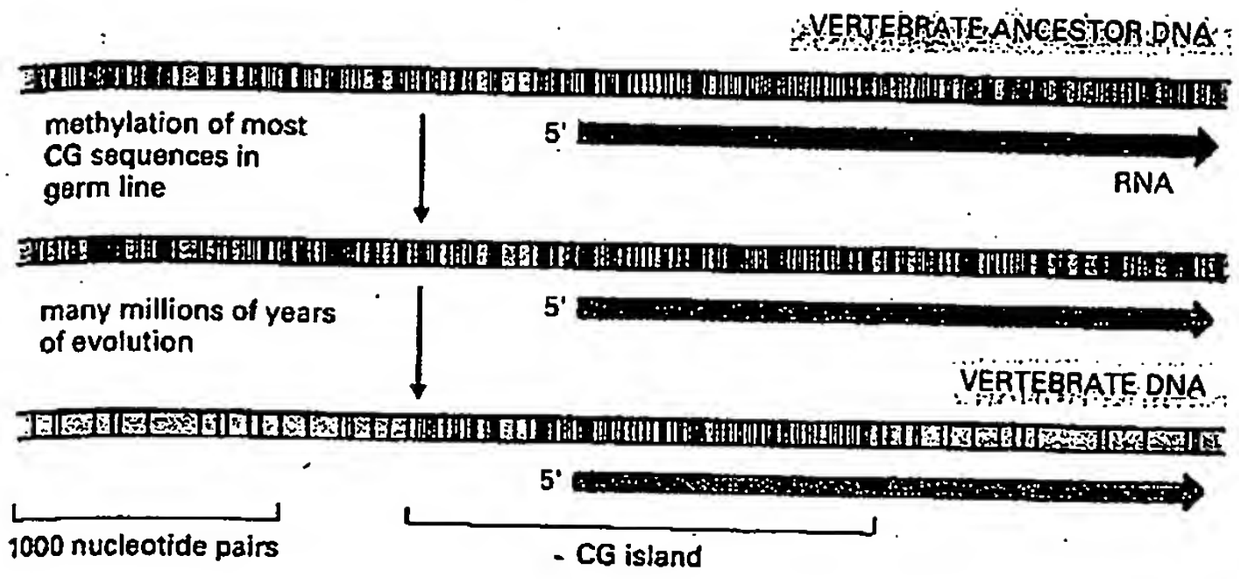


Figure 9–71 A mechanism to explain both the marked deficiency of CG sequences and the presence of CG islands in vertebrate genomes. A *black line* marks the location of an unmethylated CG dinucleotide in the DNA sequence, while a *red line* marks the location of a methylated CG dinucleotide.

Summary

The many types of cells in animals and plants are created largely through mechanisms that cause different genes to be transcribed in different cells. Since many specialized animal cells can maintain their unique character when grown in culture, the gene regulatory mechanisms involved in creating them must be stable once established and heritable when the cell divides, endowing the cell with a memory of its developmental history. Procaryotes and yeasts provide unusually accessible model systems in which to study gene regulatory mechanisms, some of which may be relevant to the creation of specialized cell types in higher eucaryotes. One such mechanism involves a competitive interaction between two (or more) gene regulatory proteins, each of which inhibits the synthesis of the other; this can create a flip-flop switch that switches a cell between two alternative patterns of gene expression. Direct or indirect positive feedback loops, which enable gene regulatory proteins to perpetuate their own synthesis, provide a general mechanism for cell memory.

In eucaryotes gene transcription is generally controlled by combinations of gene regulatory proteins. It is thought that each type of cell in a higher eucaryotic organism contains a specific combination of gene regulatory proteins that ensures the expression of only those genes appropriate to that type of cell. A given gene regulatory protein may be expressed in a variety of circumstances and typically is involved in the regulation of many genes.

In addition to diffusible gene regulatory proteins, inherited states of chromatin condensation are also utilized by eucaryotic cells to regulate gene expression. In vertebrates DNA methylation also plays a part, mainly as a device to reinforce decisions about gene expression that are made initially by other mechanisms.

. three
ɛnes.
:ent of
for
ɛxons
ive to
ed from
-347,

Posttranscriptional Controls

Although controls on the initiation of gene transcription are the predominant form of regulation for most genes, other controls can act later in the pathway from RNA to protein to modulate the amount of gene product that is made. Although these **posttranscriptional controls,** which operate after RNA polymerase has bound to the gene's promoter and begun RNA synthesis, are less common than *transcriptional control,* for many genes they are crucial. It seems that every step in gene expression that could be controlled in principle is likely to be regulated under some circumstances for some genes.

We consider the varieties of posttranscriptional regulation in temporal order, according to the sequence of events that might be experienced by an RNA molecule after its transcription has begun (Figure 9–72).

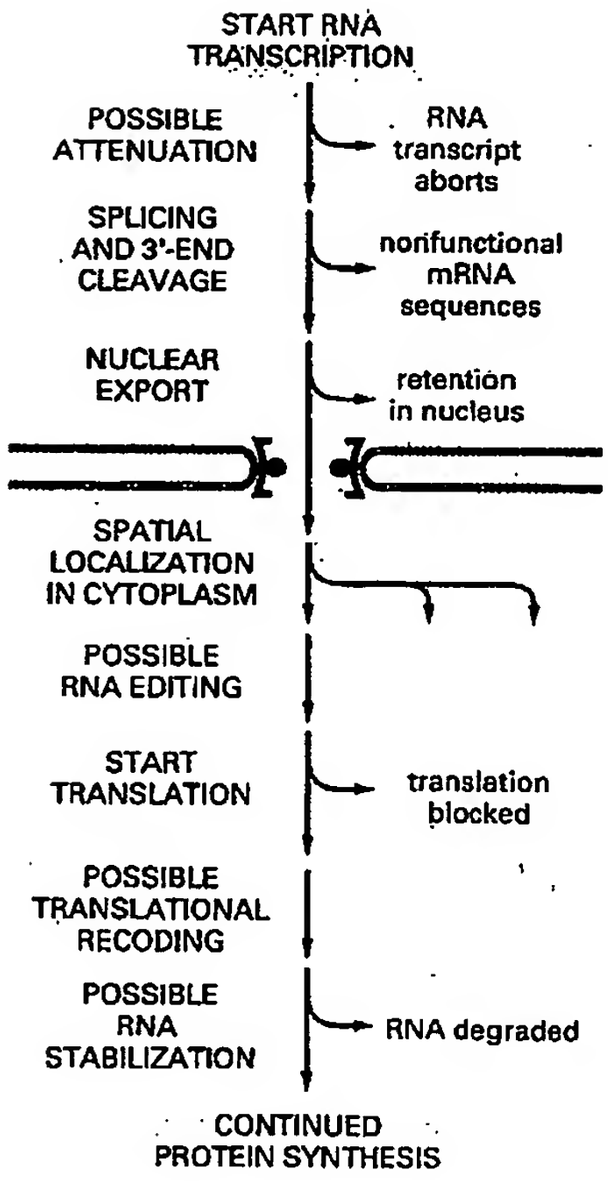


Figure 9–72 Possible posttranscriptional controls on gene expression. Only a few of these controls are likely to be used for any one gene.

EXHIBIT 10

MOLECULAR BIOLOGY OF THE CELL

fourth edition

Bruce Alberts

Alexander Johnson

Julian Lewis

Martin Raff

Keith Roberts

Peter Walter

GS Garland Science
Taylor & Francis Group

Garland
Vice President: Denise Schanck
Managing Editor: Sarah Gibbs
Senior Editorial Assistant: Kirsten Jenner
Managing Production Editor: Emma Hunt
Proofreader and Layout: Emma Hunt
Production Assistant: Angela Bennett
Text Editors: Marjorie Singer Anderson and Betsy Dilernia
Copy Editor: Bruce Goatly
Word Processors: Fran Dependahl, Misty Landers and Carol Winter
Designer: Blink Studio, London
Illustrator: Nigel Orme
Indexer: Janine Ross and Sherry Granum
Manufacturing: Nigel Eyre and Marion Morrow

Cell Biology Interactive
Artistic and Scientific Direction: Peter Walter
Narrated by: Julie Theriot
Production, Design, and Development: Mike Morales

Bruce Alberts received his Ph.D. from Harvard University and is President of the National Academy of Sciences and Professor of Biochemistry and Biophysics at the University of California, San Francisco. **Alexander Johnson** received his Ph.D. from Harvard University and is a Professor of Microbiology and Immunology at the University of California, San Francisco. **Julian Lewis** received his D.Phil. from the University of Oxford and is a Principal Scientist at the Imperial Cancer Research Fund, London. **Martin Raff** received his M.D. from McGill University and is at the Medical Research Council Laboratory for Molecular Cell Biology and Cell Biology Unit and in the Biology Department at University College London. **Keith Roberts** received his Ph.D. from the University of Cambridge and is Associate Research Director at the John Innes Centre, Norwich. **Peter Walter** received his Ph.D. from The Rockefeller University in New York and is Professor and Chairman of the Department of Biochemistry and Biophysics at the University of California, San Francisco, and an Investigator of the Howard Hughes Medical Institute.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publicaton Data
Molecular biology of the cell / Bruce Alberts ... [et al.].-- 4th ed.
p. cm
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 0-8153-3218-1 (hardbound) -- ISBN 0-8153-4072-9 (pbk.)
1. Cytology. 2. Molecular biology. I. Alberts, Bruce.
[DNLM: 1. Cells. 2. Molecular Biology.]
QH581.2 .M64 2002
571.6--dc21

2001054471 CIP

Published by Garland Science, a member of the Taylor & Francis Group, 29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001-2299

Printed in the United States of America

15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Front cover Human Genome: Reprinted by permission from *Nature,* International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium, 409:860–921, 2001 © Macmillan Magazines Ltd. Adapted from an image by Francis Collins, NHGRI; Jim Kent, UCSC; Ewan Birney, EBI; and Darryl Leja, NHGRI; showing a portion of Chromosome 1 from the initial sequencing of the human genome.

Back cover In 1967, the British artist Peter Blake created a design classic. Nearly 35 years later Nigel Orme (illustrator), Richard Denyer (photographer), and the authors have together produced an affectionate tribute to Mr Blake's image. With its gallery of icons and influences, its assembly created almost as much complexity, intrigue and mystery as the original. *Drosophila, Arabidopsis,* Dolly and the assembled company tempt you to dip inside where, as in the original, "a splendid time is guaranteed for all."
(Gunter Blobel, courtesy of The Rockefeller University; Marie Curie, Keystone Press Agency Inc; Darwin bust, by permission of the President and Council of the Royal Society; Rosalind Franklin, courtesy of Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Archives; Dorothy Hodgkin, © The Nobel Foundation, 1964; James Joyce, etching by Peter Blake; Robert Johnson, photo booth self-portrait early 1930s, © 1986 Delta Haze Corporation all rights reserved, used by permission; Albert L. Lehninger, (unidentified photographer) courtesy of The Alan Mason Chesney Medical Archives of The Johns Hopkins Medical Institutions; Linus Pauling, from Ava Helen and Linus Pauling Papers, Special Collections, Oregon State University; Nicholas Poussin, courtesy of ArtToday.com; Barbara McClintock, © David Micklos, 1983; Andrei Sakharov, courtesy of Elena Bonner; Frederick Sanger, © The Nobel Foundation, 1958.)

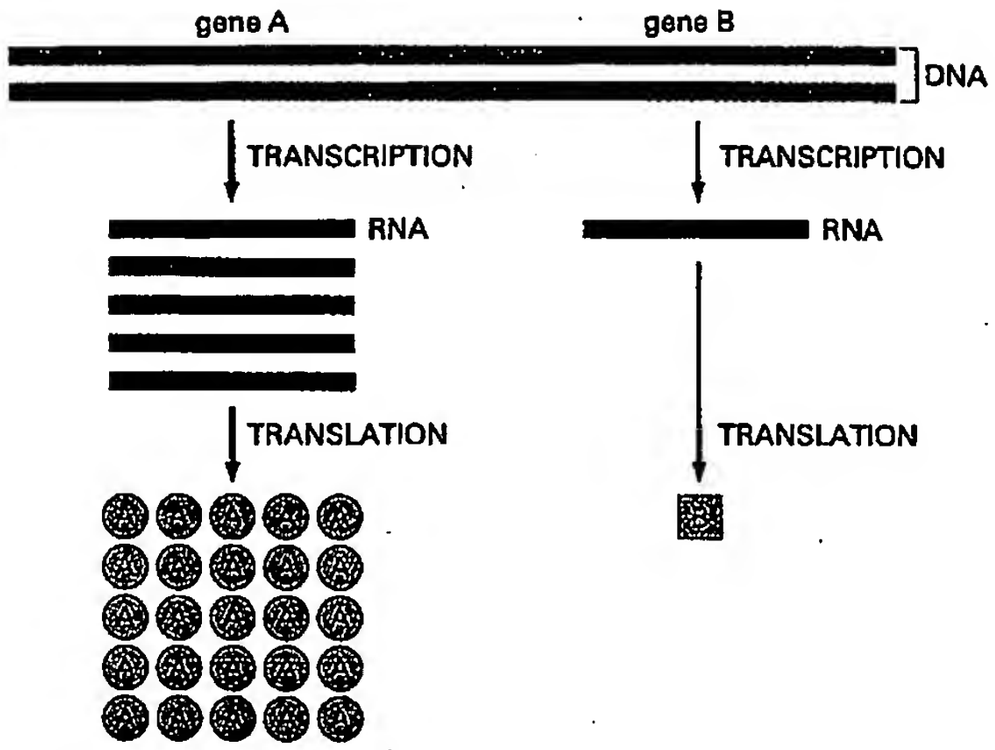


Figure 6–3 Genes can be expressed with different efficiencies. Gene A is transcribed and translated much more efficiently than gene B. This allows the amount of protein A in the cell to be much greater than that of protein B.

FROM DNA TO RNA

Transcription and translation are the means by which cells read out, or express, the genetic instructions in their genes. Because many identical RNA copies can be made from the same gene, and each RNA molecule can direct the synthesis of many identical protein molecules, cells can synthesize a large amount of protein rapidly when necessary. But each gene can also be transcribed and translated with a different efficiency, allowing the cell to make vast quantities of some proteins and tiny quantities of others (Figure 6–3). Moreover, as we see in the next chapter, a cell can change (or regulate) the expression of each of its genes according to the needs of the moment—most obviously by controlling the production of its RNA.

Portions of DNA Sequence Are Transcribed into RNA

The first step a cell takes in reading out a needed part of its genetic instructions is to copy a particular portion of its DNA nucleotide sequence—a gene—into an RNA nucleotide sequence. The information in RNA, although copied into another chemical form, is still written in essentially the same language as it is in DNA—the language of a nucleotide sequence. Hence the name **transcription.**

Like DNA, RNA is a linear polymer made of four different types of nucleotide subunits linked together by phosphodiester bonds (Figure 6–4). It differs from DNA chemically in two respects: (1) the nucleotides in RNA are *ribonucleotides*—that is, they contain the sugar ribose (hence the name *ribo*nucleic acid) rather than deoxyribose; (2) although, like DNA, RNA contains the bases adenine (A), guanine (G), and cytosine (C), it contains the base uracil (U) instead of the thymine (T) in DNA. Since U, like T, can base-pair by hydrogen-bonding with A (Figure 6–5), the complementary base-pairing properties described for DNA in Chapters 4 and 5 apply also to RNA (in RNA, G pairs with C, and A pairs with U). It is not uncommon, however, to find other types of base pairs in RNA: for example, G pairing with U occasionally.

Despite these small chemical differences, DNA and RNA differ quite dramatically in overall structure. Whereas DNA always occurs in cells as a double-stranded helix, RNA is single-stranded. RNA chains therefore fold up into a variety of shapes, just as a polypeptide chain folds up to form the final shape of a protein (Figure 6–6). As we see later in this chapter, the ability to fold into complex three-dimensional shapes allows some RNA molecules to have structural and catalytic functions.

Transcription Produces RNA Complementary to One Strand of DNA

All of the RNA in a cell is made by DNA transcription, a process that has certain similarities to the process of DNA replication discussed in Chapter 5.

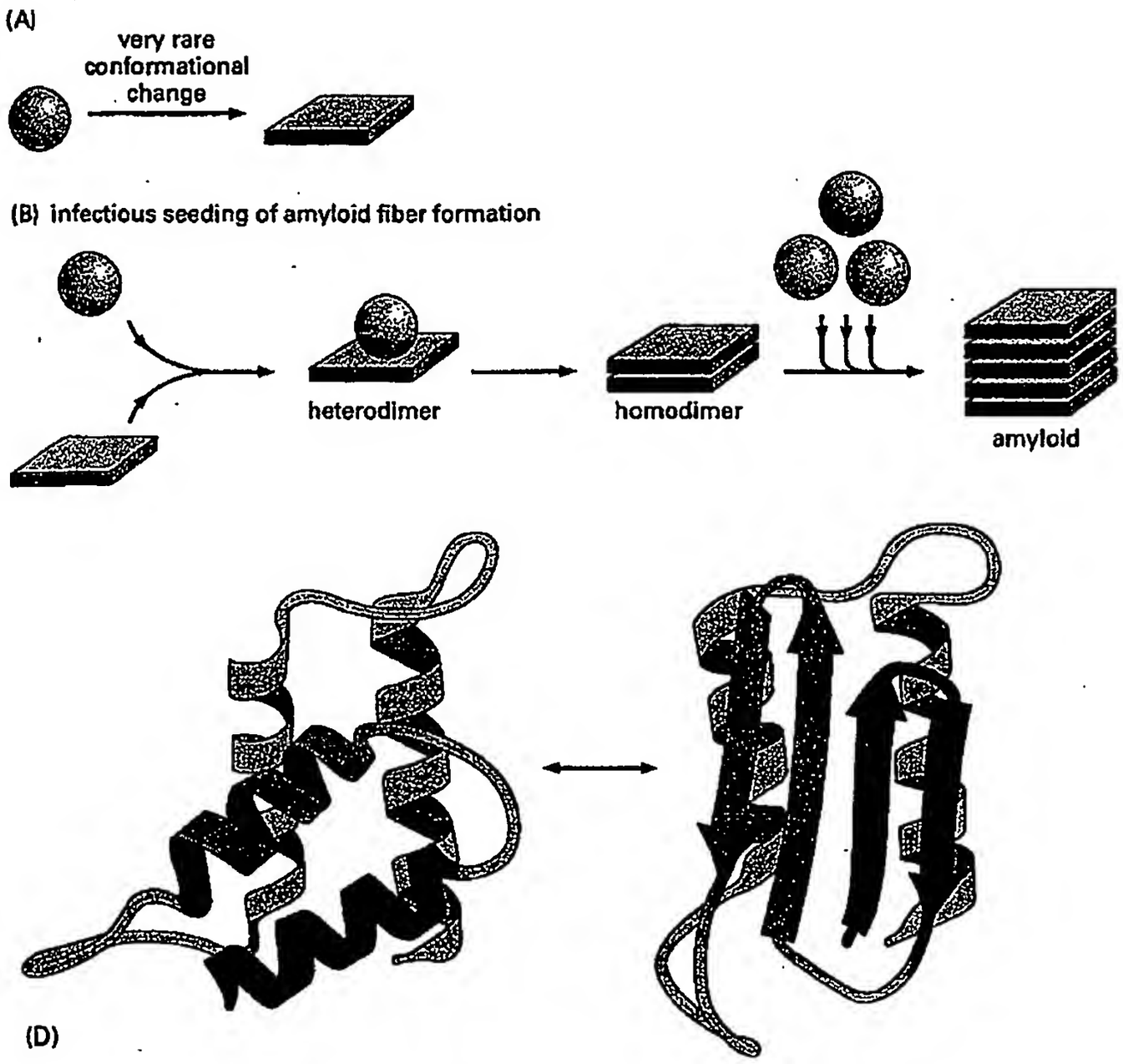


Figure 6–89 Protein aggregates that cause human disease. (A) Schematic illustration of the type of conformational change in a protein that produces material for a cross-beta filament. (B) Diagram illustrating the self-infectious nature of the protein aggregation that is central to prion diseases. PrP is highly unusual because the misfolded version of the protein, called PrP*, induces the normal PrP protein it contacts to change its conformation, as shown. Most of the human diseases caused by protein aggregation are caused by the overproduction of a variant protein that is especially prone to aggregation, but because this structure is not infectious in this way, it cannot spread from one animal to another. (C) Drawing of a cross-beta filament, a common type of protease-resistant protein aggregate found in a variety of human neurological diseases. Because the hydrogen-bond interactions in a β sheet form between polypeptide backbone atoms (see Figure 3–9), a number of different abnormally folded proteins can produce this structure. (D) One of several possible models for the conversion of PrP to PrP*, showing the likely change of two α-helices into four β-strands. Although the structure of the normal protein has been determined accurately, the structure of the infectious form is not yet known with certainty because the aggregation has prevented the use of standard structural techniques. (C, courtesy of Louise Serpell, adapted from M. Sunde et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 273:729–739, 1997; D, adapted from S.B. Prusiner, *Trends Biochem. Sci.* 21:482–487, 1996.)

animals and humans. It can be dangerous to eat the tissues of animals that contain PrP*, as witnessed most recently by the spread of BSE (commonly referred to as the "mad cow disease") from cattle to humans in Great Britain.

Fortunately, in the absence of PrP*, PrP is extraordinarily difficult to convert to its abnormal form. Although very few proteins have the potential to misfold into an infectious conformation, a similar transformation has been discovered to be the cause of an otherwise mysterious "protein-only inheritance" observed in yeast cells.

There Are Many Steps From DNA to Protein

We have seen so far in this chapter that many different types of chemical reactions are required to produce a properly folded protein from the information contained in a gene (Figure 6–90). The final level of a properly folded protein in a cell therefore depends upon the efficiency with which each of the many steps is performed.

We discuss in Chapter 7 that cells have the ability to change the levels of their proteins according to their needs. In principle, any or all of the steps in Fig-

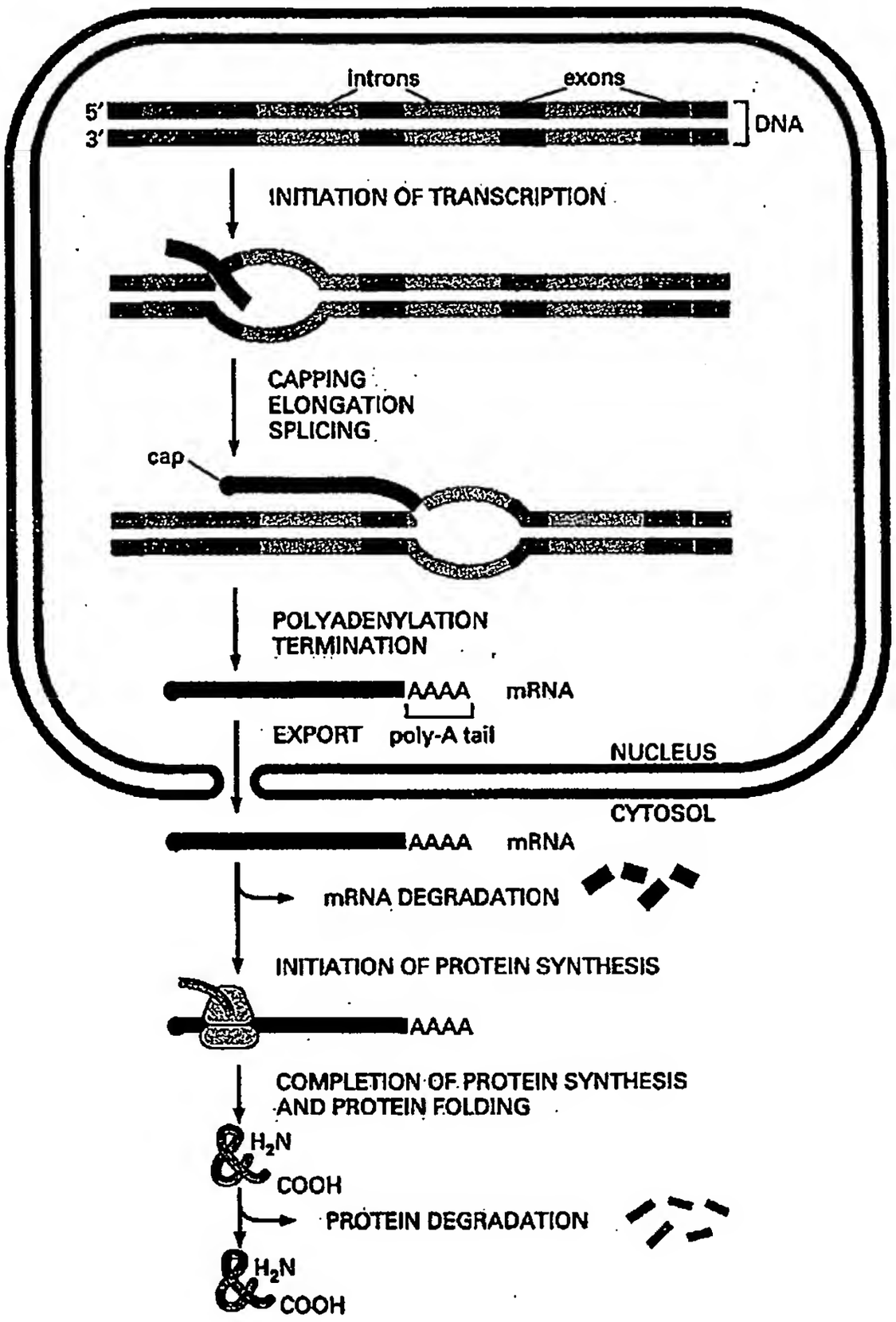


Figure 6–90 The production of a protein by a eucaryotic cell. The final level of each protein in a eucaryotic cell depends upon the efficiency of each step depicted.

ure 6–90) could be regulated by the cell for each individual protein. However, as we shall see in Chapter 7, the initiation of transcription is the most common point for a cell to regulate the expression of each of its genes. This makes sense, inasmuch as the most efficient way to keep a gene from being expressed is to block the very first step—the transcription of its DNA sequence into an RNA molecule.

Summary

The translation of the nucleotide sequence of an mRNA molecule into protein takes place in the cytoplasm on a large ribonucleoprotein assembly called a ribosome. The amino acids used for protein synthesis are first attached to a family of tRNA molecules, each of which recognizes, by complementary base-pair interactions, particular sets of three nucleotides in the mRNA (codons). The sequence of nucleotides in the mRNA is then read from one end to the other in sets of three according to the genetic code.

To initiate translation, a small ribosomal subunit binds to the mRNA molecule at a start codon (AUG) that is recognized by a unique initiator tRNA molecule. A large ribosomal subunit binds to complete the ribosome and begin the elongation phase of protein synthesis. During this phase, aminoacyl tRNAs—each bearing a specific amino acid bind sequentially to the appropriate codon in mRNA by forming complementary base pairs with the tRNA anticodon. Each amino acid is added to the C-terminal end of the growing polypeptide by means of a cycle of three sequential

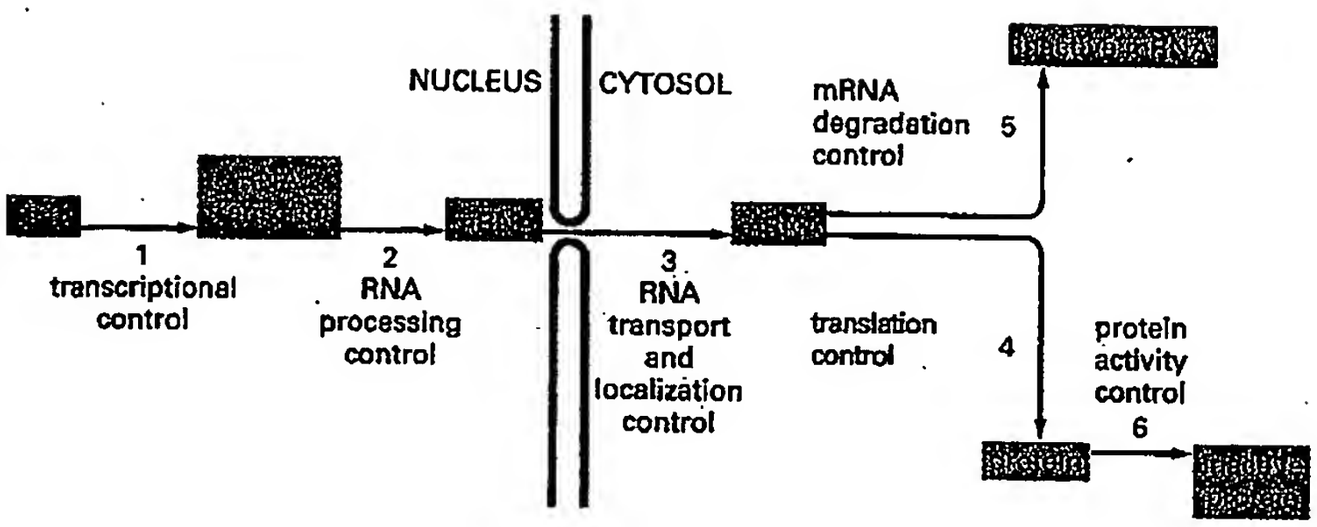


Figure 7–5 Six steps at which eucaryotic gene expression can be controlled. Controls that operate at steps 1 through 5 are discussed in this chapter. Step 6, the regulation of protein activity, includes reversible activation or inactivation by protein phosphorylation (discussed in Chapter 3) as well as irreversible inactivation by proteolytic degradation (discussed in Chapter 6).

Gene Expression Can Be Regulated at Many of the Steps in the Pathway from DNA to RNA to Protein

If differences among the various cell types of an organism depend on the particular genes that the cells express, at what level is the control of gene expression exercised? As we saw in the last chapter, there are many steps in the pathway leading from DNA to protein, and all of them can in principle be regulated. Thus a cell can control the proteins it makes by (1) controlling when and how often a given gene is transcribed (**transcriptional control**), (2) controlling how the RNA transcript is spliced or otherwise processed (**RNA processing control**), (3) selecting which completed mRNAs in the cell nucleus are exported to the cytosol and determining where in the cytosol they are localized (**RNA transport and localization control**), (4) selecting which mRNAs in the cytoplasm are translated by ribosomes (**translational control**), (5) selectively destabilizing certain mRNA molecules in the cytoplasm (**mRNA degradation control**), or (6) selectively activating, inactivating, degrading, or compartmentalizing specific protein molecules after they have been made (**protein activity control**) (Figure 7–5).

For most genes transcriptional controls are paramount. This makes sense because, of all the possible control points illustrated in Figure 7–5, only transcriptional control ensures that the cell will not synthesize superfluous intermediates. In the following sections we discuss the DNA and protein components that perform this function by regulating the initiation of gene transcription. We shall return at the end of the chapter to the additional ways of regulating gene expression.

Summary

The genome of a cell contains in its DNA sequence the information to make many thousands of different protein and RNA molecules. A cell typically expresses only a fraction of its genes, and the different types of cells in multicellular organisms arise because different sets of genes are expressed. Moreover, cells can change the pattern of genes they express in response to changes in their environment, such as signals from other cells. Although all of the steps involved in expressing a gene can in principle be regulated, for most genes the initiation of RNA transcription is the most important point of control.

DNA-BINDING MOTIFS IN GENE REGULATORY PROTEINS

How does a cell determine which of its thousands of genes to transcribe? As mentioned briefly in Chapters 4 and 6, the transcription of each gene is controlled by a regulatory region of DNA relatively near the site where transcription begins. Some regulatory regions are simple and act as switches that are thrown by a single signal. Many others are complex and act as tiny microprocessors, responding to a variety of signals that they interpret and integrate to switch the neighboring gene on or off. Whether complex or simple, these switching devices

occur in the germ line, the cell lineage that gives rise to sperm or eggs. Most of the DNA in vertebrate germ cells is inactive and highly methylated. Over long periods of evolutionary time, the methylated CG sequences in these inactive regions have presumably been lost through spontaneous deamination events that were not properly repaired. However promoters of genes that remain active in the germ cell lineages (including most housekeeping genes) are kept unmethylated, and therefore spontaneous deaminations of Cs that occur within them can be accurately repaired. Such regions are preserved in modern day vertebrate cells as CG islands. In addition, any mutation of a CG sequence in the genome that destroyed the function or regulation of a gene in the adult would be selected against, and some CG islands are simply the result of a higher than normal density of critical CG sequences.

The mammalian genome contains an estimated 20,000 CG islands. Most of the islands mark the 5′ ends of transcription units and thus, presumably, of genes. The presence of CG islands often provides a convenient way of identifying genes in the DNA sequences of vertebrate genomes.

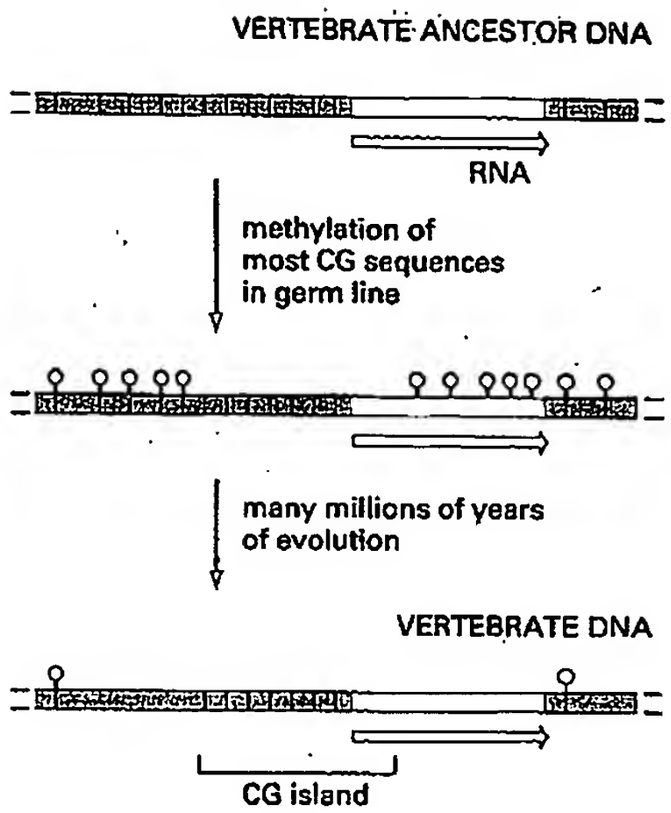


Figure 7–86 A mechanism to explain both the marked overall deficiency of CG sequences and their clustering into CG islands in vertebrate genomes. A *black line* marks the location of a CG dinucleotide in the DNA sequence, while a *red* "lollipop" indicates the presence of a methyl group on the CG dinucleotide. CG sequences that lie in regulatory sequences of genes that are transcribed in germ cells are unmethylated and therefore tend to be retained in evolution. Methylated CG sequences, on the other hand, tend to be lost through deamination of 5-methyl C to T, unless the CG sequence is critical for survival.

Summary

The many types of cells in animals and plants are created largely through mechanisms that cause different genes to be transcribed in different cells. Since many specialized animal cells can maintain their unique character through many cell division cycles and even when grown in culture, the gene regulatory mechanisms involved in creating them must be stable once established and heritable when the cell divides. These features endow the cell with a memory of its developmental history. Bacteria and yeasts provide unusually accessible model systems in which to study gene regulatory mechanisms. One such mechanism involves a competitive interaction between two gene regulatory proteins, each of which inhibits the synthesis of the other; this can create a flip-flop switch that switches a cell between two alternative patterns of gene expression. Direct or indirect positive feedback loops, which enable gene regulatory proteins to perpetuate their own synthesis, provide a general mechanism for cell memory. Negative feedback loops with programmed delays form the basis for cellular clocks.

In eucaryotes the transcription of a gene is generally controlled by combinations of gene regulatory proteins. It is thought that each type of cell in a higher eucaryotic organism contains a specific combination of gene regulatory proteins that ensures the expression of only those genes appropriate to that type of cell. A given gene regulatory protein may be active in a variety of circumstances and typically is involved in the regulation of many genes.

In addition to diffusible gene regulatory proteins, inherited states of chromatin condensation are also used by eucaryotic cells to regulate gene expression. An especially dramatic case is the inactivation of an entire X chromosome in female mammals. In vertebrates DNA methylation also functions in gene regulation, being used mainly as a device to reinforce decisions about gene expression that are made initially by other mechanisms. DNA methylation also underlies the phenomenon of genomic imprinting in mammals, in which the expression of a gene depends on whether it was inherited from the mother or the father.

POSTTRANSCRIPTIONAL CONTROLS

In principle, every step required for the process of gene expression could be controlled. Indeed, one can find examples of each type of regulation, although any one gene is likely to use only a few of them. Controls on the initiation of gene transcription are the predominant form of regulation for most genes. But other controls can act later in the pathway from DNA to protein to modulate the amount of gene product that is made. Although these **posttranscriptional controls**, which operate after RNA polymerase has bound to the gene's promoter and begun RNA synthesis, are less common than *transcriptional control*, for many genes they are crucial.

EXHIBIT 11

CHAPTER 29

Regulation of transcription

Genes VII (1997) CH 29, pp. 847-848.
Benjamin Lewin

The phenotypic differences that distinguish the various kinds of cells in a higher eukaryote are largely due to differences in the expression of genes that code for proteins, that is, those transcribed by RNA polymerase II. In principle, the expression of these genes might be regulated at any one of several stages. The concept of the "level of control" implies that gene expression is not necessarily an automatic process once it has begun. It could be regulated in a gene-specific way at any one of several sequential steps. We can distinguish (at least) five potential control points, forming the series:

Activation of gene structure
↓
Initiation of transcription
↓
Processing the transcript
↓
Transport to cytoplasm
↓
Translation of mRNA

The existence of the first step is implied by the discovery that genes may exist in either of two structural conditions. Relative to the state of most of the genome, genes are found in an "active" state in the cells in which they are expressed (see Chapter 27). The change of structure is distinct from the act of transcription, and indicates that the gene is "transcribable." This suggests that acquisition of the "active" structure must be the first step in gene expression.

Transcription of a gene in the active state is controlled at the stage of initiation, that is, by the interaction of RNA polymerase with its promoter. This is now becoming susceptible to analysis in the *in vitro* systems (see Chapter 28). For most genes, this is a major control point: probably it is the most common level of regulation.

There is at present no evidence for control at subsequent stages of transcription in eukaryotic cells, for example, via antitermination mechanisms.

The primary transcript is modified by capping at the 5′ end, and usually also by polyadenylation at the 3′ end. Introns must be spliced out from the transcripts of interrupted genes. The mature RNA must be exported from the nucleus to the cytoplasm. Regulation of gene expression by selection of sequences at the level of nuclear RNA might involve any or all of these stages, but the one for which we have most evidence concerns changes in splicing: some genes are expressed by means of alternative splicing patterns whose regulation controls the type of protein product (see Chapter 30).

Finally, the translation of an mRNA in the cytoplasm can be specifically controlled. There is little evidence for the employment of this mechanism in adult somatic cells, but it does occur in some embryonic situations, as described in Chapter 7. The mechanism is presumed to involve the blocking of initiation of translation of some mRNAs by specific protein factors.

But having acknowledged that control of gene expression can occur at multiple stages, and that production of RNA cannot inevitably be equated with production of protein, it is clear

that the overwhelming majority of regulatory events occur at the initiation of transcription. Regulation of tissue-specific gene transcription lies at the heart of eukaryotic differentiation; indeed, we see examples in Chapter 38 in which proteins that regulate embryonic development prove to be transcription factors. A regulatory transcription factor serves to provide common control of a large number of target genes, and we seek to answer two questions about this mode of regulation: what identifies the common target genes to the transcription factor; and how is the activity of the transcription factor itself regulated in response to intrinsic or extrinsic signals?

Response elements identify genes under common regulation

The principle that emerges from characterizing groups of genes under common control is that *they share a promoter element that is recognized by a regulatory transcription factor.* An element that causes a gene to respond to such a factor is called a response element; examples are the **HSE** (heat shock response element), **GRE** (glucocorticoid response element), **SRE** (serum response element).

The properties of some inducible transcription factors and the elements that they recognize are summarized in Table 29.1. Response elements have the same general characteristics as upstream elements of promoters or enhancers. They contain short consensus sequences, and copies of the response elements found in different genes are closely related, but not necessarily identical. The region bound by the factor extends for a short distance on either side of the consensus sequence. In promoters, the elements are not present at fixed distances from the startpoint, but are usually <200 bp upstream of it. The presence of a single element usually is sufficient to confer the regulatory response, but sometimes there are multiple copies.

Table 29.1 Inducible transcription factors bind to response elements that identify groups of promoters or enhancers subject to coordinate control.

Regulatory Agent	Module	Consensus	Factor
Heat shock	HSE	CNNGAANNTCCNNG	HSTF
Glucocorticoid	GRE	TGGTACAAATGTTCT	Receptor
Phorbol ester	TRE	TGACTCA	AP1
Serum	SRE	CCATATTAGG	SRF

Response elements may be located in promoters or in enhancers. Some types of elements are typically found in one rather than the other: usually an HSE is found in a promoter, while a GRE is found in an enhancer. We assume that all response elements function by the same general principle. *A gene is regulated by a sequence at the promoter or enhancer that is recognized by a specific protein. The protein functions as a transcription factor needed for RNA polymerase to initiate. Active protein is available only under conditions when the gene is to be expressed; its absence means that the promoter is not activated by this particular circuit.*

An example of a situation in which many genes are controlled by a single factor is provided by the heat shock response. This is common to a wide range of prokaryotes and eukaryotes and involves multiple controls of gene expression: an increase in temperature turns off transcription of some genes, turns on transcription of the heat shock genes, and causes changes in the translation of mRNAs. The control of the heat shock genes illustrates the differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic modes of control. In bacteria, a new sigma factor is synthesized that directs RNA polymerase holoenzyme to recognize an alter

EXHIBIT 12

World Journal of Surgical Oncology

BioMed Central

Research

Open Access

Prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) expression in human prostate cancer tissues and its potential role in prostate carcinogenesis and progression of prostate cancer

Zhao Zhigang*[1] and Shen Wenlv[2]

Address: [1]Department of Urology, Shantou University Medical College, Shantou, Guangdong, China and [2]Department of Urology, No 2. Affiliated Hospital of Shantou University Medical College, Shantou, Guangdong, China

Email: Zhao Zhigang* - zgzhaodr@yahoo.com.cn; Shen Wenlv - wlshen99@hotmail.com

* Corresponding author

Published: 10 May 2004

World Journal of Surgical Oncology 2004, 2:13

Received: 30 March 2004
Accepted: 10 May 2004

This article is available from: http://www.wjso.com/content/2/1/13

Abstract

Background: Prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) is a recently defined homologue of the Thy-1/Ly-6 family of glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored cell surface antigens. The purpose of the present study was to examine the expression status of PSCA protein and mRNA in clinical specimens of human prostate cancer (Pca) and to validate it as a potential molecular target for diagnosis and treatment of Pca.

Materials and Methods: Immunohistochemical (IHC) and *in situ* hybridization (ISH) analyses of PSCA expression were simultaneously performed on paraffin-embedded sections from 20 benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH), 20 prostatic intraepithelial neoplasm (PIN) and 48 prostate cancer (Pca) tissues, including 9 androgen-independent prostate cancers. The level of PSCA expression was semiquantitatively scored by assessing both the percentage and intensity of PSCA-positive staining cells in the specimens. Then compared PSCA expression between BPH, PIN and Pca tissues and analysed the correlations of PSCA expression level with pathological grade, clinical stage and progression to androgen-independence in Pca.

Results: In BPH and low grade PIN, PSCA protein and mRNA staining were weak or negative and less intense and uniform than that seen in HGPIN and Pca. There were moderate to strong PSCA protein and mRNA expression in 8 of 11 (72.7%) HGPIN and in 40 of 48 (83.4%) Pca specimens examined by IHC and ISH analyses, with statistical significance compared with BPH (20%) and low grade PIN (22.2%) samples ($p < 0.05$, respectively). The expression level of PSCA increased with high Gleason grade, advanced stage and progression to androgen-independence ($p < 0.05$, respectively). In addition, IHC and ISH staining showed a high degree of correlation between PSCA protein and mRNA overexpression.

Conclusions: Our data demonstrate that PSCA as a new cell surface marker is overexpressed by a majority of human Pca. PSCA expression correlates positively with adverse tumor characteristics, such as increasing pathological grade (poor cell differentiation), worsening clinical stage and androgen-independence, and speculatively with prostate carcinogenesis. PSCA protein overexpression results from upregulated transcription of PSCA mRNA. PSCA may have prognostic utility and may be a promising molecular target for diagnosis and treatment of Pca.

Introduction

Prostate cancer (Pca) is the second leading cause of cancer-related death in American men and is becoming a common cancer increasing in China. Despite recently great progress in the diagnosis and management of localized disease, there continues to be a need for new diagnostic markers that can accurately discriminate between indolent and aggressive variants of Pca. There also continues to be a need for the identification and characterization of potential new therapeutic targets on Pca cells. Current diagnostic and therapeutic modalities for recurrent and metastatic Pca have been limited by a lack of specific target antigens of Pca.

Although a number of prostate-specific genes have been identified (i.e. prostate specific antigen, prostatic acid phosphatase, glandular kallikrein 2), the majority of these are secreted proteins not ideally suited for many immunological strategies. So, the identification of new cell surface antigens is critical to the development of new diagnostic and therapeutic approaches to the management of Pca.

Reiter RE et al [1] reported the identification of prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA), a cell surface antigen that is predominantly prostate specific. The PSCA gene encodes a 123 amino acid glycoprotein, with 30% homology to stem cell antigen 2 (Sca 2). Like Sca-2, PSCA also belongs to a member of the Thy-1/Ly-6 family and is anchored by a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) linkage. mRNA *in situ* hybridization (ISH) localized PSCA expression in normal prostate to the basal cell epithelium, the putative stem cell compartment of prostatic epithelium, suggesting that PSCA may be a marker of prostate stem/progenitor cells.

In order to examine the status of PSCA protein and mRNA expression in human Pca and validate it as a potential diagnostic and therapeutic target for Pca, we used immunohistochemistry (IHC) and *in situ* hybridization (ISH) simultaneously, and conducted PSCA protein and mRNA expression analyses in paraffin-embedded tissue specimens of benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH, n = 20), prostate intraepithelial neoplasm (PIN, n = 20) and prostate cancer (Pca, n = 48). Furthermore, we evaluated the possible correlation of PSCA expression level with Pca tumorigenesis, grade, stage and progression to androgen-independence.

Materials and methods

Tissue samples

All of the clinical tissue specimens studied herein were obtained from 80 patients of 57–84 years old by prostatectomy, transurethral resection of prostate (TURP) or biopsies. The patients were classified as 20 cases of BPH, 20 cases of PIN, 40 cases of primary Pca, including 9 patients with recurrent Pca and a history of androgen ablation therapy (orchiectomy and/or hormonal therapy), who were referred to as androgen-independent prostate cancers. Eight specimens were harvested from these androgen-independent Pca patients prior to androgen ablation treatment. Each tissue sample was cut into two parts, one was fixed in 10% formalin for IHC and the other treated with 4% paraformaldehyde/0.1 M PBS PH 7.4 in 0.1% DEPC for 1 h for ISH analysis, and then embedded in paraffin. All paraffin blocks examined were then cut into 5 μm sections and mounted on the glass slides specific for IHC and ISH respectively in the usual fashion. H&E-stained section of each Pca was evaluated and assigned a Gleason score by the experienced urological pathologist at our institution based on the criteria of Gleason score [2]. The Gleason sums are summarized in Table 1. Clinical staging was performed according to Jewett-whitmore-prout staging system, as shown in Table 2. In the category of PIN, we graded the specimens into two groups, i.e. low grade PIN (grade I – II) and high grade PIN (HGPIN, grade III) on the basis of literatures [3,4].

Immunohistochemical (IHC) analysis

Briefly, tissue sections were deparaffinized, dehydrated, and subjected to microwaving in 10 mmol/L citrate buffer, PH 6.0 (Boshide, Wuhan, China) in a 900 W oven for 5 min to induce epitope retrieval. Slides were allowed to cool at room temperature for 30 min. A primary mouse antibody specific to human PSCA (Boshide, Wuhan, China) with a 1:100 dilution was applied to incubate with the slides at room temperature for 2 h. Labeling was detected by sequentially adding biotinylated secondary antibodies and strepavidin-peroxidase, and localized using 3,3'-diaminobenzidine reaction. Sections were then counterstained with hematoxylin. Substitution of the primary antibody with phosphate-buffered-saline (PBS) served as a negative-staining control.

mRNA in situ hybridization (ISH)

Five-μm-thick tissue sections were deparaffinized and dehydrated, then digested in pepsin solution (4 mg/ml in 3% citric acid) for 20 min at 37.5°C, and further processed for ISH. Digoxigenin-labeled sense and antisense human PSCA RNA probes (obtained from Boshide, Wuhan, China) were hybridized to the sections at 48°C overnight. The posthybridization wash with a high stringency was performed sequentially at 37°C in 2 × standard saline citrate (SSC) for 10 min, in 0.5 × SSC for 15 min and in 0.2 × SSC for 30 min. The slides were then incubated to biotinylated mouse anti-digoxigenin antibody at 37.5°C for 1 h followed by washing in 1 × PBS for 20 min at room temperature, and then to strepavidin-peroxidase at 37.5°C for 20 min followed by washing in 1 × PBS for 15 min at room temperature. Subsequently, the slides were developed with diaminobenzidine and then coun-

Table 1: Correlation of PSCA expression with Gleason score

	Intensity × frequency	
Gleason score	0–6 (%)	9 (%)
2–4	5 (83)	1 (17)
5–7	19 (79)	5 (21)
8–10	5 (28)	13 (72)

Table 2: Correlation of PSCA expression with clinical stage

	Intensity × frequency	
Tumor stage	0–6 (%)	9 (%)
≤B	27 (67.5)	13 (32.5)
≥C	2 (25)	6 (75)

terstained with hematoxylin to localize the hybridization signals. Sections hybridized with the sense control probes routinely did not show any specific hybridization signal above background. All slides were hybridized with PBS to substitute for the probes as a negative control.

Scoring methods

To determine the correlation between the results of PSCA immunostaining and mRNA *in situ* hybridization, the same scoring manners are taken in the present study for PSCA protein staining by IHC and PSCA mRNA staining by ISH. Each slide was read and scored by two independently experienced urological pathologists using Olympus BX-41 light microscopes. The evaluation was done in a blinded fashion. For each section, five areas of similar grade were analyzed semiquantitatively for the fraction of cells staining. Fifty percent of specimens were randomly chosen and rescored to determine the degree of interobserver and intraobserver concordance. There was greater than 95% intra- and interobserver agreement.

The intensity of PSCA expression evaluated microscopically was graded on a scale of 0 to 3+ with 3 being the highest expression observed (0, no staining; 1+, mildly intense; 2+, moderately intense; 3+, severely intense). The staining density was quantified as the percentage of cells staining positive for PSCA with the primary antibody or hybridization probe, as follows: 0 = no staining; 1 = positive staining in <25% of the sample; 2 = positive staining in 25%–50% of the sample; 3 = positive staining in >50% of the sample. Intensity score (0 to 3+) was multiplied by the density score (0–3) to give an overall score of 0–9 [1,5]. In this way, we were able to differentiate specimens that may have had focal areas of increased staining from those that had diffuse areas of increased staining [6]. The overall score for each specimen was then categorically assigned to one of the following groups: 0 score, negative expression; 1–2 scores, weak expression; 3–6 scores, moderate expression; 9 score, strong expression.

Statistical analysis

Intensity and density of PSCA protein and mRNA expression in BPH, PIN and Pca tissues were compared using the Chi-square and Student's *t*-test. Univariate associations between PSCA expression and Gleason score, clinical stage and progression to androgen-independence were calculated using Fisher's Exact Test. For all analyses, $p < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

Results

PSCA expression in BPH

In general, PSCA protein and mRNA were expressed weakly in individual samples of BPH. Some areas of prostate expressed weak levels (composite score 1–2), whereas other areas were completely negative (composite score 0). Four cases (20%) of BPH had moderate expression of PSCA protein and mRNA (composite score 4–6) by IHC and ISH. In 2/20 (10%) BPH specimens, PSCA mRNA expression was moderate (composite score 3–6), but PSCA protein expression was weak (composite score

2) in one and negative (composite score 0) in the other. PSCA expression was localized to the basal and secretory epithelial cells, and prostatic stroma was almost negative staining for PSCA protein and mRNA in all cases examined.

PSCA expression in PIN

In this study, we detected weak or negative expression of PSCA protein and mRNA (≤2 scores) in 7 of 9 (77.8%) low grade PIN and in 2 of 11 (18.2%) HGPIN, and moderate expression (3–6 scores) in the rest 2 low grade PIN and 5 of 11 (45.5%) HGPIN. One HGPIN with moderate PSCA mRNA expression (6 score) was found weak staining for PSCA protein (2 score) by IHC. Strong PSCA protein and mRNA expression (9 score) were detected in the remaining 3 of 11 (27.3%) HGPIN. There was a statistically significant difference of PSCA protein and mRNA expression levels observed between HGPIN and BPH ($p < 0.05$), but no statistical difference reached between low grade PIN and BPH ($p > 0.05$).

PSCA expression in Pca

In order to determine if PSCA protein and mRNA can be detected in prostate cancers and if PSCA expression levels are increased in malignant compared with benign glands, Forty-eight paraffin-embedded Pca specimens were analysed by IHC and ISH. It was shown that 19 of 48 (39.6%) Pca samples stained very strongly for PSCA protein and mRNA with a score of 9 and another 21 (43.8%) specimens displayed moderate staining with scores of 4–6 (Figure 1). In addition, 4 specimens with moderate to strong PSCA mRNA expression (scores of 4–9) had weak protein staining (a score of 2) by IHC analyses. Overall, Pca expressed a significantly higher level of PSCA protein and mRNA than any other specimen category in this study ($p < 0.05$, compared with BPH and PIN respectively). The result demonstrates that PSCA protein and mRNA are overexpressed by a majority of human Pca.

Correlation of PSCA expression with Gleason score in Pca

Using the semi-quantitative scoring method as described in Materials and Methods, we compared the expression level of PSCA protein and mRNA with Gleason grade of Pca, as shown in Table 1. Prostate adenocarcinomas were graded by Gleason score as 2–4 scores = well-differentiation, 5–7 scores = moderate-differentiation and 8–10 scores = poor-differentiation [7]. Seventy-two percent of Gleason scores 8–10 prostate cancers had very strong staining of PSCA compared to 21% with Gleason scores 5–7 and 17% with 2–4 respectively, demonstrating that poorly differentiated Pca had significantly stronger expression of PSCA protein and mRNA than moderately and well differentiated tumors ($p < 0.05$). As depicted in Figure 1, IHC and ISH analyses showed that PSCA protein and mRNA expression in several cases of poorly differentiated Pca were particularly prominent, with more intense and uniform staining. The results indicate that PSCA expression increases significantly with higher tumor grade in human Pca.

Correlation of PSCA expression with clinical stage in Pca

With regards to PSCA expression in every stage of Pca, we showed the results in Table 2. Seventy-five percent of locally advanced and node positive cancers (i.e. C-D stages) expressed statistically high levels of PSCA versus 32.5% that were organ confined (i.e. A-B stages) ($p < 0.05$). The data demonstrate that PSCA expression increases significantly with advanced tumor stage in human Pca.

Correlation of PSCA expression with androgen-independent progression of Pca

All 9 specimens of androgen-independent prostate cancers stained positive for PSCA protein and mRNA. Eight specimens were obtained from patients managed prior to androgen ablation therapy. Seven of eight (87.5%) of these androgen-independent prostate cancers were in the strongest staining category (score = 9), compared with three out of eight (37.5%) of patients with androgen-dependent cancers ($p < 0.05$). The results demonstrate that PSCA expression increases significantly with progression to androgen-independence of human Pca.

It is evident from the results above that within a majority of human prostate cancers the level of PSCA protein and mRNA expression correlates significantly with increasing grade, worsening stage and progression to androgen-independence.

Correlation of PSCA immunostaining and mRNA in situ hybridization

In all 88 specimens surveyed herein, we compared the results of PSCA IHC staining with mRNA ISH analysis. Positive staining areas and its intensity and density scores evaluated by IHC were identical to those seen by ISH in 79 of 88 (89.8%) specimens (18/20 BPH, 19/20 PIN and 42/48 Pca respectively). Importantly, 27/27 samples with PSCA mRNA composite scores of 0–2, 32/36 samples with scores of 3–6 and 22/24 samples with a score of 9 also had PSCA protein expression scores of 0–2, 3–6 and 9 respectively. However, in 5 samples with PSCA mRNA overall scores of 3–6 and in 2 with scores of 9 there were less or negative PSCA protein expression (i.e. scores of 0–4), suggesting that this may reflect posttranscriptional modification of PSCA or that the epitopes recognized by PSCA mAb may be obscured in some cancers. The data demonstrate that the results of PSCA immunostaining were consistent with those of mRNA ISH analysis, showing a high degree of correlation between PSCA protein and mRNA expression.

Figure 1

Representatives of PSCA IHC and ISH staining in Pca (A. IHC staining, B. ISH staining, ×200 magnification). A_1, B_1: negative control of IHC and ISH. PBS replacing the primary antibody (A_1) and hybridization with a sense PSCA probe (B_1) showed no background staining. A_2, B_2: a moderately differentiated Pca (Gleason score = 3+3 = 6) with moderate staining (composite score = 6) in all malignant cells; A_2: IHC shows not only cell surface but also apparent cytoplasmic staining of PSCA protein. A_3, B_3: a poorly differentiated Pca (Gleason score = 4+4 = 8) with very strong staining (composite score = 9) in all malignant cells.

Discussion

PSCA is homologous to a group of cell surface proteins that mark the earliest phase of hematopoietic development. PSCA mRNA expression is prostate-specific in normal male tissues and is highly up-regulated in both androgen-dependent and-independent Pca xenografts (LAPC-4 tumors). We hypothesize that PSCA may play a role in Pca tumorigenesis and progression, and may serve as a target for Pca diagnosis and treatment. In this study, IHC and ISH showed that in general there were weak or absent PSCA protein and mRNA expression in BPH and low grade PIN tissues. However, PSCA protein and mRNA are widely expressed in HGPIN, the putative precursor of invasive Pca, suggesting that up-regulation of PSCA is an early event in prostate carcinogenesis. Recently, Reiter RE et al [1], using ISH analysis, reported that 97 of 118 (82%) HGPIN specimens stained strongly positive for PSCA mRNA. A very similar finding was seen on mouse PSCA (mPSCA) expression in mouse HGPIN tissues by Tran C. P et al [8]. These data suggest that PSCA may be a new marker associated with transformation of prostate cells and tumorigenesis.

We observed that PSCA protein and mRNA are highly expressed in a large percentage of human prostate cancers, including advanced, poorly differentiated, androgen-independent and metastatic cases. Fluorescence-activated cell sorting and confocal/ immunofluorescent studies demonstrated cell surface expression of PSCA protein in Pca cells [9]. Our IHC expression analysis of PSCA shows not only cell surface but also apparent cytoplasmic staining of PSCA protein in Pca specimens (Figure 1). One possible explanation for this is that anti-PSCA antibody can recognize PSCA peptide precursors that reside in the cytoplasm. Also, it is possible that the positive staining that appears in the cytoplasm is actually from the overlying cell membrane [5]. These data seem to indicate that PSCA is a novel cell surface marker for human Pca.

Our results show that elevated level of PSCA expression correlates with high grade (i.e. poor differentiation), increased tumor stage and progression to androgen-independence of Pca. These findings support the original IHC analyses by Gu Z et al [9], who reported that PSCA protein expressed in 94% of primary Pca and the intensity of PSCA protein expression increased with tumor grade, stage and progression to androgen-independence. Our results also collaborate the recent work of Han KR et al [10], in which the significant association between high PSCA expression and adverse prognostic features such as high Gleason score, seminal vesicle invasion and capsular involvement in Pca was found. It is suggested that PSCA overexpression may be an adverse predictor for recurrence, clinical progression or survival of Pca. Hara H et al [11] used RT-PCR detection of PSA, PSMA and PSCA in 1 ml of peripheral blood to evaluate Pca patients with poor prognosis. The results showed that among 58 PCa patients, each PCR indicated the prognostic value in the hierarchy of PSCA>PSA>PSMA RT-PCR, and extraprostatic cases with positive PSCA PCR indicated lower disease-progression-free survival than those with negative PSCA PCR, demonstrating that PSCA can be used as a prognostic factor. Dubey P et al [12] reported that elevated numbers of PSCA + cells correlate positively with the onset and development of prostate carcinoma over a long time span in the prostates of the TRAMP and PTEN +/- models compared with its normal prostates. Taken together with our present findings, in which PSCA is overexpressed from HGPIN to almost frank carcinoma, it is reasonable and possible to use increased PSCA expression level or increased numbers of PSCA-positive cells in the prostate samples as a prognostic marker to predict the potential onset of this cancer. These data raise the possibility that PSCA may have diagnostic utility or clinical prognostic value in human Pca.

The cause of PSCA overexpression in Pca is not known. One possible mechanism is that it may result from PSCA gene amplification. In humans, PSCA is located on chromosome 8q24.2 [1], which is often amplified in metastatic and recurrent Pca and considered to indicate a poor prognosis [13-15]. Interestingly, PSCA is in close proximity to the c-myc oncogene, which is amplified in >20% of recurrent and metastatic prostate cancers [16,17]. Reiter RE et al [18] reported that PSCA and MYC gene copy numbers were co-amplified in 25% of tumors (five out of twenty), demonstrating that PSCA overexpression is associated with PSCA and MYC coamplification in Pca. Gu Z et al [9] recently reporteted that in 102 specimens available to compare the results of PSCA immunostaining with their previous mRNA ISH analysis, 92 (90.2%) had identically positive areas of PSCA protein and mRNA expression. Taken together with our findings, in which we detected moderate to strong expression of PSCA protein and mRNA in 34 of 40 (85%) Pca specimens examined simultaneously by IHC and ISH analyses, it is demonstrated that PSCA protein and mRNA overexpressed in human Pca, and that the increased protein level of PSCA was resulted from the upregulated transcription of its mRNA.

At present, the regulation mechanisms of human PSCA expression and its biological function are yet to be elucidated. PSCA expression may be regulated by multiple factors [18]. Watabe T et al [19] reported that transcriptional control is a major component regulating PSCA expression levels. In addition, induction of PSCA expression may be regulated or mediated through cell-cell contact and protein kinase C (PKC) [20]. Homologues of PSCA have diverse activities, and have themselves been involved in

carcinogenesis. Signalling through SCA-2 has been demonstrated to prevent apoptosis in immature thymocytes [21]. Thy-1 is involved in T cell activation and transducts signals through src-like tyrosine kinases [22]. Ly-6 genes have been implicated both in tumorigenesis and in cell-cell adhesion [23-25]. Cell-cell or cell-matrix interaction is critical for local tumor growth and spread to distal sites. From its restricted expression in basal cells of normal prostate and its homology to SCA-2, PSCA may play a role in stem/progenitor cell function, such as self-renewal (i.e. anti-apoptosis) and/or proliferation [1]. Taken together with the results in the present study, we speculate that PSCA may play a role in tumorigenesis and clinical progression of Pca through affecting cell transformation and proliferation. From our results, it is also suggested that PSCA as a new cell surface antigen may have a number of potential uses in the diagnosis, therapy and clinical prognosis of human Pca. PSCA overexpression in prostate biopsies could be used to identify patients at high risk to develop recurrent or metastatic disease, and to discriminate cancers from normal glands in prostatectomy samples. Similarly, the detection of PSCA-overexpressing cells in bone marrow or peripheral blood may identify and predict metastatic progression better than current assays, which identify only PSA-positive or PSMA-positive prostate cells.

In summary, we have shown in this study that PSCA protein and mRNA are maintained in expression from HGPIN through all stages of Pca in a majority of cases, which may be associated with prostate carcinogenesis and correlate positively with high tumor grade (poor cell differentiation), advanced stage and androgen-independent progression. PSCA protein overexpression is due to the upregulation of its mRNA transcription. The results suggest that PSCA may be a promising molecular marker for the clinical prognosis of human Pca and a valuable target for diagnosis and therapy of this tumor.

Competing interests

None declared.

References

1. Reiter RE, Gu Z, Watabe T, Thomas G, Szigeti K, David E, Wahl M, Nisitani S, Yamashiro J, Le Beau MM, Loda M, Witte ON: **Prostate stem cell antigen: a cell surface marker overexpressed in prostate cancer.** *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998, 95:1735-1740.
2. Gleason DF: **Histologic grading and clinical staging of prostatic carcinoma.** In: *Urologic Pathology: The Prostate* Edited by: Tannebaum M. Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger; 1977:171-197.
3. Brawer MK: **Prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia: a premalignant lesion.** *Hum Pathol* 1992, 23:242-248.
4. Amin MB, Ro JY, Ayala AC: **Prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia: relationship to adenocarcinoma of prostate.** *Pathol Annu* 1994, 29:1-30.
5. Amara N, Palapattu GS, Schrage M, Gu Z, Thomas GV, Dorey F, Said J, Reiter RE: **Prostate stem cell antigen is overexpressed in human transitional cell carcinoma.** *Cancer Res* 2001, 61:4660-4665.
6. Hanas JS, Lerner MR, Lightfoot SA, Raczkowski C, Kastens DJ, Brackett DJ, Postier RG: **Expression of the cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor p21 (WAF1/CIP1) and p53 tumor suppressor in dysplastic progression and adenocarcinoma in Barrett esophagus.** *Cancer (Phila)* 1999, 86:756-763.
7. Egevad L, Gramfors T, Karlberg L: **Prognostic value of the Gleason score in prostate cancer.** *BJU Int* 2002, 89:538-542.
8. Tran CP, Lin C, Yamashiro J, Reiter RE: **Prostate stem cell antigen is a marker of late intermediate prostate epithelial cells.** *Mol Cancer Res* 2002, 1:113-121.
9. Gu Z, Thomas G, Yamashiro J, Shintaku IP, Dorey F, Raitano A, Witte ON, Said JW, Loda M, Reiter RE: **Prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) expression increases with high Gleason score, advanced stage and bone metastasis in prostate cancer.** *Oncogene* 2000, 19:1288-1296.
10. Han KR, Seligson DB, Liu X, Horvath S, Shintaku PI, Thomas GV, Said JW, Reiter RE: **Prostate stem cell antigen expression is associated with gleason score, seminal vesicle invasion and capsular invasion in prostate cancer.** *J Urol* 2004, 171:1117-1121.
11. Hara H, Kasahara T, Kawasaki T, Bilim V, Obara K, Takahashi K, Tomita Y: **Reverse Transcription-Polymerase Chain Reaction Detection of Prostate-specific Antigen, Prostate-specific Membrane Antigen, and Prostate Stem Cell Antigen in One Milliliter of Peripheral Blood.** *Clin Cancer Res* 2002, 8:1794-1799.
12. Dubey P, Wu H, Reiter RE, Witte ON: **Alternative pathways to prostate carcinoma activate prostate stem cell antigen expression.** *Cancer Res* 2001, 61:3256-3261.
13. Visa korpi T, Kallioniemi AH, Syvanen AC, Hyytinen ER, Karhu R, Tammela T, Isola JJ, Kallioniemi OP: **Genetic changes in primary and recurrent prostate cancer by comparative genomic hybridization.** *Cancer Res* 1995, 55:342-347.
14. Sato K, Qian J, Slezak JM, Lieber MM, Bostwick DG, Bergstralh EJ, Jenkins RB: **Clinical significance of alterations of chromosome 8 in high-grade, advanced, nonmetastatic prostate carcinoma.** *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1999, 91:1574-1580.
15. Van Den Berg C, Guan XY, Von Hoff D, Jenkins R, Bittner , Griffin C, Kallioniemi O, Visakorpi , McGill , Herath J, Epstein J, Sarosdy M, Meltzer P, Trent J: **DNA sequence amplification in human prostate cancer identified by chromosome microdissection: potential prognostic implications.** *Clin Cancer Res* 1995, 1:11-18.
16. Jenkins RB, Qian J, Lieber MM, Bostwick DG: **Detection of c-myc oncogene amplification and chromosomal anomalies in metastatic prostatic carcinoma by fluorescence in situ hybridization.** *Cancer Res* 1997, 57:524-531.
17. Nupponen NN, Kakkola L, Koivisto P, Visakorpi T: **Genetic alterations in hormone-refractory recurrent prostate carcinomas.** *Am J Pathol* 1998, 153:141-148.
18. Reiter RE, Sato I, Thomas G, Qian J, Gu Z, Watabe T, Loda M, Jenkins RB: **Coamplification of prostate stem cell antigen (PSCA) and MYC in locally advanced prostate cancer.** *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 2000, 27:95-103.
19. Watabe T, Lin M, Donjacour AA, Cunha GR, Witte ON, Reiter RE: **Growth, regeneration, and tumorigenesis of the prostate activates the PSCA promoter.** *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002, 99:401-406.
20. Bahrenberg G, Brauers A, Joost HG, Jakse G: **PSCA expression is regulated by phorbol ester and cell adhesion in the bladder carcinoma cell line RT112.** *Cancer Lett* 2001, 168:37-43.
21. Noda S, Kosugi A, Saitoh S, Narumiya S, Hamaoka T: **Protection from anti-TCR/CD3-induced apoptosis in immature thymocytes by a signal through thymic shared antigen-1/stem cell antigen-2.** *J Exp Med* 1996, 183:2355-2360.
22. Thomas PM, Samelson LE: **The glycophosphatidylinositol-anchored Thy-1 molecule interacts with the p60fyn protein tyrosine kinase in T cells.** *J Biol Chem* 1992, 267:12317-12322.
23. Bamezai A, Rock KL: **Overexpressed Ly-6A.2 mediated cell-cell adhesion by binding a ligand expressed on lymphoid cells.** *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1995, 92:4294-4298.
24. Katz BZ, Eshel R, Sagi-Assif O, Witz IP: **An association between high Ly-6A/E expression on tumor cells and a highly malignant phenotype.** *Int J Cancer* 1994, 59:684-691.
25. Brakenhoff RH, Gerretsen M, Knippels EM, van Dijk M, van Essen H, Weghuis DO, Sinke RJ, Snow GB, van Dongen GA: **The human E48 antigen, highly homologous to the murine Ly-6 antigen ThB, is a GPI-anchored molecule apparently involved in keratinocyte cell-cell adhesion.** *J Cell Biol* 1995, 129:1677-1689.

EXHIBIT 13

Review

Translation Initiation in Cancer: A Novel Target for Therapy[1]

Funda Meric[2] and Kelly K. Hunt

Department of Surgical Oncology, The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, Texas 77030

Abstract

Translation initiation is regulated in response to nutrient availability and mitogenic stimulation and is coupled with cell cycle progression and cell growth. Several alterations in translational control occur in cancer. Variant mRNA sequences can alter the translational efficiency of individual mRNA molecules, which in turn play a role in cancer biology. Changes in the expression or availability of components of the translational machinery and in the activation of translation through signal transduction pathways can lead to more global changes, such as an increase in the overall rate of protein synthesis and translational activation of the mRNA molecules involved in cell growth and proliferation. We review the basic principles of translational control, the alterations encountered in cancer, and selected therapies targeting translation initiation to help elucidate new therapeutic avenues.

Introduction

The fundamental principle of molecular therapeutics in cancer is to exploit the differences in gene expression between cancer cells and normal cells. With the advent of cDNA array technology, most efforts have concentrated on identifying differences in gene expression at the level of mRNA, which can be attributable either to DNA amplification or to differences in transcription. Gene expression is quite complicated, however, and is also regulated at the level of mRNA stability, mRNA translation, and protein stability.

The power of translational regulation has been best recognized among developmental biologists, because transcription does not occur in early embryogenesis in eukaryotes. For example, in *Xenopus*, the period of transcriptional quiescence continues until the embryo reaches midblastula transition, the 4000-cell stage. Therefore, all necessary mRNA molecules are transcribed during oogenesis and stockpiled in a translationally inactive, masked form. The mRNA are translationally activated at appropriate times during oocyte maturation, fertilization, and early embryogenesis and thus, are under strict translational control.

Translation has an established role in cell growth. Basically, an increase in protein synthesis occurs as a consequence of mitogenesis. Until recently, however, little was known about the alterations in mRNA translation in cancer, and much is yet to be discovered about their role in the development and progression of cancer. Here we review the basic principles of translational control, the alterations encountered in cancer, and selected therapies targeting translation initiation to elucidate potential new therapeutic avenues.

Basic Principles of Translational Control

Mechanism of Translation Initiation

Translation initiation is the main step in translational regulation. Translation initiation is a complex process in which the initiator tRNA and the 40S and 60S ribosomal subunits are recruited to the 5′ end of a mRNA molecule and assembled by eukaryotic translation initiation factors into an 80S ribosome at the start codon of the mRNA (Fig. 1). The 5′ end of eukaryotic mRNA is capped, *i.e.*, contains the cap structure m^7GpppN (7-methylguanosine-triphospho-5′-ribonucleoside). Most translation in eukaryotes occurs in a cap-dependent fashion, *i.e.*, the cap is specifically recognized by the eIF4E,[3] which binds the 5′ cap. The eIF4F translation initiation complex is then formed by the assembly of eIF4E, the RNA helicase eIF4A, and eIF4G, a scaffolding protein that mediates the binding of the 40S ribosomal subunit to the mRNA molecule through interaction with the eIF3 protein present on the 40S ribosome. eIF4A and eIF4B participate in melting the secondary structure of the 5′ UTR of the mRNA. The 43S initiation complex (40S/eIF2/Met-tRNA/GTP complex) scans the mRNA in a 5′→3′ direction until it encounters an AUG start codon. This start codon is then base-paired to the anticodon of initiator tRNA, forming the 48S initiation complex. The initiation factors are then displaced from the 48S complex, and the 60S ribosome joins to form the 80S ribosome.

Unlike most eukaryotic translation, translation initiation of certain mRNAs, such as the picornavirus RNA, is cap independent and occurs by internal ribosome entry. This mechanism does not require eIF4E. Either the 43S complex can bind the initiation codon directly through interaction with the IRES in the 5′ UTR such as in the encephalomyocarditis virus, or it can

Received 5/16/02; revised 7/12/02; accepted 7/22/02.

[1] F. M. is supported by The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center Physician-Scientist Program and by NIH Grant 1KO8-CA 91895-01. K. K. H. is supported by Department of Defense Award DAMD-17-97-1-7162.

[2] To whom requests for reprints should be addressed, at Department of Surgical Oncology, Box 444, The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, 1515 Holcombe Boulevard, Houston, TX 77030. Phone: (713) 745-4453; Fax: (713) 745-4926; E-mail: fmeric@mdanderson.org.

[3] The abbreviations used are: eIF4E, eukaryotic initiation factor 4E; UTR, untranslated region; IRES, internal ribosome entry site; 4E-BP1, eukaryotic initiation factor 4E-binding protein 1; S6K, ribosomal p70 S6 kinase; mTOR, mammalian target of rapamycin; ATM, ataxia telangiectasia mutated; PI3K, phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase; PTEN, phosphatase and tensin homolog deleted from chromosome 10; PP2A, protein phosphatase 2A; TGF-β3, transforming growth factor-β3; PAP, poly(A) polymerase; EPA, eicosopentaenoic acid; *mda-7*, melanoma differentiation-associated gene 7.

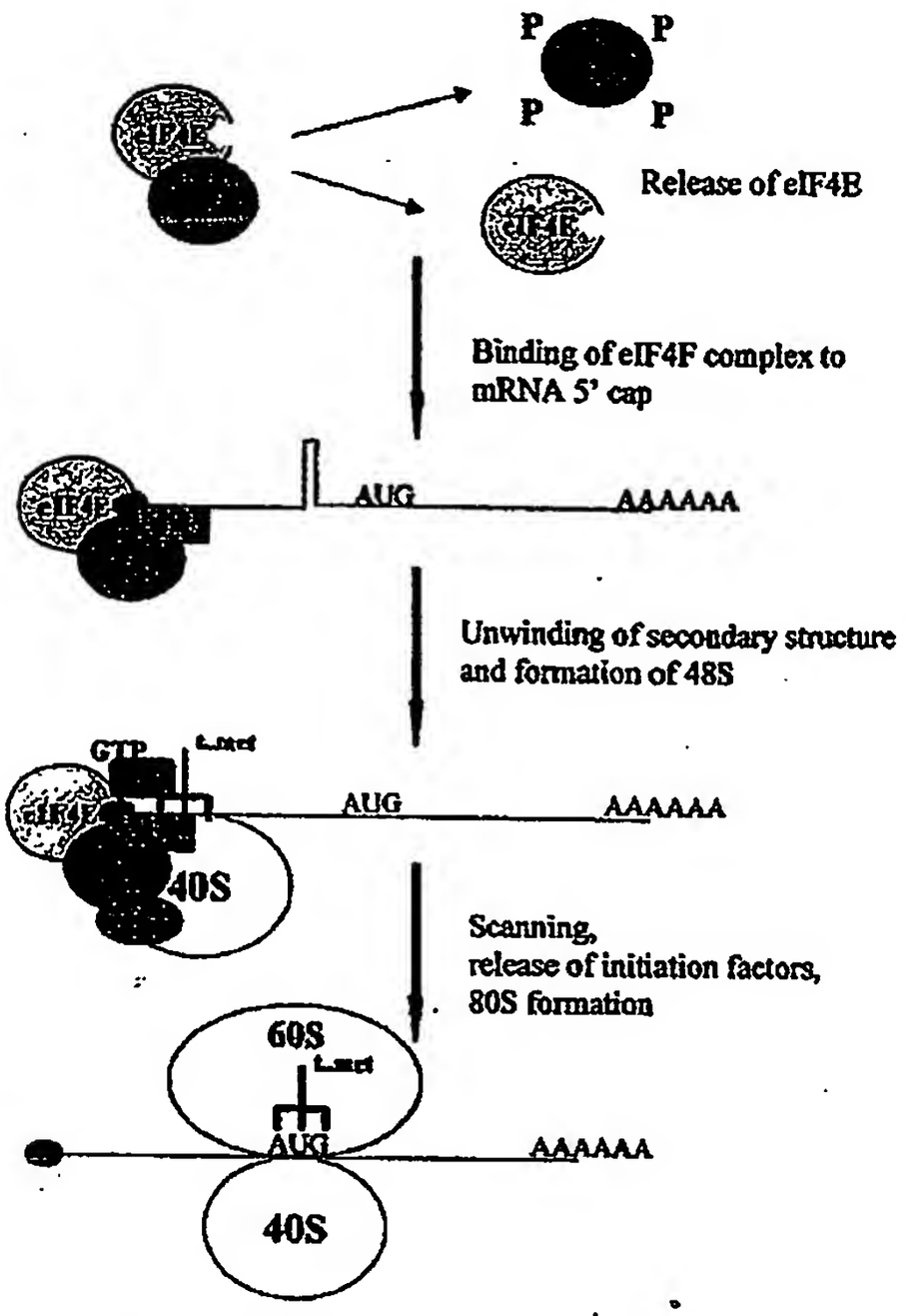


Fig. 1. Translation initiation in eukaryotes. The 4E-BPs are hyperphosphorylated to release eIF4E so that it can interact with the 5′ cap, and the eIF4F initiation complex is assembled. The interaction of poly(A) binding protein with the initiation complex and circularization of the mRNA is not depicted in the diagram. The secondary structure of the 5′ UTR is melted, the 40S ribosomal subunit is bound to eIF3, and the ternary complex consisting of eIF2, GTP, and the Met-tRNA are recruited to the mRNA. The ribosome scans the mRNA in a 5′→3′ direction until an AUG start codon is found in the appropriate sequence context. The initiation factors are released, and the large ribosomal subunit is recruited.

initially attach to the IRES and then reach the initiation codon by scanning or transfer, as is the case with the poliovirus (1).

Regulation of Translation Initiation

Translation initiation can be regulated by alterations in the expression or phosphorylation status of the various factors involved. Key components in translational regulation that may provide potential therapeutic targets follow.

eIF4E. eIF4E plays a central role in translation regulation. It is the least abundant of the initiation factors and is considered the rate-limiting component for initiation of cap-dependent translation. eIF4E may also be involved in mRNA splicing, mRNA 3′ processing, and mRNA nucleocytoplasmic transport (2). eIF4E expression can be increased at the transcriptional level in response to serum or growth factors (3). eIF4E overexpression may cause preferential translation of mRNAs containing excessive secondary structure in their 5′ UTR that are normally discriminated against by the translational machinery and thus are inefficiently translated (4–7). As examples of this, overexpression of eIF4E promotes increased translation of vascular endothelial growth factor, fibroblast growth factor-2, and cyclin D1 (2, 8, 9).

Another mechanism of control is the regulation of eIF4E phosphorylation. eIF4E phosphorylation is mediated by the mitogen-activated protein kinase-interacting kinase 1, which is activated by the mitogen-activated pathway activating extracellular signal-related kinases and the stress-activated pathway acting through p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase (10–13). Several mitogens, such as serum, platelet-derived growth factor, epidermal growth factor, insulin, angiotensin II, src kinase overexpression, and ras overexpression, lead to eIF4E phosphorylation (14). The phosphorylation status of eIF4E is usually correlated with the translational rate and growth status of the cell; however; eIF4E phosphorylation has also been observed in response to some cellular stresses when translational rates actually decrease (15). Thus, further study is needed to understand the effects of eIF4E phosphorylation on eIF4E activity.

Another mechanism of regulation is the alteration of eIF4E availability by the binding of eIF4E to the eIF4E-binding proteins (4E-BP, also known as PHAS-I). 4E-BPs compete with eIF4G for a binding site in eIF4E. The binding of eIF4E to the best characterized eIF4E-binding protein, 4E-BP1, is regulated by 4E-BP1 phosphorylation. Hypophosphorylated 4E-BP1 binds to eIF4E, whereas 4E-BP1 hyperphosphorylation decreases this binding. Insulin, angiotensin, epidermal growth factor, platelet-derived growth factor, hepatocyte growth factor, nerve growth factor, insulin-like growth factors I and II, interleukin 3, granulocyte–macrophage colony-stimulating factor + steel factor, gastrin, and the adenovirus have all been reported to induce phosphorylation of 4E-BP1 and to decrease the ability of 4E-BP1 to bind eIF4E (15, 16). Conversely, deprivation of nutrients or growth factors results in 4E-BP1 dephosphorylation, an increase in eIF4E binding, and a decrease in cap-dependent translation.

p70 S6 Kinase. Phosphorylation of ribosomal 40S protein S6 by S6K is thought to play an important role in translational regulation. S6K −/− mouse embryonic cells proliferate more slowly than do parental cells, demonstrating that S6K has a positive influence on cell proliferation (17). S6K regulates the translation of a group of mRNAs possessing a 5′ terminal oligopyrimidine tract (5′ TOP) found at the 5′ UTR of ribosomal protein mRNAs and other mRNAs coding for components of the translational machinery. Phosphorylation of S6K is regulated in part based on the availability of nutrients (18, 19) and is stimulated by several growth factors, such as platelet-derived growth factor and insulin-like growth factor I (20).

eIF2α Phosphorylation. The binding of the initiator tRNA to the small ribosomal unit is mediated by translation initiation factor eIF2. Phosphorylation of the α-subunit of eIF2 prevents formation of the eIF2/GTP/Met-tRNA complex and inhibits global protein synthesis (21, 22). eIF2α is phosphorylated under a variety of conditions, such as viral infection, nutrient deprivation, heme deprivation, and apoptosis (22). eIF2α is phosphorylated by heme-regulated inhibitor, nutrient-regulated protein kinase, and the IFN-induced, double-stranded RNA-activated protein kinase (PKR; Ref. 23).

The mTOR Signaling Pathway. The macrolide antibiotic rapamycin (Sirolimus; Wyeth-Ayerst Research, Collegeville, PA) has been the subject of intensive study because it inhibits signal transduction pathways involved in T-cell activation. The rapamycin-sensitive component of these pathways is mTOR (also called FRAP or RAFT1). mTOR is the mammalian homologue of the yeast TOR proteins that regulate G_1 progression and translation in response to nutrient availability (24). mTOR is a serine-threonine kinase that modulates translation initiation by altering the phosphorylation status of 4E-BP1 and S6K (Fig. 2; Ref. 25).

4E-BP1 is phosphorylated on multiple residues. mTOR phosphorylates the Thr-37 and Thr-46 residues of 4E-BP1 *in vitro* (26); however, phosphorylation at these sites is not associated with a loss of eIF4E binding. Phosphorylation of Thr-37 and Thr-46 is required for subsequent phosphorylation at several COOH-terminal, serum-sensitive sites; a combination of these phosphorylation events appears to be needed to inhibit the binding of 4E-BP1 to eIF4E (25). The product of the *ATM* gene, p38/MSK1 pathway, and protein kinase Cσ also play a role in 4E-BP1 phosphorylation (27–29).

S6K and 4E-BP1 are also regulated, in part, by PI3K and its downstream protein kinase Akt. PTEN is a phosphatase that negatively regulates PI3K signaling. PTEN null cells have constitutively active of Akt, with increased S6K activity and S6 phosphorylation (30). S6K activity is inhibited both by PI3K inhibitors wortmannin and LY294002 and by mTOR inhibitor rapamycin (24). Akt phosphorylates Ser-2448 in mTOR *in vitro*, and this site is phosphorylated upon Akt activation *in vivo* (31–33). Thus, mTOR is regulated by the PI3K/Akt pathway; however, this does not appear to be the only mode of regulation of mTOR activity. Whether the PI3K pathway also regulates S6K and 4E-BP1 phosphorylation independent of mTOR is controversial.

Interestingly, mTOR autophosphorylation is blocked by wortmannin but not by rapamycin (34). This seeming inconsistency suggests that mTOR-responsive regulation of 4E-BP1 and S6K activity occurs through a mechanism other than intrinsic mTOR kinase activity. An alternate pathway for 4E-BP1 and S6K phosphorylation by mTOR activity is by the inhibition of a phosphatase. Treatment with calyculin A, an inhibitor of phosphatases 1 and 2A, reduces rapamycin-induced dephosphorylation of 4E-BP1 and S6K by rapamycin (35). PP2A interacts with full-length S6K but not with a S6K mutant that is resistant to dephosphorylation resulting from rapamycin. mTOR phosphorylates PP2A *in vitro*; however, how this process alters PP2A activity is not known. These results are consistent with the model that phosphorylation of a phosphatase by mTOR prevents dephosphorylation of 4E-BP1 and S6K, and conversely, that nutrient deprivation and rapamycin block inhibition of the phosphatase by mTOR.

Polyadenylation. The poly(A) tail in eukaryotic mRNA is important in enhancing translation initiation and mRNA stability. Polyadenylation plays a key role in regulating gene expression during oogenesis and early embryogenesis. Some mRNA that are translationally inactive in the oocyte are polyadenylated concomitantly with translational activation in oocyte maturation, whereas other mRNAs that are translationally active during oogenesis are deadenylated and translationally silenced (36–38). Thus, control of poly(A) tail synthesis is an important regulatory step in gene expression. The 5′ cap and poly(A) tail are thought to function synergistically to regulate mRNA translational efficiency (39, 40).

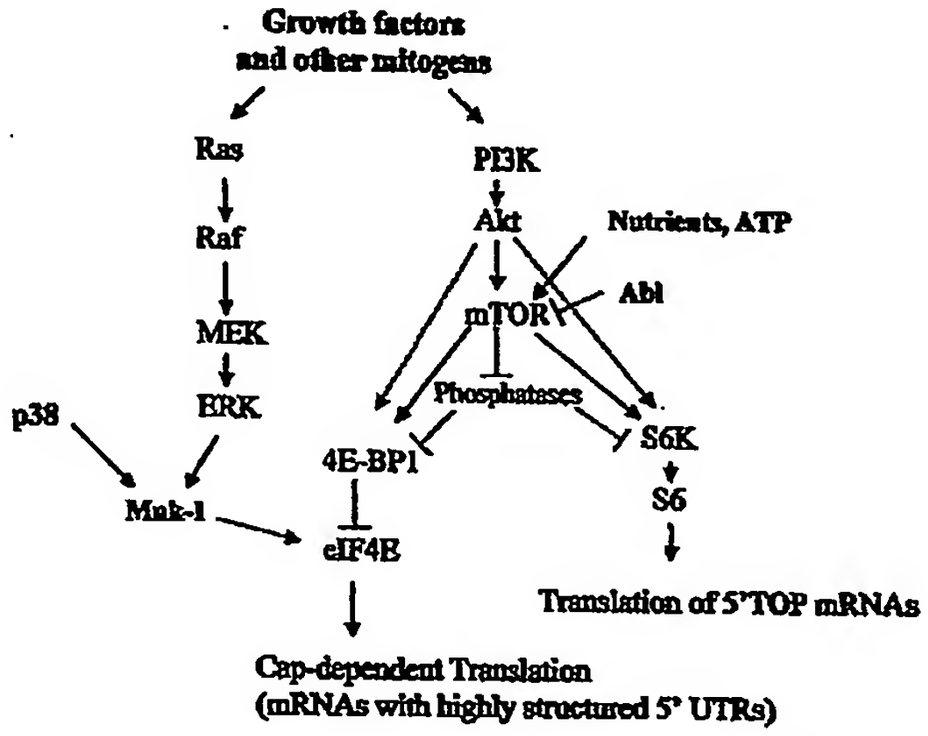


Fig. 2. Regulation of translation initiation by signal transduction pathways. Signaling via p38, extracellular signal-related kinase, PI3K, and mTOR can all activate translation initiation.

RNA Packaging. Most RNA-binding proteins are assembled on a transcript at the time of transcription, thus determining the translational fate of the transcript (41). A highly conserved family of Y-box proteins is found in cytoplasmic messenger ribonucleoprotein particles, where the proteins are thought to play a role in restricting the recruitment of mRNA to the translational machinery (41–43). The major mRNA-associated protein, YB-1, destabilizes the interaction of eIF4E and the 5′ mRNA cap *in vitro*, and overexpression of YB-1 results in translational repression *in vivo* (44). Thus, alterations in RNA packaging can also play an important role in translational regulation.

Translation Alterations Encountered in Cancer

Three main alterations at the translational level occur in cancer: variations in mRNA sequences that increase or decrease translational efficiency, changes in the expression or availability of components of the translational machinery, and activation of translation through aberrantly activated signal transduction pathways. The first alteration affects the translation of an individual mRNA that may play a role in carcinogenesis. The second and third alterations can lead to more global changes, such as an increase in the overall rate of protein synthesis, and the translational activation of several mRNA species.

Variations in mRNA Sequence

Variations in mRNA sequence affect the translational efficiency of the transcript. A brief description of these variations and examples of each mechanism follow.

Mutations. Mutations in the mRNA sequence, especially in the 5′ UTR, can alter its translational efficiency, as seen in the following examples.

c-myc. Saito *et al.* proposed that translation of full-length c-*myc* is repressed, whereas in several Burkitt lymphomas that have deletions of the mRNA 5′ UTR, translation of c-*myc* is more efficient (45). More recently, it was reported that the 5′ UTR of c-*myc* contains an IRES, and thus c-*myc* translation can be initiated by a cap-independent as well as a cap-dependent mechanism (46, 47). In patients with multiple myeloma, a C→T mutation in the c-myc IRES was identified (48) and found to cause an enhanced initiation of translation via internal ribosomal entry (49).

BRCA1. A somatic point mutation (117 G→C) in position −3 with respect to the start codon of the *BRCA1* gene was identified in a highly aggressive sporadic breast cancer (50). Chimeric constructs consisting of the wild-type or mutated *BRCA1* 5′ UTR and a downstream luciferase reporter demonstrated a decrease in the translational efficiency with the 5′ UTR mutation.

Cyclin-dependent Kinase Inhibitor 2A. Some inherited melanoma kindreds have a G→T transversion at base −34 of cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor-2A, which encodes a cyclin-dependent kinase 4/cyclin-dependent kinase 6 kinase inhibitor important in G_1 checkpoint regulation (51). This mutation gives rise to a novel AUG translation initiation codon, creating an upstream open reading frame that competes for scanning ribosomes and decreases translation from the wild-type AUG.

Alternate Splicing and Alternate Transcription Start Sites. Alterations in splicing and alternate transcription sites can lead to variations in 5′ UTR sequence, length, and secondary structure, ultimately impacting translational efficiency.

ATM. The *ATM* gene has four noncoding exons in its 5′ UTR that undergo extensive alternative splicing (52). The contents of 12 different 5′ UTRs that show considerable diversity in length and sequence have been identified. These divergent 5′ leader sequences play an important role in the translational regulation of the *ATM* gene.

mdm. In a subset of tumors, overexpression of the oncoprotein mdm2 results in enhanced translation of the *mdm2* mRNA. Use of different promoters leads to two *mdm2* transcripts that differ only in their 5′ leaders (53). The longer 5′ UTR contains two upstream open reading frames, and this mRNA is loaded with ribosomes inefficiently compared with the short 5′ UTR.

BRCA1. In a normal mammary gland, *BRCA1* mRNA is expressed with a shorter leader sequence (5′UTRa), whereas in sporadic breast cancer tissue, *BRCA1* mRNA is expressed with a longer leader sequence (5′ UTRb); the translational efficiency of transcripts containing 5′ UTRb is 10 times lower than that of transcripts containing 5′ UTRa (54).

TGF-β3. *TGF-β3* mRNA includes a 1.1-kb 5′ UTR, which exerts an inhibitory effect on translation. Many human breast cancer cell lines contain a novel *TGF-β3* transcript with a 5′ UTR that is 870 nucleotides shorter and has a 7-fold greater translational efficiency than the normal *TGF-β3* mRNA (55).

Alternate Polyadenylation Sites. Multiple polyadenylation signals leading to the generation of several transcripts with differing 3′ UTR have been described for several mRNA species, such as the *RET* proto-oncogene (56), *ATM* gene (52), tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases-3 (57), *RHOA* proto-oncogene (58), and calmodulin-I (59). Although the effect of these alternate 3′ UTRs on translation is not yet known, they may be important in RNA-protein interactions that affect translational recruitment. The role of these alterations in cancer development and progression is unknown.

Alterations in the Components of the Translation Machinery

Alterations in the components of translation machinery can take many forms.

Overexpresssion of eIF4E. Overexpression of eIF4E causes malignant transformation in rodent cells (60) and the deregulation of HeLa cell growth (61). Polunovsky *et al.* (62) found that eIF4E overexpression substitutes for serum and individual growth factors in preserving viability of fibroblasts, which suggests that eIF4E can mediate both proliferative and survival signaling.

Elevated levels of eIF4E mRNA have been found in a broad spectrum of transformed cell lines (63). eIF4E levels are elevated in all ductal carcinoma *in situ* specimens and invasive ductal carcinomas, compared with benign breast specimens evaluated with Western blot analysis (64, 65). Preliminary studies suggest that this overexpression is attributable to gene amplification (66).

There are accumulating data suggesting that eIF4E overexpression can be valuable as a prognostic marker. eIF4E overexpression was found in a retrospective study to be a marker of poor prognosis in stages I to III breast carcinoma (67). Verification of the prognostic value of eIF4E in breast cancer is now under way in a prospective trial (67). However, in a different study, eIF4E expression was correlated with the aggressive behavior of non-Hodgkin's lymphomas (68). In a prospective analysis of patients with head and neck cancer, elevated levels of eIF4E in histologically tumor-free surgical margins predicted a significantly increased risk of local-regional recurrence (9). These results all suggest that eIF4E overexpression can be used to select patients who might benefit from more aggressive systemic therapy. Furthermore, the head and neck cancer data suggest that eIF4E overexpression is a field defect and can be used to guide local therapy.

Alterations in Other Initiation Factors. Alterations in a number of other initiation factors have been associated with cancer. Overproduction of eIF4G, similar to eIF4E, leads to malignant transformation *in vitro* (69). eIF-2α is found in increased levels in bronchioloalveolar carcinomas of the lung (3). Initiation factor eIF-4A1 is overexpressed in melanoma (70) and hepatocellular carcinoma (71). The p40 subunit of translation initiation factor 3 is amplified and overexpressed in breast and prostate cancer (72), and the eIF3-p110 subunit is overexpressed in testicular seminoma (73). The role that overexpression of these initiation factors plays on the development and progression of cancer, if any, is not known.

Overexpression of S6K. S6K is amplified and highly overexpressed in the MCF7 breast cancer cell line, compared with normal mammary epithelium (74). In a study by Barlund *et al.* (74), S6K was amplified in 59 of 668 primary breast tumors, and a statistically significant association was observed between amplification and poor prognosis.

Overexpression of PAP. PAP catalyzes 3′ poly(A) synthesis. PAP is overexpressed in human cancer cells compared with normal and virally transformed cells (75). PAP enzymatic activity in breast tumors has been correlated with PAP protein levels (76) and, in mammary tumor cytosols, was found to be an independent factor for predicting survival (76). Little is known, however, about how PAP expression or activity affects the translational profile.

Alterations in RNA-binding Proteins. Even less is known about alterations in RNA packaging in cancer. Increased expression and nuclear localization of the RNA-binding protein YB-1 are indicators of a poor prognosis for breast cancer (77), non-small cell lung cancer (78), and ovarian cancer (79). However, this effect may be mediated at least in part at the level of transcription, because YB-1 increases chemoresistance by enhancing the transcription of a multidrug resistance gene (80).

Activation of Signal Transduction Pathways

Activation of signal transduction pathways by loss of tumor suppressor genes or overexpression of certain tyrosine kinases can contribute to the growth and aggressiveness of tumors. An important mutant in human cancers is the tumor suppressor gene *PTEN*, which leads to the activation of the PI3K/Akt pathway. Activation of PI3K and Akt induces the oncogenic transformation of chicken embryo fibroblasts. The transformed cells show constitutive phosphorylation of S6K and of 4E-BP1 (81). A mutant Akt that retains kinase activity but does not phosphorylate S6K or 4E-BP1 does not transform fibroblasts, which suggests a correlation between the oncogenicity of PI3K and Akt and the phosphorylation of S6K and 4E-BP1 (81).

Several tyrosine kinases such as platelet-derived growth factor, insulin-like growth factor, HER2/neu, and epidermal growth factor receptor are overexpressed in cancer. Because these kinases activate downstream signal transduction pathways known to alter translation initiation, activation of translation is likely to contribute to the growth and aggressiveness of these tumors. Furthermore, the mRNA for many of these kinases themselves are under translational control. For example, HER2/neu mRNA is translationally controlled both by a short upstream open reading frame that represses HER2/neu translation in a cell type-independent manner and by a distinct cell type-dependent mechanism that increases translational efficiency (82). HER2/neu translation is different in transformed and normal cells. Thus, it is possible that alterations at the translational level can in part account for the discrepancy between *HER2/neu* gene amplification detected by fluorescence *in situ* hybridization and protein levels detected by immunohistochemical assays.

Translation Targets of Selected Cancer Therapy

Components of the translation machinery and signal pathways involved in the activation of translation initiation represent good targets for cancer therapy.

Targeting the mTOR Signaling Pathway: Rapamycin and Tumstatin

Rapamycin inhibits the proliferation of lymphocytes. It was initially developed as an immunosuppressive drug for organ transplantation. Rapamycin with FKBP 12 (FK506-binding protein, M_r 12,000) binds to mTOR to inhibit its function.

Rapamycin causes a small but significant reduction in the initiation rate of protein synthesis (83). It blocks cell growth in part by blocking S6 phosphorylation and selectively suppressing the translation of 5′ TOP mRNAs, such as ribosomal proteins, and elongation factors (83–85). Rapamycin also blocks 4E-BP1 phosphorylation and inhibits cap-dependent but not cap-independent translation (17, 86).

The rapamycin-sensitive signal transduction pathway, activated during malignant transformation and cancer progression, is now being studied as a target for cancer therapy (87). Prostate, breast, small cell lung, glioblastoma, melanoma, and T-cell leukemia are among the cancer lines most sensitive to the rapamycin analogue CCI-779 (Wyeth-Ayerst Research; Ref. 87). In rhabdomyosarcoma cell lines, rapamycin is either cytostatic or cytocidal, depending on the p53 status of the cell; p53 wild-type cells treated with rapamycin arrest in the G_1 phase and maintain their viability, whereas p53 mutant cells accumulate in G_1 and undergo apoptosis (88, 89). In a recently reported study using human primitive neuroectodermal tumor and medulloblastoma models, rapamycin exhibited more cytotoxicity in combination with cisplatin and camptothecin than as a single agent. *In vivo*, CCI-779 delayed growth of xenografts by 160% after 1 week of therapy and 240% after 2 weeks. A single high-dose administration caused a 37% decrease in tumor volume. Growth inhibition *in vivo* was 1.3 times greater, with cisplatin in combination with CCI-779 than with cisplatin alone (90). Thus, preclinical studies suggest that rapamycin analogues are useful as single agents and in combination with chemotherapy.

Rapamycin analogues CCI-779 and RAD001 (Novartis, Basel, Switzerland) are now in clinical trials. Because of the known effect of rapamycin on lymphocyte proliferation, a potential problem with rapamycin analogues is immunosuppression. However, although prolonged immunosuppression can result from rapamycin and CCI-779 administered on continuous-dose schedules, the immunosuppressive effects of rapamycin analogues resolve in ~24 h after therapy (91). The principal toxicities of CCI-779 have included dermatological toxicity, myelosuppression, infection, mucositis, diarrhea, reversible elevations in liver function tests, hyperglycemia, hypokalemia, hypocalcemia, and depression (87, 92–94). Phase II trials of CCI-779 have been conducted in advanced renal cell carcinoma and in stage III/IV breast carcinoma patients who failed with prior chemotherapy. In the results reported in abstract form, although there were no complete responses, partial responses were documented in both renal cell carcinoma and in breast carcinoma (94, 95). Thus, CCI-779 has documented preliminary clinical activity in a previously treated, unselected patient population.

Active investigation is under way into patient selection for mTOR inhibitors. Several studies have found an enhanced efficacy of CCI-779 in PTEN-null tumors (30, 96). Another study found that six of eight breast cancer cell lines were responsive to CCI-779, although only two of these lines lacked PTEN (97) There was, however, a positive correlation between Akt activation and CCI-779 sensitivity (97). This correlation suggests that activation of the PI3K-Akt pathway,

regardless of whether it is attributable to a PTEN mutation or to overexpression of receptor tyrosine kinases, makes cancer cell amenable to mTOR-directed therapy. In contrast, lower levels of the target of mTOR, 4E-BP1, are associated with rapamycin resistance; thus, a lower 4E-BP1/eIF4E ratio may predict rapamycin resistance (98).

Another mode of activity for rapamycin and its analogues appears to be through inhibition of angiogenesis. This activity may be both through direct inhibition of endothelial cell proliferation as a result of mTOR inhibition in these cells or by inhibition of translation of such proangiogenic factors as vascular endothelial growth factor in tumor cells (99, 100).

The angiogenesis inhibitor tumstatin, another anticancer drug currently under study, was also found recently to inhibit translation in endothelial cells (101). Through a requisite interaction with integrin, tumstatin inhibits activation of the PI3K/Akt pathway and mTOR in endothelial cells and prevents dissociation of eIF4E from 4E-BP1, thereby inhibiting cap-dependent translation. These findings suggest that endothelial cells are especially sensitive to therapies targeting the mTOR-signaling pathway.

Targeting eIF2α: EPA, Clotrimazole, mda-7, and Flavonoids

EPA is an n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid found in the fish-based diets of populations having a low incidence of cancer (102). EPA inhibits the proliferation of cancer cells (103), as well as in animal models (104, 105). It blocks cell division by inhibiting translation initiation (105). EPA releases Ca^{2+} from intracellular stores while inhibiting their refilling, thereby activating PKR. PKR, in turn phosphorylates and inhibits eIF2α, resulting in the inhibition of protein synthesis at the level of translation initiation. Similarly, clotrimazole, a potent antiproliferative agent *in vitro* and *in vivo*, inhibits cell growth through depletion of Ca^{2+} stores, activation of PKR, and phosphorylation of eIF2α (106). Consequently, clotrimazole preferentially decreases the expression of cyclins A, E, and D1, resulting in blockage of the cell cycle in G_1.

mda-7 is a novel tumor suppressor gene being developed as a gene therapy agent. Adenoviral transfer of *mda-7* (Ad-mda7) induces apoptosis in many cancer cells including breast, colorectal, and lung cancer (107–109). Ad-mda7 also induces and activates PKR, which leads to phosphorylation of eIF2α and induction of apoptosis (110).

Flavonoids such as genistein and quercetin suppress tumor cell growth. All three mammalian eIF2α kinases, PKR, heme-regulated inhibitor, and PERK/PEK, are activated by flavonoids, with phosphorylation of eIF2α and inhibition of protein synthesis (111).

Targeting eIF4A and eIF4E: Antisense RNA and Peptides

Antisense expression of eIF4A decreases the proliferation rate of melanoma cells (112). Sequestration of eIF4E by overexpression of 4E-BP1 is proapoptotic and decreases tumorigenicity (113, 114). Reduction of eIF4E with antisense RNA decreases soft agar growth, increases tumor latency, and increases the rates of tumor doubling times (7). Antisense eIF4E RNA treatment also reduces the expression of angiogenic factors (115) and has been proposed as a potential adjuvant therapy for head and neck cancers, particularly when elevated eIF4E is found in surgical margins. Small molecule inhibitors that bind the eIF4G/4E-BP1-binding domain of eIF4E are proapoptotic (116) and are also being actively pursued.

Exploiting Selective Translation for Gene Therapy

A different therapeutic approach that takes advantage of the enhanced cap-dependent translation in cancer cells is the use of gene therapy vectors encoding suicide genes with highly structured 5′ UTR. These mRNA would thus be at a competitive disadvantage in normal cells and not translate well, whereas in cancer cells, they would translate more efficiently. For example, the introduction of the 5′ UTR of fibroblast growth factor-2 5′ to the coding sequence of *herpes simplex virus type-1 thymidine kinase* gene, allows for selective translation of *herpes simplex virus type-1 thymidine kinase* gene in breast cancer cell lines compared with normal mammary cell lines and results in selective sensitivity to ganciclovir (117).

Toward the Future

Translation is a crucial process in every cell. However, several alterations in translational control occur in cancer. Cancer cells appear to need an aberrantly activated translational state for survival, thus allowing the targeting of translation initiation with surprisingly low toxicity. Components of the translational machinery, such as eIF4E, and signal transduction pathways involved in translation initiation, such mTOR, represent promising targets for cancer therapy. Inhibitors of the mTOR have already shown some preliminary activity in clinical trials. It is possible that with the development of better predictive markers and better patient selection, response rates to single-agent therapy can be improved. Similar to other cytostatic agents, however, mTOR inhibitors are most likely to achieve clinical utility in combination therapy. In the interim, our increasing understanding of translation initiation and signal transduction pathways promise to lead to the identification of new therapeutic targets in the near future.

Acknowledgments

We thank Gayle Nesom from The University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center Department of Scientific Publications for editorial assistance and Dr. Elmer Bernstam for assistance with manuscript preparation.

References

1. Pestova, T. V., Kolupaeva, V. G., Lomakin, I. B., Pilipenko, E. V., Shatsky, I. N., Agol, V. I., and Hellen, C. U. Molecular mechanisms of translation initiation in eukaryotes. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *98:* 7029–7036, 2001.

2. Rosenwald, I. B., Kaspar, R., Rousseau, D., Gehrke, L., Leboulch, P., Chen, J. J., Schmidt, E. V., Sonenberg, N., and London, I. M. Eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4E regulates expression of cyclin D1 at transcriptional and post-transcriptional levels. J. Biol. Chem., *270:* 21176–21180, 1995.

3. Rosenwald, I. B., Hutzler, M. J., Wang, S., Savas, L., and Fraire, A. E. Expression of eukaryotic translation initiation factors 4E and 2α is increased frequently in bronchioloalveolar but not in squamous cell carcinomas of the lung. Cancer (Phila.), *92:* 2164–2171, 2001.

4. Darveau, A., Pelletier, J., and Sonenberg, N. Differential efficiencies of *in vitro* translation of mouse c-myc transcripts differing in the 5' untranslated region. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *82:* 2315–2319, 1985.

5. Kozak, M. Influences of mRNA secondary structure on initiation by eukaryotic ribosomes. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *83:* 2850–2854, 1986.

6. Koromilas, A. E., Lazaris-Keratzas, A., and Sonenberg, N. mRNAs containing extensive secondary structure in their 5' non-coding region translate efficiently in cells overexpressing initiation factor eIF-4E. EMBO J., *11:* 4153–4158, 1992.

7. Rinker-Schaeffer, C. W., Graff, J. R., De Benedetti, A., Zimmer, S. G., and Rhoads, R. E. Decreasing the level of translation initiation factor 4E with antisense RNA causes reversal of ras-mediated transformation and tumorigenesis of cloned rat embryo fibroblasts. Int. J. Cancer, *55:* 841–847, 1993.

8. Kevil, C. G., De Benedetti, A., Payne, D. K., Coe, L. L., Laroux, F. S., and Alexander, J. S. Translational regulation of vascular permeability factor by eukaryotic initiation factor 4E: implications for tumor angiogenesis. Int. J. Cancer, *65:* 785–790, 1996.

9. Nathan, C. A., Franklin, S., Abreo, F. W., Nassar, R., De Benedetti, A., and Glass, J. Analysis of surgical margins with the molecular marker eIF4E: a prognostic factor in patients with head and neck cancer. J. Clin. Oncol., *17:* 2909–2914, 1999.

10. Fukunaga, R., and Hunter, T. MNK1, a new MAP kinase-activated protein kinase, isolated by a novel expression screening method for identifying protein kinase substrates. EMBO J., *16:* 1921–1933, 1997.

11. Waskiewicz, A. J., Flynn, A., Proud, C. G., and Cooper, J. A. Mitogen-activated protein kinases activate the serine/threonine kinases Mnk1 and Mnk2. EMBO J., *16:* 1909–1920, 1997.

12. Wang, X., Flynn, A., Waskiewicz, A. J., Webb, B. L., Vries, R. G., Baines, I. A., Cooper, J. A., and Proud, C. G. The phosphorylation of eukaryotic initiation factor eIF4E in response to phorbol esters, cell stresses, and cytokines is mediated by distinct MAP kinase pathways. J. Biol. Chem., *273:* 9373–9377, 1998.

13. Pyronnet, S., Imataka, H., Gingras, A. C., Fukunaga, R., Hunter, T., and Sonenberg, N. Human eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4G (eIF4G) recruits Mnk1 to phosphorylate eIF4E. EMBO J., *18:* 270–279, 1999.

14. Kleijn, M., Scheper, G. C., Voorma, H. O., and Thomas, A. A. Regulation of translation initiation factors by signal transduction. Eur. J. Biochem., *253:* 531–544, 1998.

15. Raught, B., and Gingras, A. C. eIF4E activity is regulated at multiple levels. Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol., *31:* 43–57, 1999.

16. Takeuchi, K., Shibamoto, S., Nagamine, K., Shigemori, I., Omura, S., Kitamura, N., and Ito, F. Signaling pathways leading to transcription and translation cooperatively regulate the transient increase in expression of c-Fos protein. J. Biol. Chem., *276:* 26077–26083, 2001.

17. Kawasome, H., Papst, P., Webb, S., Keller, G. M., Johnson, G. L., Gelfand, E. W., and Terada, N. Targeted disruption of p70(s6k) defines its role in protein synthesis and rapamycin sensitivity. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *95:* 5033–5038, 1998.

18. Christie, G. R., Hajduch, E., Hundal, H. S., Proud, C. G., and Taylor, P. M. Intracellular sensing of amino acids in *Xenopus laevis* oocytes stimulates p70 S6 kinase in a target of rapamycin-dependent manner. J. Biol. Chem., *277:* 9952–9957, 2002.

19. Hara, K., Yonezawa, K., Weng, Q. P., Kozlowski, M. T., Belham, C., and Avruch, J. Amino acid sufficiency and mTOR regulate p70 S6 kinase and eIF-4E BP1 through a common effector mechanism. J. Biol. Chem., *273:* 14484–14494, 1998.

20. Graves, L. M., Bornfeldt, K. E., Argast, G. M., Krebs, E. G., Kong, X., Lin, T. A., and Lawrence, J. C., Jr. cAMP- and rapamycin-sensitive regulation of the association of eukaryotic initiation factor 4E and the translational regulator PHAS-I in aortic smooth muscle cells. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *92:* 7222–7226, 1995.

21. Merrick, W. C., and Hershey, J. W. B. The pathway and mechanism of eukaryotic protein synthesis. *In:* J. W. B. Hershey and M. B. Mathews (eds.), Translational Control, pp. 31–69. Cold Spring Harbor, NY: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, 1996.

22. Kimball, S. R. Eukaryotic initiation factor eIF2. Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol., *31:* 25–29, 1999.

23. Jagus, R., Joshi, B., and Barber, G. N. PKR, apoptosis and cancer. Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol., *31:* 123–138, 1999.

24. Thomas, G., and Hall, M. N. TOR signalling and control of cell growth. Curr. Opin. Cell Biol., *9:* 782–787, 1997.

25. Gingras, A. C., Raught, B., and Sonenberg, N. Regulation of translation initiation by FRAP/mTOR. Genes Dev., *15:* 807–826, 2001.

26. Gingras, A. C., Gygi, S. P., Raught, B., Polakiewicz, R. D., Abraham, R. T., Hoekstra, M. F., Aebersold, R., and Sonenberg, N. Regulation of 4E-BP1 phosphorylation: a novel two-step mechanism. Genes Dev., *13:* 1422–1437, 1999.

27. Kumar, V., Pandey, P., Sabatini, D., Kumar, M., Majumder, P. K., Bharti, A., Carmichael, G., Kufe, D., and Kharbhanda, S. Functional interaction between RAFT1/FRAP/mTOR and protein kinase Cδ in the regulation of cap-dependent initiation of translation. EMBO J., *19:* 1087–1097, 2000.

28. Yang, D. Q., and Kastan, M. B. Participation of ATM in insulin signalling through phosphorylation of eIF-4E-binding protein 1. Nat. Cell. Biol., *2:* 893–898, 2000.

29. Liu, G., Zhang, Y., Bode, A. M., Ma, W. Y., and Dong, Z. Phosphorylation of 4E-BP1 is mediated by the p38/MSK1 pathway in response to UVB irradiation. J. Biol. Chem., *277:* 8810–8816, 2002.

30. Neshat, M. S., Mellinghoff, I. K., Tran, C., Stiles, B., Thomas, G., Petersen, R., Frost, P., Gibbons, J. J., Wu, H., and Sawyers, C. L. Enhanced sensitivity of PTEN-deficient tumors to inhibition of FRAP/mTOR. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *98:* 10314–10319, 2001.

31. Sekulic, A., Hudson, C. C., Homme, J. L., Yin, P., Otterness, D. M., Karnitz, L. M., and Abraham, R. T. A direct linkage between the phosphoinositide 3-kinase-AKT signaling pathway and the mammalian target of rapamycin in mitogen-stimulated and transformed cells. Cancer Res., *60:* 3504–3513, 2000.

32. Scott, P. H., and Lawrence, J. C., Jr. Attenuation of mammalian target of rapamycin activity by increased cAMP in 3T3-L1 adipocytes. J. Biol. Chem., *273:* 34496–34501, 1998.

33. Reynolds, T. T., Bodine, S. C., and Lawrence, J. C., Jr. Control of Ser2448 phosphorylation in the mammalian target of rapamycin by insulin and skeletal muscle load. J. Biol. Chem., *277:* 17657–17662, 2002.

34. Peterson, R. T., Beal, P. A., Comb, M. J., and Schreiber, S. L. FKBP12-rapamycin-associated protein (FRAP) autophosphorylates at serine 2481 under translationally repressive conditions. J. Biol. Chem., *275:* 7416–7423, 2000.

35. Peterson, R. T., Desai, B. N., Hardwick, J. S., and Schreiber, S. L. Protein phosphatase 2A interacts with the 70-kDa S6 kinase and is activated by inhibition of FKBP12-rapamycin-associated protein. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *96:* 4438–4442, 1999.

36. McGrew, L. L., Dworkin-Rastl, E., Dworkin, M. B., and Richter, J. D. Poly(A) elongation during *Xenopus* oocyte maturation is required for translational recruitment and is mediated by a short sequence element. Genes Dev., *3:* 803–815, 1989.

37. Sheets, M. D., Wu, M., and Wickens, M. Polyadenylation of c-mos mRNA as a control point in *Xenopus* meiotic maturation. Nature (Lond.), *374:* 511–516, 1995.

38. Varnum, S. M., and Wormington, W. M. Deadenylation of maternal mRNAs during *Xenopus* oocyte maturation does not require specific *cis*-sequences: a default mechanism for translational control. Genes Dev., *4:* 2278–2286, 1990.

39. Gallie, D. R. The cap and poly(A) tail function synergistically to regulate mRNA translational efficiency. Genes Dev., *5:* 2108–2116, 1991.

40. Sachs, A. B., and Varani, G. Eukaryotic translation initiation: there are (at least) two sides to every story. Nat. Struct. Biol., *7:* 356–361, 2000.

41. Wolffe, A. P., and Meric, F. Coupling transcription to translation: a novel site for the regulation of eukaryotic gene expression. Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol., *28:* 247–257, 1996.

42. Evdokimova, V. M., Wei, C. L., Sitikov, A. S., Simonenko, P. N., Lazarev, O. A., Vasilenko, K. S., Ustinov, V. A., Hershey, J. W., and Ovchinnikov, L. P. The major protein of messenger ribonucleoprotein particles in somatic cells is a member of the Y-box binding transcription factor family. J. Biol. Chem., *270:* 3186–3192, 1995.

43. Matsumoto, K., Meric, F., and Wolffe, A. P. Translational repression dependent on the interaction of the *Xenopus* Y-box protein FRGY2 with mRNA. Role of the cold shock domain, tail domain, and selective RNA sequence recognition. J. Biol. Chem., *271:* 22706–22712, 1996.

44. Evdokimova, V., Ruzanov, P., Imataka, H., Raught, B., Svitkin, Y., Ovchinnikov, L. P., and Sonenberg, N. The major mRNA-associated protein YB-1 is a potent 5′ cap-dependent mRNA stabilizer. EMBO J., *20:* 5491–5502, 2001.

45. Saito, H., Hayday, A. C., Wiman, K., Hayward, W. S., and Tonegawa, S. Activation of the c-*myc* gene by translocation: a model for translational control. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *80:* 7476–7480, 1983.

46. Nanbru, C., Lafon, I., Audigier, S., Gensac, M. C., Vagner, S., Huez, G., and Prats, A. C. Alternative translation of the proto-oncogene c-*myc* by an internal ribosome entry site. J. Biol. Chem., *272:* 32061–32066, 1997.

47. Stoneley, M., Paulin, F. E., Le Quesne, J. P., Chappell, S. A., and Willis, A. E. c-Myc 5′ untranslated region contains an internal ribosome entry segment. Oncogene, *16:* 423–428, 1998.

48. Paulin, F. E., West, M. J., Sullivan, N. F., Whitney, R. L., Lyne, L., and Willis, A. E. Aberrant translational control of the c-*myc* gene in multiple myeloma. Oncogene, *13:* 505–513, 1996.

49. Chappell, S. A., LeQuesne, J. P., Paulin, F. E., de Schoolmeester, M. L., Stoneley, M., Soutar, R. L., Ralston, S. H., Helfrich, M. H., and Willis, A. E. A mutation in the c-myc-IRES leads to enhanced internal ribosome entry in multiple myeloma: a novel mechanism of oncogene de-regulation. Oncogene, *19:* 4437–4440, 2000.

50. Signori, E., Bagni, C., Papa, S., Primerano, B., Rinaldi, M., Amaldi, F., and Fazio, V. M. A somatic mutation in the 5′UTR of *BRCA1* gene in sporadic breast cancer causes down-modulation of translation efficiency. Oncogene, *20:* 4596–4600, 2001.

51. Liu, L., Dilworth, D., Gao, L., Monzon, J., Summers, A., Lassam, N., and Hogg, D. Mutation of the CDKN2A 5′ UTR creates an aberrant initiation codon and predisposes to melanoma. Nat. Genet., *21:* 128–132, 1999.

52. Savitsky, K., Platzer, M., Uziel, T., Gilad, S., Sartiel, A., Rosenthal, A., Broy-Stein, O., Shiloh, Y., and Rotman, G. Ataxia-telangiectasia: structural diversity of untranslated sequences suggests complex post-transcriptional regulation of *ATM* gene expression. Nucleic Acids Res., *25:* 1678–1684, 1997.

53. Brown, C. Y., Mize, G. J., Pineda, M., George, D. L., and Morris, D. R. Role of two upstream open reading frames in the translational control of oncogene *mdm2*. Oncogene, *18:* 5631–5637, 1999.

54. Sobczak, K., and Krzyzosiak, W. J. Structural determinants of BRCA1 translational regulation. J. Biol. Chem., *277:* 17349–17358, 2002.

55. Arrick, B. A., Grendell, R. L., and Griffin, L. A. Enhanced translational efficiency of a novel transforming growth factor β3 mRNA in human breast cancer cells. Mol. Cell. Biol., *14:* 619–628, 1994.

56. Myers, S. M., Eng, C., Ponder, B. A., and Mulligan, L. M. Characterization of *RET* proto-oncogene 3′ splicing variants and polyadenylation sites: a novel C-terminus for RET. Oncogene, *11:* 2039–2045, 1995.

57. Byrne, J. A., Tomasetto, C., Rouyer, N., Bellocq, J. P., Rio, M. C., and Basset, P. The tissue inhibitor of *metalloproteinases-3* gene in breast carcinoma: identification of multiple polyadenylation sites and a stromal pattern of expression. Mol. Med., *1:* 416–427, 1995.

58. Moscow, J. A., He, R., Gudas, J. M., and Cowan, K. H. Utilization of multiple polyadenylation signals in the human *RHOA* protooncogene. Gene (Amst.), *144:* 229–236, 1994.

59. Senterre-Lesenfants, S., Alag, A. S., and Sobel, M. E. Multiple mRNA species are generated by alternate polyadenylation from the human *calmodulin-1* gene. J. Cell. Biochem., *58:* 445–454, 1995.

60. Lazaris-Karatzas, A., Montine, K. S., and Sonenberg, N. Malignant transformation by a eukaryotic initiation factor subunit that binds to mRNA 5′ cap. Nature (Lond.), *345:* 544–547, 1990.

61. De Benedetti, A., and Rhoads, R. E. Overexpression of eukaryotic protein synthesis initiation factor 4E in HeLa cells results in aberrant growth and morphology. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *87:* 8212–8216, 1990.

62. Polunovsky, V. A., Rosenwald, I. B., Tan, A. T., White, J., Chiang, L., Sonenberg, N., and Bitterman, P. B. Translational control of programmed cell death: eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4E blocks apoptosis in growth-factor-restricted fibroblasts with physiologically expressed or deregulated Myc. Mol. Cell. Biol., *16:* 6573–6581, 1996.

63. Miyagi, Y., Sugiyama, A., Asai, A., Okazaki, T., Kuchino, Y., and Kerr, S. J. Elevated levels of eukaryotic translation initiation factor eIF-4E, mRNA in a broad spectrum of transformed cell lines. Cancer Lett., *91:* 247–252, 1995.

64. Kerekatte, V., Smiley, K., Hu, B., Smith, A., Gelder, F., and De Benedetti, A. The proto-oncogene/translation factor *eIF4E*: a survey of its expression in breast carcinomas. Int. J. Cancer, *64:* 27–31, 1995.

65. Li, B. D., Liu, L., Dawson, M., and De Benedetti, A. Overexpression of eukaryotic initiation factor 4E (eIF4E) in breast carcinoma. Cancer (Phila.), *79:* 2385–2390, 1997.

66. Sorrells, D. L., Black, D. R., Meschonat, C., Rhoads, R., De Benedetti, A., Gao, M., Williams, B. J., and Li, B. D. Detection of *eIF4E* gene amplification in breast cancer by competitive PCR. Ann. Surg. Oncol., *5:* 232–237, 1998.

67. Li, B. D., McDonald, J. C., Nassar, R., and De Benedetti, A. Clinical outcome in stage I to III breast carcinoma and eIF4E overexpression. Ann. Surg., *227:* 756–761; discussion, 761–763, 1998.

68. Wang, S., Rosenwald, I. B., Hutzler, M. J., Pihan, G. A., Savas, L., Chen, J. J., and Woda, B. A. Expression of the eukaryotic translation initiation factors 4E and 2α in non-Hodgkin's lymphomas. Am. J. Pathol., *155:* 247–255, 1999.

69. Fukuchi-Shimogori, T., Ishii, I., Kashiwagi, K., Mashiba, H., Ekimoto, H., and Igarashi, K. Malignant transformation by overproduction of translation initiation factor eIF4G. Cancer Res., *57:* 5041–5044, 1997.

70. Eberle, J., Krasagakis, K., and Orfanos, C. E. Translation initiation factor eIF-4A1 mRNA is consistently overexpressed in human melanoma cells *in vitro*. Int. J. Cancer, *71:* 396–401, 1997.

71. Shuda, M., Kondoh, N., Tanaka, K., Ryo, A., Wakatsuki, T., Hada, A., Goseki, N., Igari, T., Hatsuse, K., Aihara, T., Horiuchi, S., Shichita, M., Yamamoto, N., and Yamamoto, M. Enhanced expression of translation factor mRNAs in hepatocellular carcinoma. Anticancer Res., *20:* 2489–2494, 2000.

72. Nupponen, N. N., Porkka, K., Kakkola, L., Tanner, M., Persson, K., Borg, A., Isola, J., and Visakorpi, T. Amplification and overexpression of p40 subunit of eukaryotic translation initiation factor 3 in breast and prostate cancer. Am. J. Pathol., *154:* 1777–1783, 1999.

73. Rothe, M., Ko, Y., Albers, P., and Wernert, N. Eukaryotic initiation factor 3 p110 mRNA is overexpressed in testicular seminomas. Am. J. Pathol., *157:* 1597–1604, 2000.

74. Barlund, M., Forozan, F., Kononen, J., Bubendorf, L., Chen, Y., Bittner, M. L., Torhorst, J., Haas, P., Bucher, C., Sauter, G., Kallioniemi, O. P., and Kallioniemi, A. Detecting activation of ribosomal protein S6 kinase by complementary DNA and tissue microarray analysis. J. Natl. Cancer Inst. (Bethesda), *92:* 1252–1259, 2000.

75. Topalian, S. L., Kaneko, S., Gonzales, M. I., Bond, G. L., Ward, Y., and Manley, J. L. Identification and functional characterization of neo-poly(A) polymerase, an RNA processing enzyme overexpressed in human tumors. Mol. Cell. Biol., *21:* 5614–5623, 2001.

76. Scorilas, A., Talieri, M., Ardavanis, A., Courtis, N., Dimitriadis, E., Yotis, J., Tsiapalis, C. M., and Trangas, T. Polyadenylate polymerase enzymatic activity in mammary tumor cytosols: a new independent prognostic marker in primary breast cancer. Cancer Res., *60:* 5427–5433, 2000.

77. Janz, M., Harbeck, N., Dettmar, P., Berger, U., Schmidt, A., Jurchott, K., Schmitt, M., and Royer, H. D. Y-box factor YB-1 predicts drug resistance and patient outcome in breast cancer independent of clinically relevant tumor biologic factors HER2, uPA and PAI-1. Int. J. Cancer, *97:* 278–282, 2002.

78. Shibahara, K., Sugio, K., Osaki, T., Uchiumi, T., Maehara, Y., Kohno, K., Yasumoto, K., Sugimachi, K., and Kuwano, M. Nuclear expression of the Y-box binding protein, YB-1, as a novel marker of disease progression in non-small cell lung cancer. Clin. Cancer Res., *7:* 3151–3155, 2001.

79. Kamura, T., Yahata, H., Amada, S., Ogawa, S., Sonoda, T., Kobayashi, H., Mitsumoto, M., Kohno, K., Kuwano, M., and Nakano, H. Is nuclear expression of Y box-binding protein-1 a new prognostic factor in ovarian serous adenocarcinoma? Cancer (Phila.), *85:* 2450–2454, 1999.

80. Bargou, R. C., Jurchott, K., Wagener, C., Bergmann, S., Metzner, S., Bommert, K., Mapara, M. Y., Winzer, K. J., Dietel, M., Dorken, B., and Royer, H. D. Nuclear localization and increased levels of transcription factor YB-1 in primary human breast cancers are associated with intrinsic *MDR1* gene expression. Nat. Med., *3:* 447–450, 1997.

81. Aoki, M., Blazek, E., and Vogt, P. K. A role of the kinase mTOR in cellular transformation induced by the oncoproteins P3k and Akt. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *98:* 136–141, 2001.

82. Child, S. J., Miller, M. K., and Geballe, A. P. Cell type-dependent and -independent control of HER-2/neu translation. Int. J. Biochem. Cell Biol., *31:* 201–213, 1999.

83. Jefferies, H. B., Reinhard, C., Kozma, S. C., and Thomas, G. Rapamycin selectively represses translation of the "polypyrimidine tract" mRNA family. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *91:* 4441–4445, 1994.

84. Terada, N., Patel, H. R., Takase, K., Kohno, K., Nairn, A. C., and Gelfand, E. W. Rapamycin selectively inhibits translation of mRNAs encoding elongation factors and ribosomal proteins. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *91:* 11477–11481, 1994.

85. Jefferies, H. B., Fumagalli, S., Dennis, P. B., Reinhard, C., Pearson, R. B., and Thomas, G. Rapamycin suppresses 5'TOP mRNA translation through inhibition of p70s6k. EMBO J., *16:* 3693–3704, 1997.

86. Beretta, L., Gingras, A. C., Svitkin, Y. V., Hall, M. N., and Sonenberg, N. Rapamycin blocks the phosphorylation of 4E-BP1 and inhibits cap-dependent initiation of translation. EMBO J., *15:* 658–664, 1998.

87. Hidalgo, M., and Rowinsky, E. K. The rapamycin-sensitive signal transduction pathway as a target for cancer therapy. Oncogene, *19:* 6680–6686, 2000.

88. Hosoi, H., Dilling, M. B., Shikata, T., Liu, L. N., Shu, L., Ashmun, R. A., Germain, G. S., Abraham, R. T., and Houghton, P. J. Rapamycin causes poorly reversible inhibition of mTOR and induces p53-independent apoptosis in human rhabdomyosarcoma cells. Cancer Res., *59:* 886–894, 1999.

89. Huang, S., and Houghton, P. J. Resistance to rapamycin: a novel anticancer drug. Cancer Metastasis Rev., *20:* 69–78, 2001.

90. Geoerger, B., Kerr, K., Tang, C. B., Fung, K. M., Powell, B., Sutton, L. N., Phillips, P. C., and Janss, A. J. Antitumor activity of the rapamycin analog CCI-779 in human primitive neuroectodermal tumor/medulloblastoma models as single agent and in combination chemotherapy. Cancer Res., *61:* 1527–1532, 2001.

91. Gibbons, J. J., Discafani, C., Peterson, R., Hernandez, R., Skotnicki, J., and Frost, P. The effect of CCI-779, a novel macrolide anti-tumor agent, on the growth of human tumor cells *in vitro* and in nude mouse xenografts *in vivo*. Proc. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res., *40:* 301, 1999.

92. Hidalgo, M., Rowinsky, E., Erlichman, C., Marshall, B., Marks, R., Edwards, T., and Buckner, J. J. A Phase I and pharmacological study of CCI-779 cycle inhibitor. Ann. Oncol., *11* (Suppl. 4): 133, 2001.

93. Alexandre, J., Raymond, E., Depenbrock, H., Mekhaldi, S., Angevin, E., Paillet, C., Hanauske, A., Frisch, J., Feussner, A., and Armand, J. P. CCI-779, a new rapamycin analog, has antitumor activity at doses inducing only mild cutaneous effects and mucositis: early results of an ongoing Phase I study. Proceedings of the 1999 AACR-NCI-EORTC International Conference, Clin. Cancer Res., *5* (Suppl.): 3730s, 1999.

94. Chan, S., Johnston, S., Scheulen, M. E., Mross, K., Morant, A., Lahr, A., Feussner, A., Berger, M., and Kirsch, T. First report: a Phase 2 study of the safety and activity of CCI-779 for patients with locally advanced or metastatic breast cancer failing prior chemotherapy. Proc. Am. Soc. Clin. Oncol., *21:* 44a, 2002.

95. Atkins, M. B., Hidalgo, M., Stadler, W., Logan, T., Dutcher, J. P., Hudes, G., Park, Y., Marshall, B., Boni, J., and Dukart, G. A randomized double-blind Phase 2 study of intravenous CCI-779 administered weekly to patients with advanced renal cell carcinoma. Proc. Am. Soc. Clin. Oncol., *21:* 10a, 2002.

96. Smith, S. G., Trinh, C. M., Inge, L. J., Thomas, G., Cloughsey, T. F., Sawyers, C. L., and Mischel, P. S. PTEN expression status predicts glioblastoma cell sensitivity to CCI-779. Proc. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res., *43:* 335, 2002.

97. Yu, K., Toral-Barza, L., Discafani, C., Zhang, W. G., Skotnicki, J., Frost, P., and Gibbons, J. J. mTOR, a novel target in breast cancer: the effect of CCI-779, an mTOR inhibitor, in preclinical models of breast cancer. Endocr. Relat. Cancer, *8:* 249–258, 2001.

98. Dilling, M. B., Germain, G. S., Dudkin, L., Jayaraman, A. L., Zhang, X., Harwood, F. C., and Houghton, P. J. 4E-binding proteins, the suppressors of eukaryotic initiation factor 4E, are downregulated in cells with acquired or intrinsic resistance to rapamycin. J. Biol. Chem., *277:* 13907–13917, 2002.

99. Guba, M., von Breitenbuch, P., Steinbauer, M., Koehl, G., Flegel, S., Hornung, M., Bruns, C. J., Zuelke, C., Farkas, S., Anthuber, M., Jauch, K. W., and Geissler, E. K. Rapamycin inhibits primary and metastatic tumor growth by antiangiogenesis: involvement of vascular endothelial growth factor. Nat. Med., *8:* 128–135, 2002.

100. Lane, H. A., Schell, C., Theuer, A., O'Reilly, T., and Wood, J. Anti-angiogenic activity of RAD001, an orally active anticancer agent. Proc. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res., *43:* 184, 2002.

101. Maeshima, Y., Sudhakar, A., Lively, J. C., Ueki, K., Kharbanda, S., Kahn, C. R., Sonenberg, N., Hynes, R. O., and Kalluri, R. Tumstatin, an endothelial cell-specific inhibitor of protein synthesis. Science (Wash. DC), *295:* 140–143, 2002.

102. Caygill, C. P., Charlett, A., and Hill, M. J. Fat, fish, fish oil and cancer. Br. J. Cancer, *74:* 159–164, 1996.

103. Falconer, J. S., Ross, J. A., Fearon, K. C., Hawkins, R. A., O'Riordain, M. G., and Carter, D. C. Effect of eicosapentaenoic acid and other fatty acids on the growth *in vitro* of human pancreatic cancer cell lines. Br. J. Cancer, *69:* 826–832, 1994.

104. Noguchi, M., Minami, M., Yagasaki, R., Kinoshita, K., Earashi, M., Kitagawa, H., Taniya, T., and Miyazaki, I. Chemoprevention of DMBA-induced mammary carcinogenesis in rats by low-dose EPA and DHA. Br. J. Cancer, *75:* 348–353, 1997.

105. Palakurthi, S. S., Fluckiger, R., Aktas, H., Changolkar, A. K., Shahsafaei, A., Harnett, S., Kilic, E., and Halperin, J. A. Inhibition of translation initiation mediates the anticancer effect of the n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid eicosapentaenoic acid. Cancer Res., *60:* 2919–2925, 2000.

106. Aktas, H., Fluckiger, R., Acosta, J. A., Savage, J. M., Palakurthi, S. S., and Halperin, J. A. Depletion of intracellular Ca^{2+} stores, phosphorylation of eIF2α, and sustained inhibition of translation initiation mediate the anticancer effects of clotrimazole. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *95:* 8280–8285, 1998.

107. Mhashilkar, A. M., Schrock, R. D., Hindi, M., Liao, J., Sieger, K., Kourouma, F., Zou-Yang, X. H., Onishi, E., Takh, O., Vedvick, T. S., Fanger, G., Stewart, L., Watson, G. J., Snary, D., Fisher, P. B., Seeid, T., Roth, J. A., Ramesh, R., and Chada, S. Melanoma differentiation associated gene-7 (*mda-7*): a novel anti-tumor gene for cancer gene therapy. Mol. Med., *7:* 271–282, 2001.

108. Su, Z. Z., Madireddi, M. T., Lin, J. J., Young, C. S., Kitada, S., Reed, J. C., Goldstein, N. I., and Fisher, P. B. The cancer growth suppressor gene *mda-7* selectively induces apoptosis in human breast cancer cells and inhibits tumor growth in nude mice. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, *95:* 14400–14405, 1998.

109. Saeki, T., Mhashilkar, A., Chada, S., Branch, C., Roth, J. A., and Ramesh, R. Tumor-suppressive effects by adenovirus-mediated *mda-7* gene transfer in non-small cell lung cancer cell *in vitro*. Gene Ther., *7:* 2051–2057, 2000.

110. Pataer, A., Vorburger, S. A., Barber, G. N., Chada, S., Mhashilkar, A. M., Zou-Yang, H., Stewart, A. L., Balachandran, S., Roth, J. A., Hunt, K. K., and Swisher, S. G. Adenoviral transfer of the melanoma differentiation-associated gene 7 (*mda7*) induces apoptosis of lung cancer cells via up-regulation of the double-stranded RNA-dependent protein kinase (PKR). Cancer Res., *62:* 2239–2243, 2002.

111. Ito, T., Warnken, S. P., and May, W. S. Protein synthesis inhibition by flavonoids: roles of eukaryotic initiation factor 2α kinases. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun., *265:* 589–594, 1999.

112. Eberle, J., Fecker, L. F., Bittner, J. U., Orfanos, C. E., and Geilen, C. C. Decreased proliferation of human melanoma cell lines caused by antisense RNA against translation factor eIF-4A1. Br. J. Cancer, *86:* 1957–1962, 2002.

113. Polunovsky, V. A., Gingras, A. C., Sonenberg, N., Peterson, M., Tan, A., Rubins, J. B., Manivel, J. C., and Bitterman, P. B. Translational control of the antiapoptotic function of Ras. J. Biol. Chem., *275:* 24776–24780, 2000.

114. D'Cunha, J., Kratzke, M. G., Alter, M. D., Polunovsky, V. A., Bitterman, P. B., and Kratzke, R. A. Over-expression of the translational repressor 4E-BP1 inhibits NSCLC tumorigenicity *in vivo*. Proc. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res., *43:* 816–817, 2002.

115. DeFatta, R. J., Nathan, C. A., and De Benedetti, A. Antisense RNA to eIF4E suppresses oncogenic properties of a head and neck squamous cell carcinoma cell line. Laryngoscope, *110:* 928–933, 2000.

116. Herbert, T. P., Fahraeus, R., Prescott, A., Lane, D. P., and Proud, C. G. Rapid induction of apoptosis mediated by peptides that bind initiation factor eIF4E. Curr. Biol., *10:* 793–796, 2000.

117. DeFatta, R. J., Li, Y., and De Benedetti, A. Selective killing of cancer cells based on translational control of a suicide gene. Cancer Gene Ther., *9:* 573–578, 2002.

EXHIBIT 14

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant	:	Ashkenazi et al.
App. No.	:	09/903,925
Filed	:	July 11, 2001
For	:	SECRETED AND TRANSMEMBRANE POLYPEPTIDES AND NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING THE SAME
Examiner	:	Hamud, Fozia M

Group Art Unit 1647

CERTIFICATE OF EXPRESS MAILING

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to Commissioner of Patents, Washington D.C. 20231 on:

_____
(Date)

_____

Commissioner of Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

DECLARATION OF AVI ASHKENAZI, Ph.D UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.132

I, Avi Ashkenazi, Ph.D. declare and say as follows: -

1. I am Director and Staff Scientist at the Molecular Oncology Department of Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, CA 94080.

2. I joined Genentech in 1988 as a postdoctoral fellow. Since then, I have investigated a variety of cellular signal transduction mechanisms, including apoptosis, and have developed technologies to modulate such mechanisms as a means of therapeutic intervention in cancer and autoimmune disease. I am currently involved in the investigation of a series of secreted proteins over-expressed in tumors, with the aim to identify useful targets for the development of therapeutic antibodies for cancer treatment.

3. My scientific Curriculum Vitae, including my list of publications, is attached to and forms part of this Declaration (Exhibit A).

4. Gene amplification is a process in which chromosomes undergo changes to contain multiple copies of certain genes that normally exist as a single copy, and is an important factor in the pathophysiology of cancer. Amplification of certain genes (e.g., Myc or Her2/Neu)

gives cancer cells a growth or survival advantage relative to normal cells, and might also provide a mechanism of tumor cell resistance to chemotherapy or radiotherapy.

5. If gene amplification results in over-expression of the mRNA and the corresponding gene product, then it identifies that gene product as a promising target for cancer therapy, for example by the therapeutic antibody approach. Even in the absence of over-expression of the gene product, amplification of a cancer marker gene - as detected, for example, by the reverse transcriptase TaqMan® PCR or the fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) assays -is useful in the diagnosis or classification of cancer, or in predicting or monitoring the efficacy of cancer therapy. An increase in gene copy number can result not only from intrachromosomal changes but also from chromosomal aneuploidy. It is important to understand that detection of gene amplification can be used for cancer diagnosis even if the determination includes measurement of chromosomal aneuploidy. Indeed, as long as a significant difference relative to normal tissue is detected, it is irrelevant if the signal originates from an increase in the number of gene copies per chromosome and/or an abnormal number of chromosomes.

6. I understand that according to the Patent Office, absent data demonstrating that the increased copy number of a gene in certain types of cancer leads to increased expression of its product, gene amplification data are insufficient to provide substantial utility or well established utility for the gene product (the encoded polypeptide), or an antibody specifically binding the encoded polypeptide. However, even when amplification of a cancer marker gene does not result in significant over-expression of the corresponding gene product, this very absence of gene product over-expression still provides significant information for cancer diagnosis and treatment. Thus, if over-expression of the gene product does not parallel gene amplification in certain tumor types but does so in others, then parallel monitoring of gene amplification and gene product over-expression enables more accurate tumor classification and hence better determination of suitable therapy. In addition, absence of over-expression is crucial information for the practicing clinician. If a gene is amplified but the corresponding gene product is not over-expressed, the clinician accordingly will decide not to treat a patient with agents that target that gene product.

7. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information or belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so

made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

By: Avi Ashkenazi
Avi Ashkenazi, Ph.D.

Date: 9/15/03

EXHIBIT A

CURRICULUM VITAE

Avi Ashkenazi

July 2003

Personal:

Date of birth:	29 November, 1956
Address:	1456 Tarrytown Street, San Mateo, CA 94402
Phone:	(650) 578-9199 (home); (650) 225-1853 (office)
Fax:	(650) 225-6443 (office)
Email:	aa@gene.com

Education:

1983:	B.S. in Biochemistry, with honors, Hebrew University, Israel
1986:	Ph.D. in Biochemistry, Hebrew University, Israel

Employment:

1983-1986:	Teaching assistant, undergraduate level course in Biochemistry
1985-1986:	Teaching assistant, graduate level course on Signal Transduction
1986 - 1988:	Postdoctoral fellow, Hormone Research Dept., UCSF, and Developmental Biology Dept., Genentech, Inc., with J. Ramachandran
1988 - 1989:	Postdoctoral fellow, Molecular Biology Dept., Genentech, Inc., with D. Capon
1989 - 1993:	Scientist, Molecular Biology Dept., Genentech, Inc.
1994 -1996:	Senior Scientist, Molecular Oncology Dept., Genentech, Inc.
1996-1997:	Senior Scientist and Interim director, Molecular Oncology Dept., Genentech, Inc.
1997-1990:	Senior Scientist and preclinical project team leader, Genentech, Inc.
1999 -2002:	Staff Scientist in Molecular Oncology, Genentech, Inc.
2002-present:	Staff Scientist and Director in Molecular Oncology, Genentech, Inc.

Awards:

1988:	First prize, The Boehringer Ingelheim Award

Editorial:

Editorial Board Member: Current Biology

Associate Editor, Clinical Cancer Research.

Associate Editor, Cancer Biology and Therapy.

Refereed papers:

1. Gertler, A., Ashkenazi, A., and Madar, Z. Binding sites for human growth hormone and ovine and bovine prolactins in the mammary gland and liver of the lactating cow. *Mol. Cell. Endocrinol.* **34**, 51-57 (1984).
2. Gertler, A., Shamay, A., Cohen, N., Ashkenazi, A., Friesen, H., Levanon, A., Gorecki, M., Aviv, H., Hadari, D., and Vogel, T. Inhibition of lactogenic activities of ovine prolactin and human growth hormone (hGH) by a novel form of a modified recombinant hGH. *Endocrinology* **118**, 720-726 (1986).
3. Ashkenazi, A., Madar, Z., and Gertler, A. Partial purification and characterization of bovine mammary gland prolactin receptor. *Mol. Cell. Endocrinol.* **50**, 79-87 (1987).
4. Ashkenazi, A., Pines, M., and Gertler, A. Down-regulation of lactogenic hormone receptors in Nb2 lymphoma cells by cholera toxin. *Biochemistry Internatl.* **14**, 1065-1072 (1987).
5. Ashkenazi, A., Cohen, R., and Gertler, A. Characterization of lactogen receptors in lactogenic hormone-dependent and independent Nb2 lymphoma cell lines. *FEBS Lett.* **210**, 51-55 (1987).
6. Ashkenazi, A., Vogel, T., Barash, I., Hadari, D., Levanon, A., Gorecki, M., and Gertler, A. Comparative study on in vitro and in vivo modulation of lactogenic and somatotropic receptors by native human growth hormone and its modified recombinant analog. *Endocrinology* **121**, 414-419 (1987).
7. Peralta, E., Winslow, J., Peterson, G., Smith, D., Ashkenazi, A., Ramachandran, J., Schimerlik, M., and Capon, D. Primary structure and biochemical properties of an M2 muscarinic receptor. *Science* **236**, 600-605 (1987).
8. Peralta, E. Ashkenazi, A., Winslow, J., Smith, D., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. J. Distinont primary structures, ligand-binding properties and tissue-specific expression of four human muscarinic acetylcholine receptors. *EMBO J.* **6**, 3923-3929 (1987).
9. Ashkenazi, A., Winslow, J., Peralta, E., Peterson, G., Schimerlik, M., Capon, D., and Ramachandran, J. An M2 muscarinic receptor subtype coupled to both adenylyl cyclase and phosphoinositide turnover. *Science* **238**, 672-675 (1987).

10. Pines, M., Ashkenazi, A., Cohen-Chapnik, N., Binder, L., and Gertler, A. Inhibition of the proliferation of Nb2 lymphoma cells by femtomolar concentrations of cholera toxin and partial reversal of the effect by 12-o-tetradecanoyl-phorbol-13-acetate. *J. Cell. Biochem.* 37, 119-129 (1988).
11. Peralta, E. Ashkenazi, A., Winslow, J. Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. Differential regulation of PI hydrolysis and adenylyl cyclase by muscarinic receptor subtypes. *Nature* **334**, 434-437 (1988).
12. Ashkenazi., A. Peralta, E., Winslow, J., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. Functionally distinct G proteins couple different receptors to PI hydrolysis in the same cell. *Cell* **56**, 487-493 (1989).
13. Ashkenazi, A., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. Acetylcholine analogue stimulates DNA synthesis in brain-derived cells via specific muscarinic acetylcholine receptor subtypes. *Nature* **340**, 146-150 (1989).
14. Lammare, D., Ashkenazi, A., Fleury, S., Smith, D., Sekaly, R., and Capon, D. The MHC-binding and gp120-binding domains of CD4 are distinct and separable. *Science* **245**, 743-745 (1989).
15. Ashkenazi., A., Presta, L., Marsters, S., Camerato, T., Rosenthal, K., Fendly, B., and Capon, D. Mapping the CD4 binding site for human immunodefficiency virus type 1 by alanine-scanning mutagenesis. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* 87, 7150-7154 (1990).
16. Chamow, S., Peers, D., Byrn, R., Mulkerrin, M., Harris, R., Wang, W., Bjorkman, P., Capon, D., and Ashkenazi, A. Enzymatic cleavage of a CD4 immunoadhesin generates crystallizable, biologically active Fd-like fragments. *Biochemistry* **29**, 9885-9891 (1990).
17. Ashkenazi, A., Smith, D., Marsters, S., Riddle, L., Gregory, T., Ho, D., and Capon, D. Resistance of primary isolates of human immunodefficiency virus type 1 to soluble CD4 is independent of CD4-rgp120 binding affinity. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* 88, 7056-7060 (1991).
18. Ashkenazi, A., Marsters, S., Capon, D., Chamow, S., Figari., I., Pennica, D., Goeddel., D., Palladino, M., and Smith, D. Protection against endotoxic shock by a tumor necrosis factor receptor immunoadhesin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* 88, 10535-10539 (1991).
19. Moore, J., McKeating, J., Huang, Y., Ashkenazi, A., and Ho, D. Virions of primary HIV-1 isolates resistant to sCD4 neutralization differ in sCD4 affinity and glycoprotein gp120 retention from sCD4-sensitive isolates. *J. Virol.* 66, 235-243 (1992).

20. Jin, H., Oksenberg, D., Ashkenazi, A., Peroutka, S., Duncan, A., Rozmahel., R., Yang, Y., Mengod, G., Palacios, J., and O'Dowd, B. Characterization of the human 5-hydroxytryptamine$_{1B}$ receptor. *J. Biol. Chem.* **267**, 5735-5738 (1992).

21. Marsters, A., Frutkin, A., Simpson, N., Fendly, B. and Ashkenazi, A. Identification of cysteine-rich domains of the type 1 tumor necrosis receptor involved in ligand binding. *J. Biol. Chem.* **267**, 5747-5750 (1992).

22. Chamow, S., Kogan, T., Peers, D., Hastings, R., Byrn, R., and Ashkenazi, A. Conjugation of sCD4 without loss of biological activity via a novel carbohydrate-directed cross-linking reagent. *J. Biol. Chem.* **267**, 15916-15922 (1992).

23. Oksenberg, D., Marsters, A., O'Dowd, B., Jin, H., Havlik, S., Peroutka, S., and Ashkenazi, A. A single amino-acid difference confers major pharmacologic variation between human and rodent 5-HT$_{1B}$ receptors. *Nature* **360**, 161-163 (1992).

24. Haak-Frendscho, M., Marsters, S., Chamow, S., Peers, D., Simpson, N., and Ashkenazi, A. Inhibition of interferon γ by an interferon γ receptor immunoadhesin. *Immunology* **79**, 594-599 (1993).

25. Penica, D., Lam, V., Weber, R., Kohr, W., Basa, L., Spellman, M., Ashkenazi, Shire, S., and Goeddel, D. Biochemical characterization of the extracellular domain of the 75-kd tumor necrosis factor receptor. *Biochemistry* **32**, 3131-3138. (1993).

26. Barfod, L., Zheng, Y., Kuang, W., Hart, M., Evans, T., Cerione, R., and Ashkenazi, A. Cloning and expression of a human CDC42 GTPase Activating Protein reveals a functional SH3-binding domain. *J. Biol. Chem.* **268**, 26059-26062 (1993).

27. Chamow, S., Zhang, D., Tan, X., Mhtre, S., Marsters, S., Peers, D., Byrn, R., Ashkenazi, A., and Yunghans, R. A humanized bispecific immunoadhesin-antibody that retargets CD3+ effectors to kill HIV-1-infected cells. *J. Immunol.* **153**, 4268-4280 (1994).

28. Means, R., Krantz, S., Luna, J., Marsters, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Inhibition of murine erythroid colony formation in vitro by iterferon γ and correction by interferon γ receptor immunoadhesin. *Blood* **83**, 911-915 (1994).

29. Haak-Frendscho, M., Marsters, S., Mordenti, J., Gillet, N., Chen, S., andAshkenazi, A. Inhibition of TNF by a TNF receptor immunoadhesin: comparison with an anti-TNF mAb. *J. Immunol.* **152**, 1347-1353 (1994).

30. Chamow, S., Kogan, T., Venuti, M., Gadek, T., Peers, D., Mordenti, J., Shak, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Modification of CD4 immunoadhesin with monomethoxy-PEG aldehyde via reductive alkilation. *Bioconj. Chem.* **5**, 133-140 (1994).

31. Jin, H., Yang, R., Marsters, S., Bunting, S., Wurm, F., Chamow, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Protection against rat endotoxic shock by p55 tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor immunoadhesin: comparison to anti-TNF monoclonal antibody. *J. Infect. Diseases* **170**, 1323-1326 (1994).

32. Beck, J., Marsters, S., Harris, R., Ashkenazi, A., and Chamow, S. Generation of soluble interleukin-1 receptor from an immunoadhesin by specific cleavage. *Mol. Immunol.* **31**, 1335-1344 (1994).

33. Pitti, B., Marsters, M., Haak-Frendscho, M., Osaka, G., Mordenti, J., Chamow, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Molecular and biological properties of an interleukin-1 receptor immunoadhesin. *Mol. Immunol.* **31**, 1345-1351 (1994).

34. Oksenberg, D., Havlik, S., Peroutka, S., and Ashkenazi, A. The third intracellular loop of the 5-HT2 receptor specifies effector coupling. *J. Neurochem.* **64**, 1440-1447 (1995).

35. Bach, E., Szabo, S., Dighe, A., Ashkenazi, A., Aguet, M., Murphy, K., and Schreiber, R. Ligand-induced autoregulation of IFN-γ receptor β chain expression in T helper cell subsets. *Science* **270**, 1215-1218 (1995).

36. Jin, H., Yang, R., Marsters, S., Ashkenazi, A., Bunting, S., Marra, M., Scott, R., and Baker, J. Protection against endotoxic shock by bactericidal/permeability-increasing protein in rats. *J. Clin. Invest.* **95**, 1947-1952 (1995).

37. Marsters, S., Penica, D., Bach, E., Schreiber, R., and Ashkenazi, A. Interferon γ signals via a high-affinity multisubunit receptor complex that contains two types of polypeptide chain. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* **92**, 5401-5405 (1995).

38. Van Zee, K., Moldawer, L., Oldenburg, H., Thompson, W., Stackpole, S., Montegut, W., Rogy, M., Meschter, C., Gallati, H., Schiller, C., Richter, W., Loetcher, H., Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S., Wurm, F., Calvano, S., Lowry, S., and Lesslauer, W. Protection against lethal E. coli bacteremia in baboons by pretreatment with a 55-kDa TNF receptor-Ig fusion protein, Ro45-2081. *J. Immunol.* **156**, 2221-2230 (1996).

39. Pitti, R., Marsters, S., Ruppert, S., Donahue, C., Moore, A., and Ashkenazi, A. Induction of apoptosis by Apo-2 Ligand, a new member of the tumor necrosis factor cytokine family. *J. Biol. Chem.* **271**, 12687-12690 (1996).

40. Marsters, S., Pitti, R., Donahue, C., Rupert, S., Bauer, K., and Ashkenazi, A. Activation of apoptosis by Apo-2 ligand is independent of FADD but blocked by CrmA. *Curr. Biol.* **6**, 1669-1676 (1996).

41. Marsters, S., Skubatch, M., Gray, C., and Ashkenazi, A. Herpesvirus entry mediator, a novel member of the tumor necrosis factor receptor family, activates the NF-κB and AP-1 transcription factors. *J. Biol. Chem.* **272**, 14029-14032 (1997).

42. Sheridan, J., Marsters, S., Pitti, R., Gurney, A., Skubatch, M., Baldwin, D., Ramakrishnan, L., Gray, C., Baker, K., Wood, W.I., Goddard, A., Godowski, P., and Ashkenazi, A. Control of TRAIL-induced apoptosis by a family of signaling and decoy receptors. *Science* **277**, 818-821 (1997).

43. Marsters, S., Sheridan, J., Pitti, R., Gurney, A., Skubatch, M., Balswin, D., Huang, A., Yuan, J., Goddard, A., Godowski, P., and Ashkenazi, A. A novel receptor for Apo2L/TRAIL contains a truncated death domain. *Curr. Biol.* **7**, 1003-1006 (1997).

44. Marsters, A., Sheridan, J., Pitti, R., Brush, J., Goddard, A., and Ashkenazi, A. Identification of a ligand for the death-domain-containing receptor Apo3. *Curr. Biol.* **8**, 525-528 (1998).

45. Rieger, J., Naumann, U., Glaser, T., Ashkenazi, A., and Weller, M. Apo2 ligand: a novel weapon against malignant glioma? *FEBS Lett.* **427**, 124-128 (1998).

46. Pender, S., Fell, J., Chamow, S., Ashkenazi, A., and MacDonald, T. A p55 TNF receptor immunoadhesin prevents T cell mediated intestinal injury by inhibiting matrix metalloproteinase production. *J. Immunol.* **160**, 4098-4103 (1998).

47. Pitti, R., Marsters, S., Lawrence, D., Roy, Kischkel, F., M., Dowd, P., Huang, A., Donahue, C., Sherwood, S., Baldwin, D., Godowski, P., Wood, W., Gurney, A., Hillan, K., Cohen, R., Goddard, A., Botstein, D., and Ashkenazi, A. Genomic amplification of a decoy receptor for Fas ligand in lung and colon cancer. *Nature* **396**, 699-703 (1998).

48. Mori, S., Marakami-Mori, K., Nakamura, S., Ashkenazi, A., and Bonavida, B. Sensitization of AIDS Kaposi's sarcoma cells to Apo-2 ligand-induced apoptosis by actinomycin D. *J. Immunol.* **162**, 5616-5623 (1999).

49. Gurney, A. Marsters, S., Huang, A., Pitti, R., Mark, M., Baldwin, D., Gray, A., Dowd, P., Brush, J., Heldens, S., Schow, P., Goddard, A., Wood, W., Baker, K., Godowski, P., and Ashkenazi, A. Identification of a new member of the tumor necrosis factor family and its receptor, a human ortholog of mouse GITR. *Curr. Biol.* **9**, 215-218 (1999).

50. Ashkenazi, A., Pai, R., Fong, s., Leung, S., Lawrence, D., Marsters, S., Blackie, C., Chang, L., McMurtrey, A., Hebert, A., DeForge, L., Khoumenis, I., Lewis, D., Harris, L., Bussiere, J., Koeppen, H., Shahrokh, Z., and Schwall, R. Safety and anti-tumor activity of recombinant soluble Apo2 ligand. *J. Clin. Invest.* **104**, 155-162 (1999).

51. Chuntharapai, A., Gibbs, V., Lu, J., Ow, A., Marsters, S., Ashkenazi, A., De Vos, A., Kim, K.J. Determination of residues involved in ligand binding and signal transmissiion in the human IFN-α receptor 2. *J. Immunol.* **163**, 766-773 (1999).

52. Johnsen, A.-C., Haux, J., Steinkjer, B., Nonstad, U., Egeberg, K., Sundan, A., Ashkenazi, A., and Espevik, T. Regulation of Apo2L/TRAIL expression in NK cells – involvement in NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *Cytokine* **11**, 664-672 (1999).

53. Roth, W., Isenmann, S., Naumann, U., Kugler, S., Bahr, M., Dichgans, J., Ashkenazi, A., and Weller, M. Eradication of intracranial human malignant glioma xenografts by Apo2L/TRAIL. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **265**, 479-483 (1999).

54. Hymowitz, S.G., Christinger, H.W., Fuh, G., Ultsch, M., O'Connell, M., Kelley, R.F., Ashkenazi, A. and de Vos, A.M. Triggering Cell Death: The Crystal Structure of Apo2L/TRAIL in a Complex with Death Receptor 5. *Molec. Cell* **4**, 563–571 (1999).

55. Hymowitz, S.G., O'Connel, M.P., Utsch, M.H., Hurst, A., Totpal, K., Ashkenazi, A., de Vos, A.M., Kelley, R.F. A unique zinc-binding site revealed by a high-resolution X-ray structure of homotrimeric Apo2L/TRAIL. *Biochemistry* **39**, 633-640 (2000).

56. Zhou, Q., Fukushima, P., DeGraff, W., Mitchell, J.B., Stetler-Stevenson, M., Ashkenazi, A., and Steeg, P.S. Radiation and the Apo2L/TRAIL apoptotic pathway preferentially inhibit the colonization of premalignant human breast cancer cells overexpressing cyclin D1. *Cancer Res.* **60**, 2611-2615 (2000).

57. Kischkel, F.C., Lawrence, D. A., Chuntharapai, A., Schow, P., Kim, J., and Ashkenazi, A. Apo2L/TRAIL-dependent recruitment of endogenous FADD and Caspase-8 to death receptors 4 and 5. *Immunity* **12**, 611-620 (2000).

58. Yan, M., Marsters, S.A., Grewal, I.S., Wang, H., *Ashkenazi, A., and *Dixit, V.M. Identification of a receptor for BlyS demonstrates a crucial role in humoral immunity. *Nature Immunol.* **1**, 37-41 (2000).

59. Marsters, S.A., Yan, M., Pitti, R.M., Haas, P.E., Dixit, V.M., and Ashkenazi, A. Interaction of the TNF homologues BLyS and APRIL with the TNF receptor homologues BCMA and TACI. *Curr. Biol.* **10**, 785-788 (2000).

60. Kischkel, F.C., and Ashkenazi, A. Combining enhanced metabolic labeling with immunoblotting to detect interactions of endogenous cellular proteins. *Biotechniques* **29**, 506-512 (2000).

61. Lawrence, D., Shahrokh, Z., Marsters, S., Achilles, K., Shih, D. Mounho, B., Hillan, K., Totpal, K. DeForge, L., Schow, P., Hooley, J., Sherwood, S., Pai, R., Leung, S., Khan, L., Gliniak, B., Bussiere, J., Smith, C., Strom, S., Kelley, S., Fox, J., Thomas, D., and Ashkenazi, A. Differential hepatocyte toxicity of recombinant Apo2L/TRAIL versions. *Nature Med.* **7**, 383-385 (2001).

62. Chuntharapai, A., Dodge, K., Grimmer, K., Schroeder, K., Martsters, S.A., Koeppen, H., Ashkenazi, A., and Kim, K.J. Isotype-dependent inhibition of tumor growth in vivo by monoclonal antibodies to death receptor 4. *J. Immunol.* **166**, 4891-4898 (2001).

63. Pollack, I.F., Erff, M., and Ashkenazi, A. Direct stimulation of apoptotic signaling by soluble Apo2L/tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand leads to selective killing of glioma cells. *Clin. Cancer Res.* **7**, 1362-1369 (2001).

64. Wang, H., Marsters, S.A., Baker, T., Chan, B., Lee, W.P., Fu, L., Tumas, D., Yan, M., Dixit, V.M., *Ashkenazi, A., and *Grewal, I.S. TACI-ligand interactions are required for T cell activation and collagen-induced arthritis in mice. *Nature Immunol.* **2**, 632-637 (2001).

65. Kischkel, F.C., Lawrence, D. A., Tinel, A., Virmani, A., Schow, P., Gazdar, A., Blenis, J., Arnott, D., and Ashkenazi, A. Death receptor recruitment of endogenous caspase-10 and apoptosis initiation in the absence of caspase-8. *J. Biol. Chem.* **276**, 46639-46646 (2001).

66. LeBlanc, H., Lawrence, D.A., Varfolomeev, E., Totpal, K., Morlan, J., Schow, P., Fong, S., Schwall, R., Sinicropi, D., and Ashkenazi, A Tumor cell resistance to death receptor induced apoptosis through mutational inactivation of the proapoptotitc Bcl-2 homolog Bax. *Nature Med.* 8, 274-281 (2002).

67. Miller, K., Meng, G., Liu, J., Hurst, A., Hsei, V., Wong, W-L., Ekert, R., Lawrence, D., Sherwood, S., DeForge, L., Gaudreault., Keller, G., Sliwkowski, M., Ashkenazi, A., and Presta, L. Design, Construction, and analyses of multivalent antibodies. *J. Immunol.* 170, 4854-4861 (2003).

68. Varfolomeev, E., Kischkel, F., Martin, F., Wanh, H., Lawrence, D., Olsson, C., Tom, L., Erickson, S., French, D., Schow, P., Grewal, I. and Ashkenazi, A. Immune system development in APRIL knockout mice. Submitted.

Review articles:

1. Ashkenazi, A., Peralta, E., Winslow, J., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D., J. Functional role of muscarinic acetylcholine receptor subtype diversity. *Cold Spring Harbor Symposium on Quantitative Biology*. **LIII**, 263-272 (1988).
2. Ashkenazi, A., Peralta, E., Winslow, J., Ramachandran, J., and Capon, D. Functional diversity of muscarinic receptor subtypes in cellular signal transduction and growth. *Trends Pharmacol. Sci.* Dec Supplement, 12-21 (1989).
3. Chamow, S., Duliege, A., Ammann, A., Kahn, J., Allen, D., Eichberg, J., Byrn, R., Capon, D., Ward, R., and Ashkenazi, A. CD4 immunoadhesins in anti-HIV therapy: new developments. *Int. J. Cancer* Supplement 7, 69-72 (1992).
4. Ashkenazi, A., Capon, and D. Ward, R. Immunoadhesins. *Int. Rev. Immunol.* **10**, 217-225 (1993).
5. Ashkenazi, A., and Peralta, E. Muscarinic Receptors. In *Handbook of Receptors and Channels*. (S. Peroutka, ed.), CRC Press, Boca Raton, Vol. I, p. 1-27, (1994).
6. Krantz, S. B., Means, R. T., Jr., Lina, J., Marsters, S. A., and Ashkenazi, A. Inhibition of erythroid colony formation in vitro by gamma interferon. In *Molecular Biology of Hematopoiesis* (N. Abraham, R. Shadduck, A. Levine F. Takaku, eds.) Intercept Ltd. Paris, Vol. 3, p. 135-147 (1994).
7. Ashkenazi, A. Cytokine neutralization as a potential therapeutic approach for SIRS and shock. *J. Biotechnology in Healthcare* 1, 197-206 (1994).
8. Ashkenazi, A., and Chamow, S. M. Immunoadhesins: an alternative to human monoclonal antibodies. *Immunomethods: A companion to Methods in Enzimology* 8, 104-115 (1995).
9. Chamow, S., and Ashkenazi, A. Immunoadhesins: Principles and Applications. *Trends Biotech.* 14, 52-60 (1996).
10. Ashkenazi, A., and Chamow, S. M. Immunoadhesins as research tools and therapeutic agents. *Curr. Opin. Immunol.* 9, 195-200 (1997).
11. Ashkenazi, A., and Dixit, V. Death receptors: signaling and modulation. *Science* **281**, 1305-1308 (1998).
12. Ashkenazi, A., and Dixit, V. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. *Curr. Opin. Cell. Biol.* 11, 255-260 (1999).

13. Ashkenazi, A. Chapters on Apo2L/TRAIL; DR4, DR5, DcR1, DcR2; and DcR3. Online Cytokine Handbook (www.apnet.com/cytokinereference/).
14. Ashkenazi, A. Targeting death and decoy receptors of the tumor necrosis factor superfamily. *Nature Rev. Cancer* 2, 420-430 (2002).
15. LeBlanc, H. and Ashkenazi, A. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. *Cell Death and Differentiation* 10, 66-75 (2003).
16. Almasan, A. and Ashkenazi, A. Apo2L/TRAIL: apoptosis signaling, biology, and potential for cancer therapy. Cytokine and Growth Factor Reviews 14, 337-348 (2003).

Book:

Antibody Fusion Proteins (Chamow, S., and Ashkenazi, A., eds., John Wiley and Sons Inc.) (1999).

Talks:

1. Resistance of primary HIV isolates to CD4 is independent of CD4-gp120 binding affinity. UCSD Symposium, HIV Disease: Pathogenesis and Therapy. Greenelefe, FL, March 1991.
2. Use of immuno-hybrids to extend the half-life of receptors. IBC conference on Biopharmaceutical Halflife Extension. New Orleans, LA, June 1992.
3. Results with TNF receptor Immunoadhesins for the Treatment of Sepsis. IBC conference on Endotoxemia and Sepsis. Philadelphia, PA, June 1992.
4. Immunoadhesins: an alternative to human antibodies. IBC conference on Antibody Engineering. San Diego, CA, December 1993.
5. Tumor necrosis factor receptor: a potential therapeutic for human septic shock. American Society for Microbiology Meeting, Atlanta, GA, May 1993.
6. Protective efficiacy of TNF receptor immunoadhesin vs anti-TNF monoclonal antibody in a rat model for endotoxic shock. 5th International Congress on TNF. Asilomar, CA, May 1994.
7. Interferon-γ signals via a multisubunit receptor complex that contains two types of polypeptide chain. American Association of Immunologists Conference. San Franciso, CA, July 1995.
8. Immunoadhesins: Principles and Applications. Gordon Research Conference on Drug Delivery in Biology and Medicine. Ventura, CA, February 1996.

9. Apo-2 Ligand, a new member of the TNF family that induces apoptosis in tumor cells.. Cambridge Symposium on TNF and Related Cytokines in Treatment of Cancer. Hilton-Head, NC, March 1996.
10. Induction of apoptosis by Apo2 Ligand. American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Symposium on Growth Factors and Cytokine Receptors. New Orleans, LA, June, 1996.
11. Apo2 ligand, an extracellular trigger of apoptosis. 2nd Clontech Symposium, Palo Alto, CA, October 1996.
12. Regulation of apoptosis by members of the TNF ligand and receptor families. Stanford University School of Medicine, Palo Alto, CA, December 1996.
13. Apo-3: anovel receptor that regulates cell death and inflammation. 4th International Congress on Immune Consequences of Trauma, Shock, and Sepsis. Munich, Germany, March 1997.
14. New members of the TNF ligand and receptor families that regulate apoptosis, inflammation, and immunity. UCLA School of Medicine, LA, CA, March 1997.
15. Immunoadhesins: an alternative to monoclonal antibodies. 5th World Conference on Bispecific Antibodies. Volendam, Holland, June 1997.
16. Control of Apo2L signaling. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Symposium on Programmed Cell Death. Cold Spring Harbor, New York. September, 1997.
17. Chairman and speaker, Apoptosis Signaling session. IBC's 4th Annual Conference on Apoptosis. San Diego, CA., October 1997.
18. Control of Apo2L signaling by death and decoy receptors. American Association for the Advancement of Science. Philladelphia, PA, February 1998.
19. Apo2 ligand and its receptors. American Society of Immunologists.. San Francisco, CA, April 1998.
20. Death receptors and ligands. 7th International TNF Congress. Cape Cod, MA, May 1998.
21. Apo2L as a potential therapeutic for cancer. UCLA School of Medicine. LA, CA, June 1998.
22. Apo2L as a potential therapeutic for cancer. Gordon Research Conference on Cancer Chemotherapy. New London, NH, July 1998.
23. Control of apoptosis by Apo2L. Endocrine Society Conference, Stevenson, WA, August 1998.
24. Control of apoptosis by Apo2L. International Cytokine Society Conference, Jerusalem, Israel, October 1998.

25. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. American Association for Cancer Research Conference, Whistler, BC, Canada, March 1999.
26. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology Conference, San Francisco, CA, May 1999.
27. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. Gordon Research Conference on Apoptosis, New London, NH, June 1999.
28. Apoptosis control by death and decoy receptors. Arthritis Foundation Research Conference, Alexandria GA, Aug 1999.
29. Safety and anti-tumor activity of recombinant soluble Apo2L/TRAIL. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Symposium on Programmed Cell Death. . Cold Spring Harbor, NY, September 1999.
30. The Apo2L/TRAIL system: therapeutic potential. American Association for Cancer Research, Lake Tahoe, NV, Feb 2000.
31. Apoptosis and cancer therapy. Stanford University School of Medicine, Stanford, CA, Mar 2000.
32. Apoptosis and cancer therapy. University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine, Philladelphia, PA, Apr 2000.
33. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. International Congress on TNF. Trondheim, Norway, May 2000.
34. The Apo2L/TRAIL system: therapeutic potential. Cap-CURE summit meeting. Santa Monica, CA, June 2000.
35. The Apo2L/TRAIL system: therapeutic potential. MD Anderson Cancer Center. Houston, TX, June 2000.
36. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. The Protein Society, 14th Symposium. San Diego, CA, August 2000.
37. Anti-tumor activity of Apo2L/TRAIL. AAPS annual meeting. Indianapolis, IN Aug 2000.
38. Apoptosis signaling and anti-cancer potential of Apo2L/TRAIL. Cancer Research Institute, UC San Francisco, CA, September 2000.
39. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. Kenote address, TNF family Minisymposium, NIH. Bethesda, MD, September 2000.
40. Death receptors: signaling and modulation. Keystone symposium on the Molecular basis of cancer. Taos, NM, Jan 2001.
41. Preclinical studies of Apo2L/TRAIL in cancer. Symposium on Targeted therapies in the treatment of lung cancer. Aspen, CO, Jan 2001.

42. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. Wiezmann Institute of Science, Rehovot, Israel, March 2001.
43. Apo2L/TRAIL: Apoptosis signaling and potential for cancer therapy. Weizmann Institute of Science, Rehovot, Israel, March 2001.
44. Targeting death receptors in cancer with Apo2L/TRAIL. Cell Death and Disease conference, North Falmouth, MA, Jun 2001.
45. Targeting death receptors in cancer with Apo2L/TRAIL. Biotechnology Organization conference, San Diego, CA, Jun 2001.
46. Apo2L/TRAIL signaling and apoptosis resistance mechanisms. Gordon Research Conference on Apoptosis, Oxford, UK, July 2001.
47. Apo2L/TRAIL signaling and apoptosis resistance mechanisms. Cleveland Clinic Foundation, Cleveland, OH, Oct 2001.
48. Apoptosis signaling by death receptors: overview. International Society for Interferon and Cytokine Research conference, Cleveland, OH, Oct 2001.
49. Apoptosis signaling by death receptors. American Society of Nephrology Conference. San Francisco, CA, Oct 2001.
50. Targeting death receptors in cancer. Apoptosis: commercial opportunities. San Diego, CA, Apr 2002.
51. Apo2L/TRAIL signaling and apoptosis resistance mechanisms. Kimmel Cancer Research Center, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore MD. May 2002.
52. Apoptosis control by Apo2L/TRAIL. (Keynote Address) University of Alabama Cancer Center Retreat, Birmingham, Ab. October 2002.
53. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. (Session co-chair) TNF international conference. San Diego, CA. October 2002.
54. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. Swiss Institute for Cancer Research (ISREC). Lausanne, Swizerland. Jan 2003.
55. Apoptosis induction with Apo2L/TRAIL. Conference on New Targets and Innovative Strategies in Cancer Treatment. Monte Carlo. February 2003.
56. Apoptosis signaling by Apo2L/TRAIL. Hermelin Brain Tumor Center Symposium on Apoptosis. Detroit, MI. April 2003.
57. Targeting apoptosis through death receptors. Sixth Annual Conference on Targeted Therapies in the Treatment of Breast Cancer. Kona, Hawaii. July 2003.
58. Targeting apoptosis through death receptors. Second International Conference on Targeted Cancer Therapy. Washington, DC. Aug 2003.

Issued Patents:

1. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 5,329,028 (Jul 12, 1994).
2. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 5,605,791 (Feb 25, 1997).
3. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 5,889,155 (Jul 27, 1999).
4. Ashkenazi, A., APO-2 Ligand. US patent 6,030,945 (Feb 29, 2000).
5. Ashkenazi, A., Chuntharapai, A., Kim, J., APO-2 ligand antibodies. US patent 6, 046, 048 (Apr 4, 2000).
6. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 6,124,435 (Sep 26, 2000)..
7. Ashkenazi, A., Chuntharapai, A., Kim, J., Method for making monoclonal and cross-reactive antibodies. US patent 6,252,050 (Jun 26, 2001).
8. Ashkenazi, A. APO-2 Receptor. US patent 6,342,369 (Jan 29, 2002).
9. Ashkenazi, A. Fong, S., Goddard, A., Gurney, A., Napier, M., Tumas, D., Wood, W. A-33 polypeptides. US patent 6,410,708 (Jun 25, 2002).
10. Ashkenazi, A. APO-3 Receptor. US patent 6,462,176 B1 (Oct 8, 2002).
11. Ashkenazi, A. APO-2LI and APO-3 polypeptide antibodies. US patent 6,469,144 B1 (Oct 22, 2002).
12. Ashkenazi, A., Chamow, S. and Kogan, T. Carbohydrate-directed crosslinking reagents. US patent 6,582,928B1 (Jun 24, 2003).

EXHIBIT 15

TECHNICAL UPDATE
FROM YOUR LABORATORY SERVICES PROVIDER

HER-2/neu Breast Cancer Predictive Testing

Julie Sanford Hanna, Ph.D. and Dan Mornin, M.D.

EACH YEAR, OVER 182,000 WOMEN in the United States are diagnosed with breast cancer, and approximately 45,000 die of the disease.[1] Incidence appears to be increasing in the United States at a rate of roughly 2% per year. The reasons for the increase are unclear, but non-genetic risk factors appear to play a large role.[2]

Five-year survival rates range from approximately 65%-85%, depending on demographic group, with a significant percentage of women experiencing recurrence of their cancer within 10 years of diagnosis. One of the factors most predictive for recurrence once a diagnosis of breast cancer has been made is the number of axillary lymph nodes to which tumor has metastasized. Most node-positive women are given adjuvant therapy, which increases their survival. However, 20%-30% of patients without axillary node involvement also develop recurrent disease, and the difficulty lies in how to identify this high-risk subset of patients. These patients could benefit from increased surveillance, early intervention, and treatment.

Prognostic markers currently used in breast cancer recurrence prediction include tumor size, histological grade, steroid hormone receptor status, DNA ploidy, proliferative index, and cathepsin D status. Expression of growth factor receptors and over-expression of the HER-2/neu oncogene have also been identified as having value regarding treatment regimen and prognosis.

HER-2/neu (also known as c-erbB2) is an oncogene that encodes a transmembrane glycoprotein that is homologous to, but distinct from, the epidermal growth factor receptor. Numerous studies have indicated that high levels of expression of this protein are associated with rapid tumor growth, certain forms of therapy resistance, and shorter disease-free survival. The gene has been shown to be amplified and/or overexpressed in 10%-30% of invasive breast cancers and in 40%-60% of intraductal breast carcinoma.[3]

There are two distinct FDA-approved methods by which HER-2/neu status can be evaluated: immunohistochemistry (IHC, HercepTest™) and FISH (fluorescent in situ hybridization, PathVysion™ Kit). Both methods can be performed on archived and current specimens. The first method allows visual assessment of the amount of HER-2/neu protein present on the cell membrane. The latter method allows direct quantification of the level of gene amplification present in the tumor, enabling differentiation between low- versus high-amplification. At least one study has demonstrated a difference in recurrence risk in women younger than 40 years of age for low- versus high-amplified tumors (54.5% compared to 85.7%); this is compared to a recurrence rate of 16.7% for patients with no HER-2/neu gene amplification.[4] HER-2/neu status may be particularly important to establish in women with small (≤1 cm) tumor size.

The choice of methodology for determination of HER-2/neu status depends in part on the clinical setting. FDA approval for the Vysis FISH test was granted based on clinical trials involving 1549 node-positive patients. Patients received one of three different treatments consisting of different doses of cyclophosphamide, Adriamycin, and 5-fluorouracil (CAF). The study showed that patients with amplified HER-2/neu benefited from treatment with higher doses of adriamycin-based therapy, while those with normal HER-2/neu levels did not. The study therefore identified a sub-set of women, who because they did not benefit from more aggressive treatment, did not need to be exposed to the associated side effects. In addition, other evidence indicates that HER-2/neu amplification in node-negative patients can be used as an independent prognostic indicator for early recurrence, recurrent disease at any time and disease-related death.[5] Demonstration of HER-2/neu gene amplification by FISH has also been shown to be of value in predicting response to chemotherapy in stage-2 breast cancer patients.

Selection of patients for Herceptin© (Trastuzumab) monoclonal antibody therapy, however, is based upon demonstration of HER-2/neu protein overexpression using HercepTest™. Studies using Herceptin© in patients with metastatic breast cancer show an increase in time to disease progression, increased response rate to chemotherapeutic agents and a small increase in overall survival rate. The FISH assays have not yet been approved for this purpose, and studies looking at response to Herceptin© in patients with or without gene amplification status determined by FISH are in progress.

In general, FISH and IHC results correlate well. However, subsets of tumors are found which show discordant results; i.e., protein overexpression without gene amplification or lack of protein overexpression with gene amplification. The clinical significance of such results is unclear. Based on the above considerations, HER-2/neu testing at SHMC/PAML will utilize immunohistochemistry (HercepTest©) as a screen, followed by FISH in IHC-negative cases. Alternatively, either method may be ordered individually depending on the clinical setting or clinician preference.

CPT code information

HER-2/neu via IHC

88342 (including interpretive report)

HER-2/neu via FISH

88271×2 Molecular cytogenetics, DNA probe, each
88274 Molecular cytogenetics, interphase in situ hybridization, analyze 25-99 cells
88291 Cytogenetics and molecular cytogenetics, interpretation and report

Procedural Information

Immunohistochemistry is performed using the FDA-approved DAKO antibody kit, Herceptest©. The DAKO kit contains reagents required to complete a two-step immunohistochemical staining procedure for routinely processed, paraffin-embedded specimens. Following incubation with the primary rabbit antibody to human HER-2/neu protein, the kit employs a ready-to-use dextran-based visualization reagent. This reagent consists of both secondary goat anti-rabbit antibody molecules with horseradish peroxidase molecules linked to a common dextran polymer backbone, thus eliminating the need for sequential application of link antibody and peroxidase conjugated antibody. Enzymatic conversion of the subsequently added chromogen results in formation of visible reaction product at the antigen site. The specimen is then counterstained; a pathologist using light-microscopy interprets results.

FISH analysis at SHMC/PAML is performed using the FDA-approved PathVysion™ HER-2/neu DNA probe kit, produced by Vysis, Inc. Formalin fixed, paraffin-embedded breast tissue is processed using routine histological methods, and then slides are treated to allow hybridization of DNA probes to the nuclei present in the tissue section. The Pathvysion™ kit contains two direct-labeled DNA probes, one specific for the alphoid repetitive DNA (CEP 17, spectrum orange) present at the chromosome 17 centromere and the second for the HER-2/neu oncogene located at 17q11.2-12 (spectrum green). Enumeration of the probes allows a ratio of the number of copies of chromosome 17 to the number of copies of HER-2/neu to be obtained; this enables quantification of low versus high amplification levels, and allows an estimate of the percentage of cells with HER-2/neu gene amplification. The clinically relevant distinction is whether the gene amplification is due to increased gene copy number on the two chromosome 17 homologues normally present or an increase in the number of chromosome 17s in the cells. In the majority of cases, ratio equivalents less than 2.0 are indicative of a normal/negative result, ratios of 2.1 and over indicate that amplification is present and to what degree. Interpretation of this data will be performed and reported from the Vysis-certified Cytogenetics laboratory at SHMC.

References

1. Wingo, P.A., Tong, T., Bolden, S., "Cancer Statistics", 1995;45:1:8-31.
2. "Cancer Rates and Risks", 4th ed., National Institutes of Health, National Cancer Institute, 1996, p. 120.
3. Slamon, D.J., Clark, G.M., Song, S.G., Levin, W.J., Ullrich, A., McGuire, W.L. "Human breast Cancer: Correlation of relapse and survival with amplification of the her-2/neu oncogene". Science, 235:177-182, 1987.
4. Xing, W.R., Gilchrist, K.W., Harris, C.P., Samson, W., Meisner, L.F. "FISH detection of HER-s/neu oncogene amplification in early onset breast cancer". Breast Cancer Res. And Treatment 39(2):203-212, 1996.
5. Press, M.F; Bernstein, L., Thomas, P.A., Meisner, L.F., Zhou, J.Y., Ma, Y., Hung, G., Robinson, R.A., Harris, C., El-Naggar, A., Slamon, D.J., Phillips, R.N., Ross, J.S., Wolman, S.R., Flom, K.J., "Her-2/neu gene amplification characterized by fluorescence in situ hybridization: poor prognosis in node-negative breast carcinomas", J. Clinical Oncology 15(8):2894-2904, 1997.

Provided for the clients of

PATHOLOGY ASSOCIATES MEDICAL LABORATORIES
PACLAB NETWORK LABORATORIES
TRI-CITIES LABORATORY
TREASURE VALLEY LABORATORY

For more information, please contact your local representative.

EXHIBIT 16

US006737522B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Sundick et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,737,522 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: *May 18, 2004**

(54) **CHICKEN INTERLEUKIN-15 AND USES THEREOF**

(75) Inventors: **Roy S. Sundick**, Farmington Hills, MI (US); **Lily A. Jones**, Grosse Point Park, MI (US); **David I. Smith**, Rochester, MN (US)

(73) Assignee: **Wayne State University**, Detroit, MI (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/907,539**

(22) Filed: **Jul. 17, 2001**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2002/0150554 A1 Oct. 17, 2002

Related U.S. Application Data

(62) Division of application No. 09/368,613, filed on Aug. 4, 1999, now Pat. No. 6,287,554, and a division of application No. 08/729,004, filed on Oct. 10, 1996, now Pat. No. 6,190,901.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/005,682, filed on Oct. 17, 1995.

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **C07H 21/04**; C12N 15/00; C12N 15/63

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **536/23.51**; 536/23.1; 435/320.1

(58) **Field of Search** 536/23.11, 23.51; 435/320.11, 455.1, 471

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,490,289	A	12/1984	Stern
4,992,367	A	2/1991	Cullen
5,106,617	A	4/1992	Federicksen et al.
5,149,788	A	9/1992	Bailon et al.
5,162,503	A	11/1992	Bailon et al.
5,455,337	A	10/1995	Devos et al.
5,536,657	A	7/1996	Chua et al.
5,597,901	A	1/1997	Stern

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 293 180	11/1988	..... C12P/21/02
EP	0 473 696 B1	7/1995	
WO	WO95/27722	10/1995	
WO	WO96/04306	2/1996	
WO	WO96/37223	2/1996	
ZA	9 402 636	11/1994	

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

IL–15 Stimulates The Expansion of Aids Virus–specific CTL[1] (The Journal of Immunology, 1996, 157: 3681–3687. Studies Evaluating The Antitumor Activity And Toxicity of Interleukin–15, a New T Cell Growth Factor: Comparison With Interleukin–2 (Immunex Research And Development Corporation, Seattle, Washington 98101 And Oncology And Immunology Research Section, Lederle Laboratories, Pearl River, New York 10965, 1965.

Dialog(R)File 149:iac(sm) Health & Wellness Db(sm) (C) 1997 Info Access Co. (II–15 Boosts Systemic Immunity Against B7–1 Gene Transfected Breast Cancer Cells (Interleukin 15).

Lillehoj et al., "Avian Interferon and Interleukin–2. A Review by Comparison With Mammalian Homologues" *Poultry Science Research*, vol. 4, No. 2, pp. 67–85, 1992.

Interleukin–15, A New T Cell Growth Factor: Comparison with Interleukin–2 (Immunex Research and Development Corporation, Seattle, Washington 98101 and Oncology and Immunology Research Section, Lederle Laboratories, Pearl River, New York 10965) 1995.

Sin et al., J. Virol. vol. 73, 501–509, 1999.

Rodolfo and Colombo, Methods, vol. 19, 114–120, 1999.

Openshaw and Hussell, Dev. Biol. Stand., vol. 92, 179–185, 1998.

Armitage et al., "IL–15 Has Stimulatory Activity for the Induction of B Cell Proliferation and Differentiation" Journal of Immunology, vol. 154, No. 2, pp. 483–490, 1995.

Gini et al., "IL–15 A Novel T Cell Growth Factor That Shares Activities and Receptor Components With IL–2" Journal of Leukocyte Biology, vol. 57, No. 5, pp. 763–766, 1995.

Staeheli et al., "Cytokines of Birds: Conserved Functions–A Largely Different Look" Journal of Interferon and Cytokine, vol. 21, No. 12, pp. 993–1010, 2001.

Primary Examiner—David Guzo
Assistant Examiner—Quang Nguyen
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Darby & Darby

(57) **ABSTRACT**

The present invention pertains to isolated DNA encoding avian interleukin-15 and to purified interleukin-15 polypeptides.

27 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets

FIG. 1A

T7 end of the pCDNA1 vector:

5'-TGCTTGGTACCGAGCTCGGATCCACTAGTAACGCCCGCCAGTGTGCTCTAAAG-

Noncoding Segment of cDNA: *CAGATAACTGGGACACTGCC

Coding Region of First Open Region Frame (IL-15):

ATGATGTGCAAAGTACTGATCTTTGGCTGTATTTCGGTAGCAACGCTAATG

ACTACAGCTTATGGAGCATCTCTATCATCAGCAAAAAGGAAACCTCTTCAA

ACATTAATAAAGGATTTAGAAATATTGGAAAATATCAAGAACAAGATTCAT

CTCGAGCTCTACACACCAACTGAGACCCAGGAGTGCACCCAGCAAACTCTG

CAGTGTTACCTGGGAGAAGTGGTTACTCTGAAGAAAGAAACTGAAGATGAC

ACTGAAATTAAAGAAGAATTTGTAACTGCTATTCAAAATATCGAAAAGAAC

CTCAAGAGTCTTACGGGTCTAAATCACACCGGAAGTGAATGCAAGATCTGT

GAAGCTAACAACAAGAAAAAATTTCCTGATTTTCTCCATGAACTGACCAAC

TTTGTGAGATATCTGCAAAAA

A ——————————————————————————————— A

FIG. 1B

A — A

Sequence of Remaining Insert cDNA:

TAAGCAACTAATCATTTTTATTTTACTGCTATGTTATTTATTTAATTATTT

AATTACAGATAATTTATATATTTTATCCCGTGGCTAACTAATCTGCTGTCC

ATTCTGGGACCACTGTATGCTCTTAGTCTGGGTGATATGACGTCTGTTCTA

AGATCATATTTGATCCTTTCTGTAACCTACGGGCTCAAAATGTACGTTGGA

AAACTGATTGATTCTCACTTTGTCGGTAAAGTGATATGTGTTTACTGAAAG

AATTTTTAAAAGTCACTTCTAGATGACATTTAATAAATTTCAG#

Sp6 end of the pcDNA1 vector:

CTTTAGAGCACACTGGCGGCCCNTCGAGCATGCATCTAGAGGGCC-3'

* beginning of cDNA

end of cDNA

FIG. 2

chicken IL-15 precursor, 143 amino acids

MMCKVLIFGCISVATLMTTAYGASLSSAKRKPLQTLIKDLEILENIKNKI
HLELYTPTETQECTQQTLQCYLGEVVTLKKETEDDTEIKEEFVTAIQNIE
KNLKSLTGLNHTGSECKICEANNKKKFPDFLHELTNFVRYLQK

CHICKEN INTERLEUKIN-15 AND USES THEREOF

This is a divisional of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/368,613 filed Aug. 4, 1999, which issued as U.S. Pat. No. 6,287,554 and is a divisional of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/729,004, filed on Oct. 10, 1996 and now issued as U.S. Pat. No. 6,190,901. U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/729,004 claims priority to U.S. provisional patent application Serial No. 60/005,682 filed on Oct. 17, 1995. Each of these prior applications is hereby incorporated herein by reference, in its entirety.

FIELD OF INVENTION

The present invention pertains to isolated genes encoding avian interleukin-15 and to purified interleukin-15 polypeptides.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Most chickens produced in developed countries for consumption and egg-laying (at least 10 billion per year) are vaccinated to protect them against Marek's disease. All of the egg-laying chickens and breeder stocks are also vaccinated with Newcastle Disease Virus, Infectious Bursal Disease Virus, Infectious Bronchitis Virus, Fowlpox Virus and Coccidial vaccines. For optimal protection, Marek's vaccination is performed either at or before hatching. One obstacle to the development of efficacious pre-hatching and at-hatching vaccination regimens is that the embryonic and newly hatched avian immune system is not fully developed and cannot mount as effective an immune response to the immunogen as at 2–3 weeks after hatching. Thus, there is a need in the art for agents and compositions that enhance the effectiveness of pre- and post-hatching avian vaccines.

Interleukin-2 and interleukin-15 are related cytokines that stimulate the activity and proliferation of T cells in mammals. Though IL-2 and IL-15 both interact with the β and γ chains of the IL-2 receptor, and may share some elements of tertiary structure, the two polypeptides are not homologous and represent distinct gene products.

The genes encoding IL-15 from several different mammalian species share a high degree of homology. For example, human and simian IL-15 share 97% amino acid homology. By contrast, chicken IL-15, which is the subject of the present invention, shares only 25% amino acid identity with mammalian IL-15. Another distinguishing characteristic of chicken IL-15 is that it (and not the mammalian forms) is produced by mitogen-activated spleen cells. Accordingly, the discovery of chicken IL-15 and the finding that it possesses T cell-stimulatory activity provide a novel reagent for vaccine augmentation in avian species. Without wishing to be bound by theory, the bioactivity of mammalian IL-15 in stimulating skeletal muscle development suggests that avian IL-15s are also useful in stimulating growth in avian species.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides isolated and purified DNA encoding avian interleukin-15 (IL-15), as well as cloning and expression vectors comprising IL-15 DNA and cells transformed with IL-15-encoding vectors. Avian species from which IL-15 may be derived include without limitation chicken, turkey, duck, goose, quail and pheasant.

The invention also provides isolated and purified avian IL-15 polypeptide, the native secreted or mature form of which has a molecular mass of about 14 kDa, an isoelectric point of about 6.57, a net charge of −2, and a hydrophilicity index of 0.278, and which has the ability to stimulate mitogen-activated avian T cells and to promote the growth of other cell types. IL-15 according to the present invention may be obtained from native or recombinant sources.

Also encompassed by the invention are sequence-conservative and function-conservative variants of avian IL-15 DNA and IL-15 polypeptides, including, for example, a bioactive IL-15 sequence or sub-fragment that is fused in-frame to a purification sequence.

In another aspect, the invention provides a method for enhancing an immune response in fowl to an immunogen, which is achieved by administering the immunogen before, after, or substantially simultaneously with avian IL-15 in an amount effective to enhance the immune response.

In yet another aspect, the invention provides a vaccine for inducing an immune response in fowl to an immunogen, comprising the immunogen and an effective amount of avian interleukin-15 for immune response enhancement. The immunogen may be derived, for example, from avian pathogens such as Marek's Disease Virus, Newcastle Disease Virus, Infectious Bursal Disease Virus, Infectious Bronchitis Virus, and the like.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. **1** is an illustration of an 845 nt sequence including 747 nt of cDNA sequence encoding chicken interleukin-15 (IL-15) SEQ ID NO:1.

FIG. **2** is an illustration of a 143-amino acid sequence corresponding to the chicken interleukin-15 precursor polypeptide (SEQ ID NO:2).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

All patent applications, patents, and literature references cited in this specification are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety. In case of conflict, the present description, including definitions, will control.

The present invention encompasses interleukin-15 (IL-15) from avian species. The invention provides isolated and purified nucleic acids encoding avian IL-15, as well as IL-15 polypeptides purified from either native or recombinant sources. Avian IL-15 produced according to the present invention may be used in commercial fowl cultivation to promote growth and to enhance the efficacy of avian vaccines.

Nucleic Acids, Vectors, Transformants

The sequence of the cDNA encoding chicken IL-15 is shown in FIG. **1** (SEQ ID NO:1), and the predicted amino acid sequence of chicken IL-15 is shown in FIG. **2** (SEQ ID NO:2). The designation of this avian polypeptide as IL-15 is based on partial amino acid sequence homology to mammalian IL-15 and the ability of the polypeptide to stimulate mitogen-activated T cells (see below). Furthermore, without wishing to be bound by theory, it is predicted that avian IL-15 polypeptides also exhibit one or more of the following bioactivities: activation of NK (natural killer) cells, stimulation of B-Cell maturation, proliferation of mast cells, and interaction with the beta and gamma subunits of the IL-2 receptor.

Because of the degeneracy of the genetic code (i.e., multiple codons encode certain amino acids), DNA sequences other than that shown in FIG. **1** can also encode the chicken IL-15 amino acid sequences shown in FIG. **2**.

Such other DNAs include those containing "sequence-conservative" variations in which a change in one or more nucleotides in a given codon results in no alteration in the amino acid encoded at that position. Furthermore, a given amino acid residue in a polypeptide can often be changed without altering the overall conformation and function of the native polypeptide. Such "function-conservative" variants include, but are not limited to, replacement of an amino acid with one having similar physico-chemical properties, such as, for example, acidic, basic, hydrophobic, and the like (e.g., replacement of lysine with arginine, aspartate with glutamate, or glycine with alanine). In addition, amino acid sequences may be added or deleted without destroying the bioactivity of the molecule. For example, additional amino acid sequences may be added at either amino- or carboxy-terminal ends to serve as purification tags, (i.e., to allow one-step purification of the protein, after which they may be chemically or enzymatically removed). Alternatively, the additional sequences may confer an additional cell-surface binding site or otherwise alter the target cell specificity of IL-15.

The chicken IL-15 cDNAs within the scope of the present invention are those of FIG. 1, sequence-conservative variant DNAs, DNA sequences encoding function-conservative variant polypeptides, and combinations thereof. The invention encompasses fragments of avian interleukin-15 that exhibit a useful degree of bioactivity, either alone or in combination with other sequences or components. As explained below, it is well within the ordinary skill in the art to predictively manipulate the sequence of IL-15 and establish whether a given avian IL-15 variant possesses an appropriate stability and bioactivity for a given application. This can be achieved by expressing and purifying the variant IL-15 polypeptide in a recombinant system and assaying its T-cell stimulatory activity and/or growth-promoting activity in cell culture and in animals, followed by testing in the application.

The present invention also encompasses IL-15 DNAs (and polypeptides) derived from other avian species, including without limitation ducks, turkeys, pheasants, quail and geese. Avian IL-15 homologues of the chicken sequence shown in FIG. 1 are easily identified by screening cDNA or genomic libraries to identify clones that hybridize to probes comprising all or part of the sequence of FIG. 1. Alternatively, expression libraries may be screened using antibodies that recognize chicken IL-15. Without wishing to be bound by theory, it is anticipated that IL-15 genes from other avian species will share at least about 70% homology with the chicken IL-15 gene. Also within the scope of the invention are DNAs that encode chicken homologues of IL-15, defined as DNA encoding polypeptides that share at least about 25% amino acid identity with chicken IL-15.

Generally, nucleic acid manipulations according to the present invention use methods that are well known in the art, such as those as disclosed in, for example, *Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual* (2nd Ed., Sambrook, Fritsch and Maniatis, Cold Spring Harbor), or *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology* (Eds. Aufubel, Brent, Kingston, More, Feidman, Smith and Stuhl, Greene Publ. Assoc., Wiley-Interscience, NY, N.Y., 1992).

The present invention encompasses cDNA and RNA sequences and sense and antisense sequences. The invention also encompasses genomic avian IL-15 polypeptide DNA sequences and flanking sequences, including, but not limited to, regulatory sequences. Nucleic acid sequences encoding avian IL-15 polypeptide(s) may also be associated with heterologous sequences, including promoters, enhancers, response elements, signal sequences, polyadenylation sequences, introns, 5'- and 3'- noncoding regions, and the like. Transcriptional regulatory elements that may be operably linked to avian IL-15 polypeptide DNA sequence(s) include without limitation those that have the ability to direct the expression of genes derived from prokaryotic cells, eukaryotic cells, viruses of prokaryotic cells, viruses of eukaryotic cells, and any combination thereof. Other useful heterologous sequences are known to those skilled in the art.

The nucleic acids of the present invention can be modified by methods known to those skilled in the art to alter their stability, solubility, binding affinity, and specificity. For example, the sequences can be selectively methylated. The nucleic acid sequences of the present invention may also be modified with a label capable of providing a detectable signal, either directly or indirectly. Exemplary labels include radioisotopes, fluorescent molecules, biotin, and the like.

The present invention also provides vectors that include nucleic acids encoding the avian IL-15 polypeptide(s). Such vectors include, for example, plasmid vectors for expression in a variety of eukaryotic and prokaryotic hosts. Preferably, vectors also include a promoter operably linked to the avian IL-15 polypeptide encoding portion. The encoded avian IL-15 polypeptide(s) may be expressed by using any suitable vectors and host cells as explained herein or otherwise known to those skilled in the art.

Vectors will often include one or more replication systems for cloning or expression, one or more markers for selection in the host such as, for example, antibiotic resistance, and one or more expression cassettes. The inserted coding sequences may be synthesized, isolated from natural sources, prepared as hybrids, or the like. Ligation of the coding sequences to the transcriptional regulatory sequences may be achieved by methods known to those skilled in the art. Suitable host cells may be transformed/transfected/infected by any suitable method including electroporation, $CaCl_2$- or liposome-mediated DNA uptake, fungal infection, microinjection, microprojectile, or the like.

Suitable vectors for use in practicing the present invention include without limitation YEp352, pcDNAI (In Vitrogen, San Diego, Calif.), pRc/CMV (InVitrogen), and pSFV1 (GIBCO/BRL, Gaithersburg, Md.). One preferred vector for use in the invention is pSFV1. Suitable host cells include *E. Coli*, yeast, COS cells, PC12 cells, CHO cells, GH4C1 cells, BHK-21 cells, and amphibian melanophore cells. BHK-21 cells are a preferred host cell line for use in practicing the present invention.

Nucleic acids encoding avian IL-15 polypeptide(s) may also be introduced into cells by recombination events. For example, such a sequence can be microinjected into a cell, effecting homologous recombination at the site of an endogenous gene encoding the polypeptide, an analog or pseudogene thereof, or a sequence with substantial identity to an avian IL-15 polypeptide-encoding gene. Other recombination-based methods such as non-homologous recombinations, and deletion of endogenous gene by homologous recombination, especially in pluripotent cells, may also be used.

IL-15 Polypeptides

The chicken IL-15 gene (the cDNA of which is shown in FIG. 1) encodes a polypeptide of 143 amino acids (FIG. 2). Without wishing to be bound by theory, by comparison with simian IL-15, and by use of an accepted procedure to predict signal peptidase cleavage sites (Von Heijne, *Nuc.Acids Res.*, 14:4683, 1986), it is predicted that an aminoterminal leader sequence of about 22 amino acids (secretion signal peptide)

is cleaved from the primary translation product to produce mature IL-15. The predicted mature sequence of 121 amino acids is further characterized by a predicted molecular weight of 13,971 daltons; an isoelectric point of 6.57; four cysteine residues (at amino acids numbers 63, 70, 116, and 119 in the precursor IL-15 shown in FIG. 2) that correspond to four cysteines conserved among human, mouse, and monkey IL-15 and that are believed to participate in intramolecular disulfide bonding; and one consensus site for N-linked glycosylation (at asparagine 110 of the sequence shown in FIG. 2) which corresponds to a similar site in human IL-15.

Purification of IL-15 from natural or recombinant sources may be achieved by methods well-known in the art, including without limitation ion-exchange chromatography, reverse-phase chromatography on C4 columns, gel filtration, isoelectric focusing, affinity chromatography, immunoaffinity chromatography, and the like. In a preferred embodiment, large quantities of bioactive IL-15 may be obtained by constructing a recombinant DNA sequence comprising the coding region for IL-15 fused in frame to a sequence encoding 6 C-terminal histidine residues in the pSFV1 replicon (GIBCO/BRL). mRNA encoded by this plasmid is synthesized using techniques well-known to those skilled in the art and introduced into BHK-21 cells by electroporation. The cells synthesize and secrete mature glycosylated IL-15 polypeptides containing 6 C-terminal histidines. The modified IL-15 polypeptides are easily purified from the cell supernatant by affinity chromatography using a histidine-binding resin (His-bind, Novagen, Madison, Wis.).

Avian IL-15 polypeptides isolated from any source can be modified by methods known in the art. For example, avian IL-15 may be phosphorylated or dephosphorylated, glycosylated or deglycosylated, and the like. Especially useful are modifications that alter avian IL-15 solubility, stability, and binding specificity and affinity.

Anti-IL-15 Antibodies

The present invention encompasses antibodies that are specific for avian IL-15 polypeptides identified as described above. The antibodies may be polyclonal or monoclonal, and may discriminate avian IL-15s from different species, identify functional domains, and the like. Such antibodies are conveniently made using the methods and compositions disclosed in Harlow and Lane, *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, 1988, other references cited herein, as well as immunological and hybridoma technologies known to those in the art. Where natural or synthetic avian IL-15-derived peptides are used to induce an avian IL-15-specific immune response, the peptides may be conveniently coupled to a suitable carrier such as KLH and administered in a suitable adjuvant such as Freund's. Preferably, selected peptides are coupled to a lysine core carrier substantially according to the methods of Tam (1988) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA,* 85:5409–5413. The resulting antibodies may be modified to a monovalent form e.g. Fab, FAB', or FV. Anti-idiotypic antibodies, especially internal imaging anti-idiotypic antibodies, may also be prepared using known methods.

In one embodiment, purified avian IL-15 is used to immunize mice, after which their spleens are removed, and splenocytes used to form cell hybrids with myeloma cells to obtain clones of antibody-secreting cells according to techniques that are standard in the art. The resulting monoclonal antibodies secreted by such cells are screened using in vitro assays for the following activities: binding to avian IL-15, inhibiting the receptor-binding activity of IL-15, and inhibiting the T-cell stimulatory activity of IL-15.

Anti-avian IL-15 antibodies may be used to identify and quantify avian IL-15, using immunoassays such as ELISA, RIA, and the like. Anti-avian IL-15 antibodies may also be used to immunodeplete extracts of avian IL-15. In addition, these antibodies can be used to identify, isolate, and purify avian IL-15s from different sources, and to perform subcellular and histochemical localization studies.

Applications

Avian IL-15 produced according to the present invention can be used beneficially in homologous or heterologous avian species, for example, to stimulate activated T-cells (Grabstein et al., *Science,* 264:965, 1994) and B-cells (Armitage et al., *J. Immunol.,* 154:483, 1995) and/or to promote the growth of non-immune cells, such as, for example, muscle cells (Quinn et al., *Endocrinol.* 136:3669, 1995).

Vaccines

The present invention encompasses methods and compositions for enhancing the efficacy of an immune response in avian species. In this embodiment, avian IL-15 is used in conjunction with an immunogen for which it is desired to elicit an immune response. For example, in avian vaccines, such as those against Marek's disease, Newcastle Disease Virus, and other pathogens such as Infectious Bursal Disease Virus and Infectious Bronchitis Virus, it is desirable to include avian IL-15 in the vaccine to enhance the magnitude and quality of the immune response. For this purpose, IL-15 purified from native or recombinant sources as described above is included in the vaccine formulation at a concentration ranging from about 0.01 μg to about 1.0 μg per vaccine per chicken.

IL-15 may be administered in conjunction with a live (i.e., replicating) vaccine or a non-replicating vaccine. Non-limiting examples of replicating vaccines are those comprising native or recombinant viruses or bacteria, such as modified turkey herpesvirus or modified fowlpox virus. Non-limiting examples of non-replicating vaccines are those comprising killed or inactivated viruses or other microorganisms, or crude or purified antigens derived from native, recombinant, or synthetic sources, such as, for example, coccidial vaccines. Commercial sources for avian vaccines include without limitation: Rhone Merieux Laboratoire-IFFA (Lyon, France); Intervet International BV (Boxmeer, The Netherlands); Mallinckrodt Veterinary; Solvay Animal Health (Mendota Heights, Minn.); Hoechst-Roussel (Knoxville, Tenn.); and Nippon Zeon Co., Ltd. (Kawasaki-Kiu, Japan).

In one embodiment, the gene encoding IL-15 is incorporated into a recombinant virus, which is then formulated into a live vaccine. The IL-15 gene is incorporated into the virus so that its expression is controlled by an appropriate promoter. Administration of the vaccine results in the expression of bioactive IL-15 in close temporal and spatial proximity to the desired immune response, thus enhancing the vaccine's efficacy.

IL-15 may be administered to birds as part of a vaccine formulation either before or after hatching, preferably before hatching, using methods known in the art such as those described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,034,513 and 5,028,421.

Growth Promotion

The present invention provides methods and compositions for enhancing the growth of avian species for medical and/or commercial purposes. In this embodiment, IL-15 is administered to birds using any appropriate mode of administration. For growth promotion, IL-15 is administered in amounts ranging from about 0.25 μg/kg/day to about 25 μg/kg/day. It will be understood that the required amount of

IL-15 can be determined by routine experimentation well-known in the art, such as by establishing a matrix of dosages and frequencies and comparing a group of experimental units or subjects to each point in the matrix.

According to the present invention, native or recombinant avian IL-15 may be formulated with a physiologically acceptable carrier, such as, for example, phosphate buffered saline or deionized water. The formulation may also contain excipients, including lubricant(s), plasticizer(s), colorant(s), absorption enhancer(s), bactericide(s), and the like that are well-known in the art. The IL-15 polypeptide of the invention may be administered by any effective means, including without limitation intravenous, subcutaneous, intramuscular, transmucosal, topical, or oral routes. For subcutaneous administration, for example, the dosage form may consist of IL-15 in sterile physiological saline. For oral administration, IL-15, with or without excipients, may be micro- or macro-encapsulated in, e.g., liposomes and microspheres. Dermal patches (or other slow-release dosage forms) may also be used.

The following examples are intended to further illustrate the invention without limiting its scope thereof.

EXAMPLE 1

Cloning of the Chicken IL-15 Gene

To clone chicken IL-15, a chicken spleen cell cDNA library derived from spleen cells that had been activated with concanavalin A was utilized (Kaplan, *J. Immunol,* 151:628, 1993). 5000 colonies were grown overnight at 35° C. on LB agar plates containing 30 μg/ml ampicillin and 10 μg/ml tetracycline. 15–20 colonies were pooled and transferred to 10 ml Terrific Broth (containing the same antibiotics) and grown overnight. Plasmid DNA from each pool was then isolated by published procedures (Maniatis, Section 1.28), treated with RNAase (10 μg/ml), and stored in TE buffer.

The plasmid DNAs were transfected into COS-7(ATCC) cells using Lipofectamine (GIBCO/BRL, Gaithersburg, Md.). 1 μg of each plasmid pool was mixed with 3 μl Lipofectamine in 100 μl Opti-MEM medium (GIBCO/BRL), incubated for 30 min, and then placed on COS-7 cells that had been grown to 80–90% confluence in 12-well plates and rinsed in serum-free medium. The cells and DNA were incubated for 5 hrs at 37° C. with Dulbecco's MEM in the absence of serum and antibiotics, and then supplemented with the same medium containing 10% fetal calf serum and incubated overnight at 37° C. The next day, the medium was replaced with Dulbecco's MEM containing 10% fetal calf serum, penicillin, and streptomycin. After an additional 24 hrs of incubation, the medium was collected and stored at −20° C.

The cell supernatants were tested for IL-15 activity as described in Example 2 below. Five pools with the highest stimulation indices (1.6 to 2.1) exhibited levels of activity that were greater than 2 standard deviations from the mean of the remaining 278 pools. Three of the five pools remained positive in a second screen, and were subdivided into pools of 6. Plasmid DNA extracted from the secondary pools was used to transfect COS-7 cells and the supernatants were tested for IL-2-like activity. As described below in Example 2, three positive pools were identified and subdivided to yield individual clones; from each pool at least one positive clone was isolated.

The complete cDNA inserts of all three positive clones were sequenced using the automated Applied Biosystems Model 373A sequencing system. The flanking T7 and SP6 primers contained in the pcDNA1 vector were used to prime the sequencing reaction. Two of the clones, B2.16.2 and M2.12.1, were identical and coded for the cDNA sequence shown in FIG. 1. Clone F19.84 was similar to those two clones, but was missing the 20 nt at its 5' end (i.e., starting at the first ATG of the coding region) and contained a poly T tail of at least 100 nt at its 3' end.

The entire 747 nt sequence (FIG. 1, SEQ ID NO:1) was analyzed using a BLAST search (which accesses all of the major international nucleotide data banks). No significant homology was detected with any other known sequence. The sequence was also analyzed using the MacVector software program (MacVector 4.0; International Biotechnologies, Inc., New Haven, Conn.) on a Mac IIci computer. This analysis revealed an open reading frame flanked at its 5' end by a Kozak consensus sequence for translation initiation. The predicted amino acid sequence of this open reading frame is shown in FIG. 2 (Seq ID NO:2). This amino acid sequence was analyzed using a BLASTP search (which accesses all of the major international protein data banks) revealing significant homology with monkey and human precursor IL-15.

The predicted amino acid sequence of chicken IL-15 consists of a 143 amino acid polypeptide having a predicted molecular weight of 16,305 and an isoelectric point of 6.37. Based on the hydrophobicity of its amino terminal end and by comparison with known signal peptide cleavage sites (von Heijne, *Nucleic Acids Res.* 14:4683, 1986) it is predicted that cleavage between glycine-22 and alanine-23 results in the removal of an aminoterminal leader sequence of about 22 amino acids (secretion signal peptide) from the primary product to produce mature IL-15.

The predicted mature IL-15 sequence of 121 amino acids has a predicted molecular weight of 13,971, an isoelectric point of 6.57, and a possible N-linked glycosylation site (at asparagine 110 of FIG. 2). Comparisons between the predicted amino acid sequences of IL-15 from monkey, human, mouse and chicken and analysis of the tertiary structure of monkey IL-15 (Grabstein, *Science,* 264:965, 1994) suggest that four cysteines in chicken IL-15 (positions 63, 70, 116 and 119 of precursor IL-15, FIG. 2) are conserved and form intrachain disulfide bonds.

EXAMPLE 2

Bioactivity Assay for Chicken IL-15

Bioactivity assays for IL-15 are performed as follows: Concanavalin A (ConA)-activated splenic T cells are prepared by incubating chicken spleen cells (10^7 cells/ml) with Con A (10 μg/ml) (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, Mo.) in RPMI 1640 medium (Sigma) containing 2 mg/ml BSA, antibiotics and glutamine at 40° C. for 24 hrs. The medium is then replaced with Iscoves' medium (Sigma) containing 2% normal chicken serum (Sigma) and 0.05M alpha-methyl pyrannoside (Sigma) for an additional 2–4 days, diluting the cells in additional medium as needed. Blast cells are purified from this mixture by gently layering them on a Histopaque density gradient (Sigma) and centrifuging them according to the manufacturer's instructions. The cells are then washed three times and finally resuspended in assay medium (Iscoves' containing 2% normal chicken serum (Sigma)).

For the assay, 2×10^4 blast cells are placed in roundbottom 96 well plates in assay medium containing IL-15 (such as, e.g., dilutions of supernatant from transfected COS-7 cells) or appropriate controls. After overnight incubation at 40° C.,

the cells are pulsed for 6 hrs with ^{3}H-thymidine (0.5 μCi) (New England Nuclear, Boston, Mass.)+fluorodeoxyuridine (10^{-6}M) (Sigma). The cells are then harvested on glass fiber filters (Whatman, Clifton, N.J.), and the radioactivity is measured in a liquid scintillation counter. IL-15 is expressed as a stimulation index, which is the radioactivity in experimental samples—the radioactivity in controls (non-transfected COS-7 supernatants). A typical result is shown in Table 1.

TABLE 1

SOURCE OF PLASMID DNA		Stimulation indices			
DNA	Designation	1/10 dil[a]	1/10 dil[b]	1/33 dil[b]	1/100 dil[b]
PRIMARY POOLS	A19	1.6	1.9	1.3	1.2
	B2	2.1	4.2	2.3	1.7
	E7	1.8	1.7	1.5	0.9
	F19	1.8	3.5	2.0	1.2
	M2	1.7	3.2	1.9	1.3
	Ave. of 278 ± SD	1.1 ± 0.1			
	Ave. of 3 Neg. pools		1.4	1.3	1.1
SECONDARY POOLS	A19.7		0.7	1.9	
	B2.16		6.0	3.5	
	F19.8		9.8	3.4	
	M2.12		3.2	2.2	
INDIVIDUAL CLONES	B2.16.2		6.6	3.3	2.7
	F19.8.4		7.5	4.0	3.0
	M2.12.1		7.2	3.9	3.6

[a]First screening at 1/10 dil.
[b]A repeat transfection using 5 positive and 3 negative primary pools

EXAMPLE 3

Expression and Purification of IL-15

To obtain high-level expression of chicken IL-15 in mammalian cells, the pSFV1 eukaryotic expression vector (which includes the Semliki Forest Virus replicon) is used (GIBCO/BRL, Gaithersburg, Md.). Use of this vector allows for signal peptide cleavage, glycosylation, and secretion of mature active protein. In one embodiment, the recombinant vector encodes an additional six histidine residues at the carboxyterminus of the native IL-15 sequence, allowing the efficient single step purification of the secreted protein on a nickel column (Novagen, Madison, Wis.).

Primers were constructed that include 5' and 3' sequences flanking the coding region of IL-15 cDNA. The 3' primer also includes nucleotides coding for 6 histidines. These primers were used in polymerase chain reaction (PCR), using as a template the entire IL-2 cDNA contained within the pcDNA1 plasmid. The resulting amplified cDNA, including the histidine-coding sequences, was ligated into the pSFV1 plasmid (GIBCO/BRL). The plasmid was obtained by transforming DH5 *E. coli* (GIBCO/BRL) and selecting transformants on agar plates and broth containing ampicillin.

This plasmid is used as a template to produce mRNA in vitro, using manufacturer's protocols. The mRNA is transfected into BHK-21 cells by electroporation, using 10 μg RNA per 10^7 cells, after which the cells are incubated for 1–3 days. The cell supernatant is harvested and passed through a resin matrix (His-Bind resin; Novagen, Madison, Wis.) using a suitable buffer system (His-bind buffer kit; Novagen). Up to 20 mg of tagged protein can be purified on a single 2.5 ml column. The IL-15 is eluted from the column with the elution buffer provided in the kit. It is estimated that BHK-21 cells growing in 50 ml medium synthesize about 25 mg total protein, with up to 5% comprising a recombinantly expressed and secreted protein. This corresponds to approximately 1.25 mg of cIL-15.

EXAMPLE 4

Use of Avian IL-15 in Vaccines

The following experiments are performed to evaluate the immune-enhancing activity of chicken IL-15 in chicken vaccines.

Chicken IL-15 cDNA is inserted into two viral vectors (derived from turkey herpesvirus and fowlpox virus, respectively) that are used for the expression of recombinant proteins in chickens (Morgan et al., *Avian Diseases,* 36:858, 1992; Yanagida et al., *J. Virol.,* 66:1402, 1992; Nazerian et al., *J. Virol,* 66:1409, 1992). These IL-15-modified live viral vectors are administered to newly hatched chicks simultaneously with the administration of various vaccines currently available. Six days later the chicks are challenged with the corresponding virulent viruses and observed for 8 weeks for the development of disease. The incidence of disease in these chicks is compared with controls that do not receive the IL-15-modified live viral vectors. A sample protocol (including expected results) is shown in Table 2.

TABLE 2

Group #	Treatment on day 1	Challenge at day 6	% expected with disease
1	none	none	0
2	none	virulent Marek's	>80%
3	HVT (not modified)	virulent Marek's	20%
4	HVT-IL-15[a]	virulent Marek's	0 to 10%
5	HVT (not modified) + HVT-IL-15	virulent Marek's	0 to 10%
6	none	virulent NDV	>80%
7	HVT-IF-15	virulent NDV	30% to >50%
8	NDV vaccine	virulent NDV	20%
9	NDV vaccine + HVT-IL-15	virulent NDV	0 to 10%

[a]herpesvirus of turkeys expressing IL-15

In an alternative procedure, newly hatched chicks are injected intramuscularly with 100 μg of a plasmid containing cDNA for chicken IL-15, using the methods described in Ulmer, *J. B. Science,* 259:1745–1749, 1993. These chicks, and control chicks receiving a control vector lacking IL-15 cDNA, are vaccinated on day 2 with chicken vaccines and

then challenged on day 7 with the corresponding virulent viruses. They are observed for 8 weeks for signs of disease. It is expected that chicks injected with the pcDNA1 vector containing IL-15 cDNA will exhibit a reduced incidence of disease relative to controls.

Finally, IL-15 protein purified by the procedure described in Example 3 is administered intramuscularly to chicks at hatching, followed by a single daily administration on each of the following four days. Chicks are divided into three groups, receiving 0.01, 0.1 or 1.0 μg per injection per day. A fourth group receives placebo injections. At hatching all chicks are vaccinated with chicken vaccines and then challenged on day 7 with the corresponding virulent viruses. They are then observed for 8 weeks for signs of disease. It is expected that chicks injected with IL-15 will exhibit a reduced incidence of disease relative to controls.

EXAMPLE 5

Use of Avian IL-15 in Growth Promotion

Mammalian IL-15 stimulates muscle growth (Quinn, L. S., *Endocrin.,* 136:3669, 1995) and semi-pure chicken IL-2 stimulates chicken body weight and increases feed conversion (U.S. Pat. No. 5,028,421). To evaluate the growth-promoting activity of avian IL-15, the methods described in Example 4 above may be used to administer IL-15 cDNA in a viral or plasmid vectors recombinant IL15 protein. Experimental and control chicks are monitored for weight gain and feed conversion for a period of six weeks. It is expected that one or more of these protocols will enhance chicken growth over controls.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 2

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
<211> LENGTH: 747
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: Gallus domesticus

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

cagataactg ggacactgcc atgatgtgca aagtactgat ctttggctgt atttcggtag 60

caacgctaat gactacagct tatggagcat ctctatcatc agcaaaaagg aaacctcttc 120

aaacattaat aaaggattta gaaatattgg aaaatatcaa gaacaagatt catctcgagc 180

tctacacacc aactgagacc caggagtgca cccagcaaac tctgcagtgt tacctgggag 240

aagtggttac tctgaagaaa gaaactgaag atgacactga aattaaagaa gaatttgtaa 300

ctgctattca aaatatcgaa aagaacctca agagtcttac gggtctaaat cacaccggaa 360

gtgaatgcaa gatctgtgaa gctaacaaca agaaaaaatt tcctgatttt ctccatgaac 420

tgaccaactt tgtgagatat ctgcaaaaat aagcaactaa tcatttttat tttactgcta 480

tgttatttat ttaattattt aattacagat aatttatata ttttatcccg tggctaacta 540

atctgctgtc cattctggga ccactgtatg ctcttagtct gggtgatatg acgtctgttc 600

taagatcata tttgatcctt tctgtaacct acgggctcaa aatgtacgtt ggaaaactga 660

ttgattctca ctttgtcggt aaagtgatat gtgtttactg aaagaatttt taaaagtcac 720

ttctagatga catttaataa atttcag 747

<210> SEQ ID NO 2
<211> LENGTH: 143
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Gallus domesticus

<400> SEQUENCE: 2

Met Met Cys Lys Val Leu Ile Phe Gly Cys Ile Ser Val Ala Thr Leu
1 5 10 15

Met Thr Thr Ala Tyr Gly Ala Ser Leu Ser Ser Ala Lys Arg Lys Pro
20 25 30

Leu Gln Thr Leu Ile Lys Asp Leu Glu Ile Leu Glu Asn Ile Lys Asn
35 40 45

Lys Ile His Leu Glu Leu Tyr Thr Pro Thr Glu Thr Gln Glu Cys Thr
50 55 60

-continued

```
Gln Gln Thr Leu Gln Cys Tyr Leu Gly Glu Val Val Thr Leu Lys Lys
65                  70                  75                  80

Glu Thr Glu Asp Asp Thr Glu Ile Lys Glu Glu Phe Val Thr Ala Ile
                85                  90                  95

Gln Asn Ile Glu Lys Asn Leu Lys Ser Leu Thr Gly Leu Asn His Thr
            100                 105                 110

Gly Ser Glu Cys Lys Ile Cys Glu Ala Asn Asn Lys Lys Lys Phe Pro
        115                 120                 125

Asp Phe Leu His Glu Leu Thr Asn Phe Val Arg Tyr Leu Gln Lys
    130                 135                 140
```

What is claimed is:

1. An isolated nucleic acid which:

(a) comprises a nucleic acid sequence having at least 70% sequence homology, determined by a BLAST algorithm, to the sequence set forth in nucleotides 87–449 of SEQ ID NO:1; and

(b) encodes a polypeptide capable of stimulating thymidine incorporation in mitogen activated avian T-cells.

2. The complement of a nucleic acid according to claim 1.

3. An isolated nucleic acid according to claim 1 or 2, which nucleic acid is an avian nucleic acid isolated from chicken.

4. A vector construct comprising the nucleic acid of claim 1.

5. The vector construct according to claim 4, in which said nucleic acid is operatively associated with a promoter element capable of expressing the nucleic acid in a host cell.

6. The vector construct according to claim 4, in which the construct is a recombinant virus.

7. The vector construct according to claim 6, in which the recombinant virus is a turkey herpes virus or a fowl pox virus.

8. An isolated nucleic acid which:

(a) hybridizes to the full length of a nucleic acid having the complementary sequence of nucleotides 87–449 in SEQ ID NO:1 under conditions comprising (i) hybridization in 6×SSC and 0.5% SDS, and (ii) washing at 68° C. in 0.1×SSC and 0.5% SDS; and

(b) encodes a polypeptide capable of stimulating thymidine incorporation in mitogen activated avian T-cells.

9. The complement of a nucleic acid according to claim 8.

10. An isolated nucleic acid according to claim 8 or 9, which nucleic acid is an avian nucleic acid isolated from chicken.

11. An isolated nucleic acid which:

(a) hybridizes to the full length of a nucleic acid having the complementary sequence of nucleotides 87–449 in SEQ ID NO:1 under conditions comprising (i) hybridization in 6×SSC and 0.5% SDS, and (ii) washing at room temperature in 2×SSC and 0.5% SDS; and

(b) encodes a polypeptide capable of stimulating thymidine incorporation in mitogen activated avian T-cells.

12. The complement of a nucleic acid according to claim 11.

13. An isolated nucleic acid according to claim 11 or 12, which nucleic acid is an avian nucleic acid isolated from chicken.

14. A vector construct comprising the nucleic acid of claim 8 or 11.

15. A The vector construct according to claim 14, in which said nucleic acid is operatively associated with a promoter element capable of expressing the nucleic acid in a host cell.

16. The vector construct according to claim 14, in which the construct is a recombinant virus.

17. The vector construct according to claim 16, in which the recombinant virus is a turkey herpes virus or a fowl pox virus.

18. An isolated nucleic acid having an open reading frame that encodes a polypeptide comprising the sequence of amino acid residues 23–143 set forth in SEQ ID NO:2 (FIG. 2).

19. The complement of a nucleic acid according to claim 18.

20. An isolated nucleic acid according to claim 18 or 19, which nucleic acid is an avian nucleic acid isolated from chicken.

21. An isolated nucleic acid according to claim 18, wherein the polypeptide comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:2 (FIG. 2).

22. The complement of a nucleic acid according to claim 21.

23. An isolated nucleic acid according to claim 21 or 22 which nucleic acid is an avian nucleic acid isolated from chicken.

24. A vector construct comprising the nucleic acid of claim 18 or 21.

25. The vector construct according to claim 24, in which said nucleic acid is operatively associated with a promoter element capable of expressing the nucleic acid in a host cell.

26. The vector construct according to claim 24, in which the construct is a recombinant virus.

27. The vector construct according to claim 26, in which the recombinant virus is a turkey herpes virus or a fowl pox virus.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT 17

EXHIBIT 20